Volume Two of the Korean Basic Course contains Units 29 through 47. Most units consist of (1) a basic dialog, (2) notes on the basic dialog, (3) additional vocabulary and phrases, (4) grammar notes, (5) drills, (6) a supplementary dialog for comprehension, (7) a narrative for comprehension and reading, and (8) exercises. Two of the last units substitute a narrative for the basic dialog. No romanized transcription appears in this volume; all Korean is given in Hankil Korean Orthography. Tapes for this course will be available from the Sales Branch, National Audiovisual Center (General Services Administration), Washington, D.C. 20409. For Volume One of the Korean Basic Course see ED 022 150. (DO)
FOREIGN SERVICE INSTITUTE
WASHINGTON, D.C.
1969

KOREAN

BASIC COURSE
VOLUME TWO

This work was compiled and published with the support of the Office of Education, Department of Health, Education and Welfare, United States of America.

By
B. NAM PARK

with the assistance of CHUNGHWA T. KAY

FOREIGN SERVICE INSTITUTE
WASHINGTON, D.C.
1969

DEPARTMENT OF STATE
# TABLE OF CONTENTS

## UNIT 19. At Seoul Station Information
- Basic Dialogue .................................................. 1
- Notes on the Basic Dialogue ................................. 3
- Grammar Notes .................................................... 4
  1. Particle 입的根本 ............................................. 4
  2. Post-Noun 입的根本 ......................................... 4
  3. Further Note on -지 못할지라 .............................. 5
  4. -(아, 어)에 forwarding and -(아, 어)에 을 것이다 ... 6
- Drills ............................................................ 7
- Supplementary Dialogues for Comprehension .............. 17
- Narratives for Comprehension and Reading .............. 18
- Exercises ...................................................... 19

## UNIT 20. At Seoul Station Information (Continued)
- Basic Dialogue .................................................. 20
- Additional Vocabulary ........................................ 22
- Notes on the Basic Dialogue ................................ 23
- Grammar Notes .................................................... 24
  1. -(기/가기) 에 'because [it] is/does something' .......... 24
  2. Denominals and Denominal Verbs ......................... 25
  3. -(이/이) 에 'every', 'each' ................................. 27
- Drills ............................................................ 28
- Supplementary Dialogues for Comprehension .............. 32
- Narrative for Comprehension and Reading ................ 33
- Exercises ...................................................... 34

## UNIT 21. At the Ticket Window
- Basic Dialogue .................................................. 35
- Notes on the Basic Dialogue ................................ 38
- Grammar Notes .................................................... 40
  1. -(의) 'since...', 'as...', 'because...', 'in view of the fact that' .... 40
  2. -(의) + 나/니가 + -(의) + 나/니가 ? ........................ 40
- Drills ............................................................ 41
- Supplementary Dialogues for Comprehension .............. 46
- Exercises ...................................................... 47

## UNIT 22. On the Train
- Basic Dialogue .................................................. 48
- Additional Vocabulary and Phrases ....................... 50
- Notes on the Basic Dialogue ................................ 51
Grammar Notes

1. An Organization 'the Organization does.'
2. N 'in accordance with N', 'depending upon N'
3. 'is expected to', 'is planning to', 'is scheduled to'

DRILLS

Supplementary Dialogue for Comprehension
Narratives for Comprehension and Reading
EXERCISES

UNIT 23. At Taejon Inn

BASIC DIALOGUE
Notes on the Basic Dialogue
Grammar Notes
1. 'decides to do something'
2. 'you may...', '[it] will do...', 'you can.'

DRILLS
Supplementary Dialogues for Comprehension
Narratives for Comprehension and Reading
EXERCISES

UNIT 24. At Taejon Inn (Continued)

BASIC DIALOGUE
Notes on the Basic Dialogue
Grammar Notes
1. Further Note on Particle 
2. Infinitive + another inflected expression
3. not...but', 'do...without doing'
4. 
5. 

DRILLS

Supplementary Dialogues for Comprehension
Narratives for Comprehension and Reading
EXERCISES

UNIT 25. Room Service

BASIC DIALOGUE
Additional Vocabulary and Phrases
Notes on the Basic Dialogue
Grammar Notes
1. Further Note on Particle 
2. Infinitive + another inflected expression
3. 
4. 
5. 

DRILLS
# Supplementary Dialogues for Comprehension
- UNIT 26: Giving Errands to the Inn Maid
- UNIT 27: Reading Signs
- UNIT 28: Reading Signs (Continued)
- UNIT 29: Going Out for a Drive

## BASIC DIALOGUE

1. 
   - 
   - 
   - 'intends to...', 'will do...'

2. 
   - 
   - 
   - 'for', 'for the sake of'

## Additional Vocabulary and Phrases

1. 
   - 

2. 
   - 

3. 
   - 

## Notes on the Basic Dialogue

1. 
   - 

2. 
   - 

3. 
   - (the reason) is because [it]

## DRILLS

1. 

2. 

3. 

## Supplementary Dialogue for Comprehension

1. 

2. 

3. 

## Narrative for Comprehension and Reading

1. 

2. 

3. 

## EXERCISES

1. 

2. 

3. 

## Grammar Notes

1. 

2. 

3. 

4. 

5. 

This document is a part of a Korean Basic Course, focusing on supplementary dialogues, additional vocabulary, and exercises for comprehension and reading.
Additional Vocabulary and Phrases.................................................. 270
Notes on the Basic Dialogue.......................................................... 275
Grammar Notes............................................................................... 276
1. -았/었/어+ 'almost did...'
2. -은/은+ 'only is/does...', 'only thing [one does] is such-and-such'
3. -은/은+ 'is as...as', 'to the extent of doing (something)'
DRILLS..................................................................................... 279
Supplementary Dialogue and Narrative for Comprehension................. 286
EXERCISES............................................................................... 287

UNIT 34. Invitation........................................................................... 288
BASIC DIALOGUE.......................................................................... 288
Notes on the Basic Dialogue.......................................................... 291
Grammar Notes............................................................................... 291
1. Particle 에/의에
2. Interrogative Nominal Expression + - + Negation 'is/does not... any...'
3. -(으)론 하/는다 'only is/does...'
4. Particles and Particle 에/의에
5. The Korean equivalents of 'without a Nominal' and 'without (or instead of) doing something'
DRILLS..................................................................................... 294
Supplementary Dialogue and Narrative for Comprehension................. 303

UNIT 35. Invitation (Continued)....................................................... 304
BASIC DIALOGUE.......................................................................... 304
Notes on the Basic Dialogue.......................................................... 307
Grammar Notes............................................................................... 308
1. N + 에/의에 (가)
2. Further Note on -(으)론/론 면
3. -(으)론 하/는가 'there's no need of doing...','does not need to...'
4. -(으)론 뿐만 아니라 {으나}|{이나} 'not only... but also...'
5. -(으)론 하/는 'often (or sometimes) does' and -(으)론 하/는 'used to do...,'sometimes did...'
DRILLS..................................................................................... 312
Supplementary Dialogue and Narrative for Comprehension................. 322
EXERCISES............................................................................... 323

UNIT 36. Invitation (Continued)....................................................... 324
BASIC DIALOGUE.......................................................................... 324
Notes on the Basic Dialogue.......................................................... 325
DRILLS..................................................................................... 328
UNIT 19. At Seoul Station Information

BASIC DIALOGUE

여행자

Excuse me. What time is the next train to Taejon?

란내

There is a local train leaving at 9:30.

여행자

express (train)
[it] must have left
if possible ('if it can become')
by a fast way
[it] departs

Well, the morning express must already have left, then? I'd like to go a fast way if possible; when does the next express leave?

란내

Special Express
Semi-Express
in about 40 minutes
4. 아침 여덟시 특급은 벌써 떠났다고 암

사실은 두 시간 앞에 출발했기 때문입니다.

4. The 8 o'clock morning Special Express has already left, but there is a Semi-Express leaving in about 40 minutes.

5. 준급행은 대략 얼마나 걸리나요?

한국어

5. How long does it take to get to Taejon by the Semi-Express?

6. 투시간 이십분쯤 걸리지요.

한국어

6. It takes about 2 hours and 20 minutes.

문론
특급편
특급편이 빨라지 못 합니다
의석
그것도 역시
 바로 갑니다

문론, 준급행은 특급편이 빨라지 못 하지만
그것도 역시 빠르지 않습니다.

of course
as (much) as Special Express
[it] is not as fast as Special Express
also; still; after all; certainly
it is also; it is as well
[it] goes fast

Of course the Semi-Express is not as fast as the Special Express, but it's still very fast.
NOTES ON THE BASIC DIALOGUE

(Numbers correspond to the sentence numbers.)

1. *-계 'section' is the part of a noun which designates the lowest administrative unit within an organizational hierarchy. Examples: 산계 'information (section)', 인사계 'personnel section', 통무계 'general affairs section', etc.

3. 될 수 있으면 ( 'if it can become') and its substitute 할 수 있으면 ( or 가능하다) 'if it's possible' which is another synonymous adverbial clause, occur as the Korean equivalents of 'if possible'.

4. 급행 'express' is used as a cover term for three kinds of express trains: 특급 'Special Express', 급행 ' (Regular) Express' or 준급행 'Semi-Express'. 특급 stops only at the most important stations such as provincial capitals, 급행 makes additional stops at major cities, while 준급행 stops at all major stations. 원행 stops at every local station.

5. (으)론 in 준급행으로 is the contraction of (으)로 - 는. Contraction is common in a rapid speech.

7. 만근 'as ~ as' occurs either as a particle or a dependant noun (See Grammar Notes 1 & 2). A description verb ending in -지 + 못하다 means simply 'is not...' rather than 'cannot...' (See Grammar Note 3). 역시 'also', 'still', 'after all', 'certainly' is an adverb whose meaning varies depending on environment. 역시 is normally preceded immediately by or frequently used redundantly with a nominal +로 to mean 'also'.

 그것도 역시 빠르게 가니. 'It also goes fast.'
나도 역시 그렇게 생각합니다. 'I think so, too.'
한국 말도 역시 어렵군요. 'Korean is also difficult, isn't it?'
그 역시 지난 토요일 예뻐요. 'She is still pretty.'
저는 역시 한국 사람이에요. 'I'm a Korean, after all.'
1. Particle 만큼 'as ~ as', 'to the extent of'

The particle 만큼 preceded by a nominal occurs before an inflected expression to denote a resemblance of the action or description in the degree of or extent to the following inflected expression for the subject or topic the same or as much as the nominal to which 만큼 is added. Compare 만큼 with particle처럼 'like' (Unit 18) which denotes a resemblance of the action or description in the manner of the following inflected expression. Compare the following pairs:

| '합스가 기차만큼 빨리 갓니다.' | 'The bus runs as fast as a train.' |
| '합스가 기차처럼 빨리 갓니다.' | 'The bus runs fast, just like a train.' |
| '일본 말이 한국 말만큼 어렵습니다.' | 'Japanese is as difficult as Korean.' |
| '일본 말이 한국 말처럼 어렵습니다.' | 'Japanese, like Korean, is difficult.' |
| '제임스씨가 바 전광록 밝을 만큼 잘 해요.' | 'Mr. James speaks German as well as Mr. Park does.' |
| '제임스씨가 바 전광록 밝을 만큼 잘 해요.' | 'Mr. James speaks good German just like Mr. Park.' |

2. Post-Noun 만큼

When 만큼 occurs after inflected forms such as prospective or present noun modifier words, it is a post-noun. The post-noun 만큼 forms a phrase with the preceding modifier word in the following meanings:

a. The present noun modifier word of an action or description verb form + 만큼, 'since (or because) one does (or is)', 'as much as one does'
Since I'm aware of it...

As much as I know...

Insofar as I know...

'Since he eats...

'As much as he eats...

'Since she is bright...

b. An action verb in the prospective noun modifier 을/을 form + 만큼
means 'as much as one can'.

음식을 먹을 만큼 사십시오.

'Buy food as much as you can eat.'

그 책을 읽을 만큼 읽어봐요.

'I read the book as much as I could.'

부자가 될 만큼 (돈을) 벌지 말아요.

'I have not earned enough money to become rich.'

Note that 이 만큼 'this much', 저 만큼 'that much', 그 만큼 'that much' are idiomatic nominal or adverbial phrases.

3. Further note on -지 못하다

The -지 못하다 form of a description verb + 못하다 occurs interchangeably with -지 않아 to mean just 'is not...' instead of 'cannot...'. The same construction is also used to mean 'cannot...' whenever it makes sense.

A. 한국 밥이 취해요?
B. 아니요, 한국 밥이 싶지 못해요.

A. 'Is Korean easy?'
B. 'No, Korean is not easy.'

A. 그 여자가 누가 같은가요?
B. 아니요, 그녀 크지 못합니다.

A. 'Is she tall?'
B. 'No, [she is] not very tall.'

나는 그녀 높다고 못해요. 그것이 문제이지요.

'I'm not so bright. That's the problem.'
4. -(아, 여)坏事 and -(아, 여)坏事을 것이다

Any verbal which includes a past tense suffix + future tense suffix (i.e. -(아, 여)坏事 ) implies the speaker or addressee's presumption for the finished action or description of the verb, and is translated as 'must have been/done such-and-such', 'would/should have been/done such-and-such'.
-(아, 여)坏事 and -(아, 여)坏事을 것이 are mutually interchangeable. Study the following examples:

'The train must have left already (I think).'

'By now class must have started.'

'Do you suppose that he has become an Ambassador by now?'

'If I had not arrived on time, would you have thought that I had a traffic accident?'

'If I had known that fact from the beginning I would not have made such a mistake.'

Remember that we noticed -(아, 여)坏事 in Unit 3, Grammar Note 2, and -(아, 여)坏事을 것이 in Unit 11, Grammar Note 3, were often used to denote the presumption of the speaker or addressee for the future or present action or description of the verb.
1. Substitution Drill

1. What time is the next train (which goes) to Taejon?

2. What time is the next passenger train to Pusan?

3. What time is the next airplane to Cheju?

4. What time is the next bus to Yongdungpo?

5. What time is the next express to Tejon?

6. What time is the next Special Express to Kwangju?

7. What time is the next Semi-Express to Kangnung?

8. What time is the next local (train) to Choongju?

9. What time is the next jitney (limousine) to Inchon?

10. What time is the next passenger ship to Yosu?

11. What time is the next sightseeing bus to Walker Hill?

12. What time is the next packet boat to Japan?
2. Response Drill

Will you leave by express?
Yes, I'm going to (leave by express) if possible.

Will you come to my house this weekend?
Yes, I'll try to come if possible.

Will you continue to study Korean in Korea?
Yes, I'm going to (continue) if possible.

Will you leave for school on time?
Yes, I'll try to leave on time if possible.

Won't you smoke?
No, I'm trying not to smoke if possible.

Will you go by plane?
Yes, I'm going to (fly) if possible.

Will you bring your lunch every day?
Yes, I'm going to (bring it) every day if possible.

Will you check your baggage?
Yes, I'm going to check [it] if possible.

Will you work for the government?
Yes, I'm going to work for the government if possible.
3. Substitution Drill

1. 준공행운 대전까지 얼마나 걸리나요? How long does it take [to go] to Taejon by Semi-Express?
2. 항행운목포까지 얼마나 걸리나요? How long does it take [to go] to Mokpo by local?
3. 항공운 광주까지 얼마나 걸리나요? How long does it take [to go] to Kwangju by Special Express?
4. 항행운 인천까지 얼마나 걸리나요? How long does it take [to go] to Incheon by express?
5. 항행운 부산까지 얼마나 걸리나요? How long does it take [to go] to Pusan by passenger ship?
6. 백운 체주까지 얼마나 걸리나요? How long does it take [to go] to Cheju by ship?
7. 비행기로 김포까지 얼마나 걸리나요? How long does it take [to go] to Kangnang by airplane?
8. 낙동 백운 강화도까지 얼마나 걸리나요? How long does it take [to go] to Kanghwado by ferry(boat)?
9. 전차로 영등포까지 얼마나 걸리나요? How long does it take [to go] to Yongdungpo by streetcar?
10. 자전거로 충산까지 얼마나 걸리나요? How long does it take [to go] to Yongsan by bicycle?

4. Response Drill (based on Grammar Note 1)

선생: 한국 말이 일본 말처럼 어렵습니까? Is Korean as difficult as Japanese?
학생: 네, 한국 말이 일본 말처럼 어렵습니다.

1. 항해사가 급행비행 급주 설니꺼가? Does a local train stop as frequently as a Regular Express?
   예, 항해사가 급행비행 급주 설니다.

2. 서울의 교통이 뉴욕과 같은지
   서울의 교통이 뉴욕과 같은지. Is the traffic in Seoul as crowded as that of New York?
Does Mr. Janes speak Korean as well as Jones?
Yes, Mr. James speaks Korean as well as Jones.

Is the United States as large as Canada?
Yes, the United States is as large as Canada.

Is your wife as tall as you?
Yes, my wife is as tall as I am.

Is Seoul as old a city as Rome?
Yes, Seoul is as old a city as Rome.

Is the weather today as cloudy and windy as it was yesterday?
Yes, the weather today is as cloudy and windy as it was yesterday.

Is grandmother as old as grandfather?
Yes, grandmother is as old as grandfather.

Do you like Korean food as much as Western food?
Yes, I like Korean food as much as Western food.

5. Response Transformation Drill (based on Grammar Note 1)

Is Korean interesting? [Japanese]
Yes, Korean is as interesting as Japanese.

Is Korea large (or wide)? [Taiwan]
Yes, Korea is as large as Taiwan.
2. Are there a lot of people in Seoul?  
   Yes, there are as many people in Seoul as in Washington.

3. Does Mr. Kim speak English well?  
   Yes, Mr. Kim speaks English as well as an American.

4. Is Mr. Chung rich?  
   Yes, Mr. Chung is as rich as (company) president Lee.

5. Is the Semi-Express fast?  
   Yes, the Semi-Express is as fast as the Special Express.

6. Is the traffic in Seoul crowded?  
   Yes, the traffic in Seoul is as crowded as it is in New York.

7. Are things in Pusan expensive?  
   Yes, things in Pusan are as expensive as they are in Seoul.

8. Is a Pullman comfortable?  
   Yes, a sleeping car is as comfortable as 1st class.

9. Is Australia nice to live in?  
   Yes, Australia is as nice to live in as America.

10. Are Chinese characters easy to learn?  
    Yes, Chinese characters are as easy to learn as Hankil is.

11. Is Mr. Kim's son bright?  
    Yes, Mr. Kim's son is as bright as Mr. Lee's son.
6. Response Drill

**1.** 쌍 선생이 잘 선생함을 읽어들 잘 합니까?  
아니요, 쌍 선생이 잘 선생함을 읽어들 잘 하지 않아요.

**2.** 한국 어가 독일어와 잘 합니까?  
아니요, 한국 어는 독일어와 쉽게 알아요.

**3.** 길 선희의 작은 딸이 큰 딸만큼 예쁘니까?  
아니요, 길 선희의 작은 딸은 큰 딸만큼 예쁘지 않아요.

**4.** 시외 버스가 기차만큼 바受贿니까?  
아니요, 시외 버스는 기차만큼 바受贿지 않아요.

**5.** 급행이 외형만큼 제주 다닙니까?  
아니요, 급행은 외형만큼 제주 다닙니다.

**6.** 부산이 서울만큼 7개짓 합니까?  
아니요, 부산은 서울만큼 7개짓하지 않아요.

**7.** 중부 백화점이 중앙 백화점만큼 몰건이 많습니까?  
아니요, 중부 백화점은 중앙 백화점만큼 몰건이 많지 않아요.

Is the Semi-Express as fast as the Regular Express?  
No, the Semi-Express is not as fast as the Regular Express.

Does Mr. Song speak English as well as Mr. Chang?  
No, Mr. Song does not speak English as well as Mr. Chang.

Is Korean as easy as German?  
No, Korean is not as easy as German.

Is Mr. Kim’s younger daughter as pretty as his eldest daughter?  
No, Mr. Kim’s younger daughter is not as pretty as his eldest daughter.

Are the suburban busses as rapid as trains?  
No, the suburban busses are not as rapid as trains.

Do express [trains] run as often as locals?  
No, express [trains] do not run as often as local [trains].

Is Pusan as clean as Seoul?  
No, Pusan is not as clean as Seoul.

Are there as many things at Chongno Department Store as there are at Central (Department Store)?  
No, there're not as many things at Chongno Department Store as there are at Central.
8. 선택 집 정원이 대사의 정원에 넓습니까?
아니오. 제 집 정원은 대사의 정원에 넓지 않아요.

9. 여자는 아이들도 남자 아이들보다 크나요?
아니오, 여자는 아이들은 남자 아이들 보다 크지 않아요.

10. 준급행이 환승행과 느림니까요?
아니오, 준급행은 환승행보다 느리지 않아요.

7. Response Drill

선생: 특급은 빨리 객니까?
학생: 네, 특급은 빨리 객니다.

1. 한국 밥이 영국 밥보다 더 어필스니가요?
네, 한국 밥이 영국 밥보다 더 어필스니다.

2. 외교관이 되면 여러 나라를 침략할 수 있을까요?
네, 외교관은 여러 나라를 침략할 수 있습니다.

3. 뉴욕은 서울보다 교통이 번잡함니까?
네, 뉴욕의 서울보다 교통이 더 번잡합니다.

4. 비행기로 가는 것이 기차보다 빠르나요?
네, 비행기로 가는 것이 기차보다 빠릅니다.

Is your garden as large as that of the Ambassador's residence?
No, my garden is not as large as that of the Ambassador's residence.

Are girls as tall as boys?
No, girls are not as tall as boys.

Is the Semi-Express as slow as the local?
No, the Semi-Express is not as slow as the local.

Does a Special Express go fast?
Yes, of course the Special Express goes fast.

Is Korean more difficult than Thai?
Yes, of course Korean is more difficult than Thai.

If you become a diplomat can you see many countries?
Yes, of course you can see many countries if you become a diplomat.

Is the traffic in New York more crowded than in Seoul?
Yes, of course the traffic in New York is more crowded than in Seoul.

Is it faster to go by airplane than by train?
Yes, of course going by airplane is quicker than by train.
UNIT 19

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

5. 할일 사전이 필요합니까?
문제. 할일 사전이 필요합니다.

6. 자동차를 사려면 돈이 많이 있어야 합니까?
문제. 자동차를 사려면 돈이 많이 있어야 합니다.

7. 활행이 급행보다 더 싸합니까?
문제. 활행이 급행보다 더 싸습니다.

8. 작가가 되려면 공부를 많이 해야 합니까?
문제. 작가가 되려면 공부를 많이 해야 합니다.

9. 외교관이 되려면 시험을 치야 합니까?
문제. 외교관이 되려면 시험을 치야 합니다.

10. 편지로 부쳐먹은 우표를 사야 합니까?
문제. 편지로 부쳐먹은 우표를 사야 합니다.

Do you need a Korean-English dictionary?

Yes, of course I need a Korean-English dictionary.

Do I have to have a lot of money to buy a car?

Yes, of course you have to have a lot of money to buy a car.

Is the local cheaper than the express?

Yes, of course the local is cheaper than the express.

Do you have to have a lot of education to be a scholar?

Yes, of course you have to study a lot to become a scholar.

Do you have to take an exam to be a diplomat?

Yes, of course you have to take an exam to become a diplomat.

Do you have to buy stamps to mail letters?

Yes, of course you have to buy stamps to mail letters.

8. Response Drill

선생: 김 선생이 영어를 잘 합니다.

학생: 예, 그럴습니다. (김 선생이) 역시 영어를 잘 해요.

1. 한국 말이 어려운 것 같습니다.

예, 그렇습니다. (한국 말이) 역시 어려운 것 같아요.

2. 미국에서 살려면 자동차가 있어야 합니다.

예, 그렇습니다. 미국에서 살려면 역시 자동차가 있어야 해요.

Mr. Kim speaks English very well.

That's right. He certainly speaks English well.

Korean seems to be difficult.

That's right. It certainly seems to be difficult.

You have to have an automobile to live in the United States.

That's right. You certainly have to have a car to live in America.
3. 기차보다 비행기가 빨릅니다.

예, 그렇습니다. 기차보다는 비행기가 빨라요.

4. 말은 비행기 뿐만 아니라 건물도 빨라요.

예, 그렇습니다. 말은 비행기 뿐만 아니라 건물도 빨라요.

5. 미국 사람들이 구두와 샌들보다 잘 살습니다.

예, 그렇습니다. 미국 사람들이 구두와 샌들보다 잘 살어요.

6. 밤에 여행할 때는 침대차가 편합니다.

예, 그렇습니다. 밤에 여행할 때는 침대차가 편합니다.

7. 우리 학교 선생님也很 가르쳐요.

예, 그렇습니다. 우리 학교 선생님을 가르쳐요.

8. 비싼 자동차가 좋은 것 같습니 다.

예, 그렇습니다. 비싼 자동차가 좋은 것 같아요.

9. 미국에서는 의사와 변호사가 돈을 잘 벌니다.

예, 그렇습니다. 미국에서는 의사와 변호사가 돈을 잘 벌어요.

10. 큰 도시의 물건 값이 비싸다고 생각해요.

예, 그렇습니다. 큰 도시의 물건 값이 비싸다고 생각해요.

An airplane is faster than a train.

That's right. An airplane is indeed faster than a train.

You need a dictionary when you study a language.

That's right. You certainly need a dictionary when you study a language.

Americans live better than Europeans.

That's right. Americans certainly live better than Europeans.

A Sleeping car is convenient when you travel at night.

That's right. A Sleeping car is certainly convenient when you travel at night.

The teachers in our school are good teachers.

That's right. Our teachers teach well indeed.

Expensive autos seem to be good.

That's right. Expensive autos certainly seem to be good.

In the United States doctors and lawyers make good money.

That's right. In America, doctors and lawyers certainly earn a lot.

I think things are expensive in big cities.

That's right. I think things are certainly expensive in big cities.
UNIT 19 KOREAN BASIC COURSE

9. Response Drill

선생: 왜 이 바쁜가요?

학생: 아니요, 몇시간 길이 너무 길입니다.

1. 그 아이가 똑똑한가요?

아니요, 그 아이는 그리 똑똑하지 못합니다.

2. 한국 말 배우기가 쉬운가요?

아니요, 한국말 배우기는 그리 쉽지 못합니다.

3. 전자가 편리한가요?

아니요, 전자는 그리 편리하지 못합니다.

4. 선생 집 부근이 조용한가요?

아니요, 저의 집 부근은 그리 조용하지 못합니다.

5. 공무원 봉급이 충분한가요?

아니요, 공무원 봉급은 그리 충분하지 못합니다.

6. 선생의 자동차가 좋은가요?

아니요, 제 자동차는 그리 좋지 못합니다.

7. 동생이 언니만큼 예쁘나요?

아니요, 동생은 언니만큼 예쁘지 못합니다.

8. 이 교실이 옆 교실처럼 밝은가요?

아니요, 이 교실은 옆 교실처럼 밝지 못합니다.

Is the local train fast (I wonder)?
No, the local is not very fast.

Is that child bright?
No, that child is not so bright.

Is learning Korean easy?
No, learning Korean is not so easy.

Is the streetcar convenient?
No, the streetcar is not so convenient.

Is your neighborhood quiet?
No, my neighborhood is not so quiet.

Is a civil servant's pay sufficient?
No, a Government employee's pay is not enough.

Do you like your car? (or Is your car good?)
No, my car is not very good.

Is the younger sister as pretty as her older sister?
No, the younger sister is not as pretty as her older sister.

Is this classroom light (well illuminated) just like the next room?
No, this classroom is not light like the next classroom.
Supplementary Dialogues for Comprehension:

(1)

여행자: 이보세요. 잡간 맛있 좀 불어 보시나요. 여기가 안내계시죠?

안내원: 예, 그렇습니다. 무슨 일이 있음니가요?

여행자: 이런 적는 기차 시간을 좀 알고 싶습니다. 다음 기차가

여행자: 

예행자: 구멍으로 가고 싶습니다. 구멍은 없어요?

안내원: 이런 적는 기차우 나가 과행이나 과행이나 시간이 거의

작이 걸립니다.

여행자: 아, 그렇습니다가? 그럼 과행차도 있어요?

안내원: 과행자는 아침에 한편, 저녁에 한편식 있지만 걸리는

시간은 비슷합니다.

(2)

여행자: 특급으로 대구까지 얼마나 걸립니가요?

안내원: 요즘은 특급이 더 발아 져어요. 그래서 아침에 서울을

여행자: 아침, 그것 참 바쁘군요. 그럼まと 금행은 특급보다

여행자: 빨리 금행은 특급보다 약 사십분 더 걸립니다.
UNIT 1
KOREAN BASIC COURSE

Narratives for Comprehension and Reading

(1)
한 미국 여행자가 서울에 왔습니다. 그는 기차로 여행을 방
계획했습니다. 그래서 외국계에서 기차 시간표를 알아 보고 합니다.

(2)
대신에 가는 다음 기차가 아침식 점 오전에 하나 있습니다.
이 기차는 외국인에 길 출발하지요. 열차 십시분까지 급행은
없습니다. 외국인 전에 아침 싱글은 밤에서 떠나고 약 한시간
십시분 후에 준급행이 하나 있지만 준급행은 좀 느립니다.

(3)
준급행은 외국보다 더 빨리 가지만 충분한 빠르지 못 합니다.
그러나 급행은 다른 빨리 갑니다. 차는 될 수 있으면 빨리
가고 싶습니다.
EXERCISES

A. Assuming that you are at Seoul Railroad Station, find out at the information booth:

1. what time is the next train to Pusan.
2. if it is an express.
3. if the 8 a.m. express has already left.
4. how many times there are express trains to Pusan per day.
5. how long it takes to go to Pusan by a Regular Express.
6. if a Regular Express is as fast as a Special Express.
7. how often local trains run between Seoul and Suwon.
8. if the 7 p.m. Special Express has sleeping cars.

B. Tell your classmates that:

1. the traffic in Seoul is as crowded as in New York.
2. your wife is as tall as you are.
3. you'll try to bring lunch if possible.
4. the next sightseeing bus to Walker Hill leaves at 2 p.m.
5. local trains stop as frequently as Semi-Expresses.
6. you think that things in big cities are certainly (or indeed) more expensive than in small cities.
7. your neighborhood is not so quiet.
8. your friend's younger sister is not as pretty as his older sister.
9. your house is almost as large as that of Mr. Kim's.

C. Your instructor will read the Supplementary Dialogues (1) and (2) twice each in his monologue. Close your book and listen to him carefully and after each dialogue has been read, tell the gist of each dialogue in your own words in Korean.

D. Your instructor will read the Narratives for Comprehension (1), (2) and (3) one at a time. Listen carefully and retell as much as you remember of each story in Korean. (In subsequent units, the Supplementary Dialogues and Narratives for Comprehension should be used for exercises similar to the Exercises C and D above.)
UNIT 20. At Seoul Station Information (Continued)

BASIC DIALOGUE

여행자

1. 서울에서 대전까지 특급이나 고속열차가 얼마나 자주 운행이니가?

여행자

2. 서울역 지하에 있습니다. 특급은 8시에 서울역에 있습니다.

여행자

3. 오전 8시와 12시 및 오전 5시 승객이 있습니다. 그 외에도 높은 시간에 승객이 있습니다.

여행자

4.급행만 (매두 시간마다 아나식 있습니다.

여행자

5. 그럼 왕복은 준급행보다 얼마나 느리나요?

여행자

6. 왕복 대전에는 특급이 운행하며, 다른 열차는 빠르게 운행합니다.

여행자

7. 특급 열차는 오전 8시, 오전 12시, 오전 5시에 운행합니다.

여행자

8. 왕복 대전에는 특급이 운행하며, 다른 열차는 빠르게 운행합니다.
6. 환향차는 정차마다 서기 때문에, 
훈급행보다도 약 한시간 반 늦게 도착합니다.

The local train stops at every station, 
so it arrives about an hour and half 
later than the Semi-Express.

여행자

짐

물품

물갈

짐 많기는 예

대합실

7. 여기에 짐 많기는 예와 대합실은
어디 있습니까?

Where are the waiting room and
(checking counter)?

관내원

부산행 차

개찰구

8. 대합실은 부산행 개찰구 부근에 있고,
짐 많기는 곧은 대합실 바로 옆에 있습니다.

The waiting room is to the right of
Pusan bound (platform entrance) and
the check-room is right next to the
waiting room.

여행자

열차

도착했습니다

9. 아, 그럼에, 부산에서 오는 야마 아침시
열차는 벌써 도착했습니다.

Oh, by the way, has the 9 o'clock
train from Pusan arrived already?

관내원

출구

여객

연락

연락되었습니다

exit

passengers

delay

[it]'s delayed
The people coming out of the exit are the passengers who just got off the 9 o'clock train from Pusan. It was about 15 minutes late.

Additional Vocabulary: The Names of Provinces and Their Capitals

1. 서울: 서울
2. 경기도: 경기
3. 강원도: 강원
4. 충청북도: 충북
5. 충청남도: 충남
6. 경상북도: 경북
7. 경상남도: 경남
8. 전라북도: 전북
9. 전라남도: 전남
10. 제주도: 제주
11. 황해도: 해동
12. 평안북도: 평양
13. 평안남도: 삼원
14. 함경남도: 함동
15. 함경북도: 창전
NOTES ON THE BASIC DIALOGUE

(Numbers correspond to the sentence numbers.)

3. 'p.m.' plus an o'clock time expression is used in a parallel way for official designation of time as 서시 or 오시 + an o'clock time 'an o'clock time + a.m.'.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{서시} & \quad \text{3 p.m.} \\
\text{오시} & \quad \text{10 a.m.}
\end{align*}
\]

Note that o'clock time expressions in official situations such as in transportation schedules or in military are in Chinese numeral system with the time counter 시. 서시 '13 hrs' (1 p.m.), 오시 '20 hrs' (8 p.m.).

6. 서기 때문에 'because [it] stops' is the substitute of 서니가 (See Grammar Note 1.). 보다도 '(rather) than' in 운공행 보다도 is a multiple particle, a combination of 보다 + 도. 보다 and 보다도 can be used interchangeably, except that the latter is often used emphatically.

7. 'to take care of' and 'to entrust (something) (under someone's care)' are both transitive verbs.

\[\text{질갑기준 예 is the place where you check baggage for a while often attended by someone. However, the place where bags are checked through to a destination is called 완숙계.}\]

8. A place name + 가차 followed by a mode of transportation means 'the mode of transportation bound for the place name'. -가차, then, is part of a word meaning 'going'.

\[\text{부산의 기차} \quad \text{the train bound for Pusan}\]
UNIT 20
KOREAN BASIC COURSE

인천행 버스
'the bus bound for Inchon'

광주행 비행기
'the airplane which goes to Kwangju'

Note that a place name (or a point of time) in -받 followed by a mode of transportation means 'the mode of transportation which leaves the place name (or at the point of time). -착 'arriving' is the opposite of -받.

서울행 급행
'express (train) which leaves (or left) Seoul'

대전행 여객차
'passenger train which leaves Taegu'

영동특차 특급
'Special Express arriving Yongdongpo'

9. 열차 ('string of cars') refers to a train run between two stations on schedule, while 기차 is a cover term for any railroad train.

서울에 가는 열차가 하루에 두 번 있습니다.
'Look at the train, Kihan. It's really fast!'

There are two trains to Seoul daily.

GRAMMAR NOTES

1. -기 때문에 'because [it] is/does something'

 때문 (reason, cause) is a noun to which particle -에 is added and occurs either after a nominal or the -기 form.

a. A nominal + 때문에 means 'because of the nominal'

돈 때문에
'because of money'

여자 때문에
'because of a woman'

무엇 때문에
'for what reason'

24
b. 「because of job」

Because of job.

「because of the contract」

Because of the contract.

2. Denominals and Denominal Verbs

We have seen so far that a number of nouns make verbs simply by adding 하다. We will call any such verb (built on a noun by adding 하다) a Denominative or a Denominal Verb, and any noun which can be made into a verb a Denominal. Very often, some denominal verbs are separated, making the denominal the object of 하다 without changing the meaning. Observe the following examples:

(a) 공부

\[ \text{studying' } \]

(a.1.) 공부 합니다

\[ '[\text{He}']s \text{ studying.' } \]

(a.2.) 공부를 합니다

\[ '[\text{He}']s \text{ studying.' (}'[\text{He}'] \text{ does studying.' } \]

(b) 여행

\[ '\text{travelling', 'trip' } \]

(b.1.) 여행합니다

\[ '[\text{He}']s \text{ travelling.' }, ('][\text{He}'] \text{ does travelling.' } \]

(b.2.) 여행을 합니다

\[ '[\text{He}']s \text{ travelling.' }, ('][\text{He}'] \text{ does travelling.' } \]
Since many denominal verbs can be separated so that the nominal becomes the object of 있다, we call such a verb a Denominal Transitive Verb. Note that there are a number of nouns which are made into verbs by simply adding 되다 just like the above case following the exactly same manner as a Denominal Transitive Verb, except that for some such verbs 되다 may be separated from the preceeding noun, making the noun the subject of 되다. That is, in such instances, the noun is in ㅂ/ㅏ form. Therefore, a denominal verb in ㅂ+되다 is called a Denominal Intransitive Verb. Examples:

(d) 연차
'delay (from schedule)'
(d.1.) 연차가 되었습니다. '[It] was delayed.', '[It] was late.', '[It] has been delayed.'
(d.2.) 연차이 되었습니다. [It] became a problem.'
(e) 문제
'problem'
(e.1.) 문제가 되었습니다. [It] became a problem.'
(e.2.) 문제가 되었습니다. [It]'s worrisome.', '[I] become worried.', '[I]'m worried.'
(f) 걱정
'worry'
(f.1.) 걱정됩니다. [It]'s worrisome.', '[I] become worried.', '[I]'m worried.'
(f.2.) 걱정이 됩니다. [It]'s worrisome.', '[I] become worried.', '[I]'m worried.'

Many nouns which may be made into denominal transitive verbs may also be made into denominal intransitive verbs. However, some nouns may be made into denominal transitive verbs but not into denominal intransitive verbs; other nouns may become denominal intransitive verbs but not denominal transitive verbs. Therefore, the best way is to learn each denominal verb, transitive or intransitive, as a separate entity. Denominal transitive verbs are often in active meaning in English, while denominal intransitive verbs are frequently passive.
3. **매- 'every', 'each'**

Some Korean nouns are built by adding **Derivational Affixes** on other stems, words or parts of words. An affix is a cover term for a prefix, (infix) or suffix. By derivation is meant word formation by way of building on stems (bases). Derivational affixes in Korean are different in character from inflectional affixes (which include endings) in that when all the inflectional affixes are stripped off from a word, what is left is a stem, while a derivational affix is part of a stem itself in building a word.

매- is a derivational prefix which means 'every', 'each'. The following words are some of the common time expressions with 매- as prefix:

- 매년 (매년) 'every year'
- 매달 (매달) 'every month'
- 매시 (매시) 'every hour'
- 매주 (매주) 'every week'
- 매분 (매분) 'every minute'
- 매학기 (매학기) 'every semester'
- 매학년 (매학년) 'every (school) grade'

Remember that the prefix 매- has the same meaning as the particle 마, which may or may not occur after a 매- word without changing the meaning.
DRILLS

1. Response-Transformation Drill (based on Grammar Note 1)

Do you go by car because the school is far away?
Yes, I go by car because the school is far away.

Does it take a lot of time because Korean is difficult?
Yes, it takes a lot of time because Korean is difficult.

Can Mr. Kim buy a nice car because he's rich?
Yes, Mr. Kim can buy a nice car because he's rich.

Are you studying Korean because you [will] go to Korea?
Yes, I'm studying Korean because I will go to Korea.

Does Mr. Lee need a big house because he has a large family?
Yes, Mr. Lee needs a large house because he has a big family.

Is the Special Express expensive because it's fast?
Yes, the Special Express is expensive because it's fast.

Are there many automobile accidents in America because there're a lot of cars?
Yes, there're many automobile accidents in America because there're a lot of cars.
7. 집에 가기우니가 이 선생은 걸어서 일하러 다닐니가?

예, 집이 가깝기 때문에 이 선생은 걸어서 일하러 다닙니다.

Does Mr. Lee walk to work because his house near?

Yes, Mr. Lee walks to work because his house is near.

8. 외교관 생활이 재미있으니가 사람들이 외교관이 되고 싶어 합니다니가?

예, 외교관 생활이 재미있기 때문에 사람들이 외교관이 되고 싶어 합니다.

Do people want to join the foreign service because life in the foreign service is interesting?

Yes, people want to become diplomats because life in the foreign service is interesting.

9. 비행기가 비포고 끝까지가 비행기로 여행합니까?

예, 비행기가 비포고 끝까지가 비행기로 여행해야.

Do you travel by airplane because it's fast and convenient?

Yes, I travel by airplane because it's fast and convenient.

10. 빠 선생은 마음이 좋으니가 어씨 사람들이 좋아합니다니가?

예, 빠 선생은 마음이 좋기 때문에 어씨 사람들이 좋아합니다.

Do many people like Mr. Kim because he's [a] warm-hearted [man]?

Yes, many people like Mr. Kim because he's warm-hearted.

2. Transformation Drill (the use of 되시)

선생: 나는 한국 음식을 좋아합니다.

학생: 나도 역시 한국 음식을 좋아해요.

I like Korean food.

I too like Korean food.

1. 빠 선생은 읽어를 잘 합니까.

빠 선생도 역시 읽어를 잘 해요.

Mr. Kim speaks good English.

Mr. Kim also speaks English well.

2. 우리 어머니는 그렇게 생각합니까.

우리 어머니도 역시 그렇게 생각해요.

My mother thinks so.

My mother also thinks so.

3. 나는 지금 현금이 필요합니다.

나도 역시 지금 현금이 필요해요.

I need cash now.

I need cash now, too.
Mr. Lee will sell his house.
Mr. Lee will sell his house, too.

Washington is humid in the summer.
Washington is also humid in the summer.

Mr. James says Korean is difficult.
Mr. James also says Korean is difficult.

Mr. Park is going to travel to Europe by plane.
Mr. Park is also going to travel to Europe by plane.

Mr. Kim's daughter works at the American Embassy.
Mr. Kim's daughter also works at the American Embassy.

There are many automobile accidents in the United States.
There are also many automobile accidents in the United States.

Are there only three trains a day?
Yes, there're only three trains a day. ('Yes, there're no trains except for three times a day.')

Does Mr. Son have only two daughters?
Yes, Mr. Son has only two daughters.

Are there only Semi-Express trains from here to Taejon?
Yes, there're only Semi-Express trains from here to Taejon.
3. 머리 가지 챙 중에서 이 챙만 사겠어요?
예, 머리 가지 챙 중에서 이 챙 밖에 사지 않았습니다.

4. 선생님 한국 말란 (말) 할 수 있어요?
예, 저는 한국 말 밖에 (말) 할 수 없습니다.

5. 선생님 한국 여자는 길 선생 부인이라 알어요?
예, 저는 한국 여자는 길 선생 부인 밖에 모릅니다.

6. 고등학교에서 걸어왔란 배웠어요?
예, 고등학교에서 걸어 밖에 배우지 않았습니다.

7. 선생님 미주 동북에서 밖에 산세요?
예, 저는 미주 동북에서 밖에 산지 않았습니다.

8. 길 선생 집 건화 반토란 알어요?
예, 길 선생 집 건화 반토란 밖에 모릅니다.

9. 한국 음식은 불고기만 좋아하세요?
예, 한국 음식은 불고기 밖에 좋지 않습니다.

10. 구마자에 싶을 때 불탄신반 여행하겠어요?
예, 구마자에 싶을 때 불탄신반에 여행하지 않았습니다.

4. Response Drill
선생: 부산에서 오는 아홉시 열차가 벌써 도착했나요?
학생: 아니요, 아직 도착하지 않았어요.

Has the 9 o'clock train from Pusan already arrived?
No, it hasn't arrived yet.
Has the morning express to Inchon already left?
No, it hasn't left yet.

Have the passengers already gotten off the train?
No, they haven't gotten off yet.

Have you already checked the baggage?
No, I haven't checked it yet.

Has the passenger train to Kangnung already left?
No, it hasn't left yet.

Has the 3 p.m. Special Express from Taegu already come in?
No, it hasn't come in yet.

Are you already ready to go to Korea? ('Is your preparation to go to Korea already done?)
No, I'm not ready yet.

Supplementary Dislogues for Comprehension

(1)

여행자: 서울에서 부산까지 하루에 공항이 열리나 지금 있습니까?

안내원: 보통 공항말입니까? 특급말입니까?

여행자: 특급과 보통 공항 그리고 출국행 맡입니다.

안내원: 저희 대화식에 가면 시각표가 있으니 보세요.

여행자: 시각표를 찾지 못, 좀 불합계서 잃지 못 하겠어요.

안내원: 출국행은 서울에서 태안까지 한시간 반에 한편씩 있습니다. 그러니, 태안에서 부산 사이에는 출국행은 아니지 않습니다.
대진에서 귀하가 우크로 말야 약한 헝강수.

외국에 세어서 보고 응접은 두시간마다 하나씩 있습니다.

여행자: 잘 알겠습니다. 고맙습니다.

(2)

여행자: 이번 여행이 외국에서 어느 나라 유럽으로 도착할까요?

친절한: 아직 못작한 여행. 외국에 연락되었습니다.

여행자: 그럼. 이 나라에서 내셔 여행을 어떻게 좋다고 날까요?

친절한: 부산행 개찰구 바로 옆에 첫차 출구입니다.

Нarrative for Comprehension and Reading:

이름은 기차 편이 빠 렛티하지 않습니다. 서울에서 부산까지 우크로 가던
바다가 날에 걷지 않으세요. 그러니 우크로 우크로 줄지 않기 때문에
많은 사람들이 응접을 합니다. 응접은 매두시간마다 한 번씩 있고
준공행도 자주 있습니다. 가끔 기차가 연락되는 일이 있지만, 그것은
매우 응접입니다. 응접하는 선거장마다 서기 때문에 아직 놀랍니다.
그때, 선 객에 여행하는 사람을 응접을 하는 것이 절일 좋다고
생각합니다.
A. Find out at the Information Desk:

1. how often Special Express trains run between Seoul and Taegu.
2. why the local trains are slower than the Semi-Express trains.
3. where the waiting room and checkroom are.
4. if the 9 o'clock train from Pusan has arrived.
5. where the entrance to the train for Pusan is.
6. what time the local passenger train which leaves Seoul at 8 a.m. arrives at Kwangju.
7. if the local trains frequently behind schedule.

B. Prepare a map of Korea and ask and answer questions about the locations of provinces, provincial capitals and other important cities.

C. Practise asking and answering questions about the kinds of transportation available between any two geographical points.

D. Assuming that you are at the station to make a sightseeing trip, find out about the train schedule and other travel information.

E. Make a short sentence to include each of the following expressions.

1. 회의 세계 심신
2. 맥락남마마
3. 눈계
4. 밥흡니다
5. 밥감니다
6. 부산행 차
7. 연락되었습니다
8. 공중행 비행기
9. 열동포장 긴항
10. 길 차리에 떨어져
11. 문제 (가) 되었습니다

34
UNIT 21. At the Ticket Window

BASIC DIALOGUE

여행자가

ticket

round-trip ticket

1. 대전까지 급행 왕복 (kas)로 잔소 주십시오. I'd like a round-trip express ticket to Taejon, please.

여행자가

요금

차이

차이가 있습니까?

 얼마나 차이가 있습니까?

 어떠한 차이가 있습니까?

2. 이동입니까? 식동입니까?

여행자가

2nd class or 3rd class?

여행자가

What's the difference in price between 2nd and 3rd class?

여행자가

A round-trip ticket for Taejon is W1,360 for the 2nd class and W930 for the 3rd, so the 2nd class costs W430 more.

여행자가

designated seat

dining car; diner
5. 그러나, 이동에는 제한서와 식당이 있고, 식당에는 그런 것이 없습니다.
   However, there are reserved seats and a dining car on the 2nd class train, and the 3rd class doesn't have such conveniences.

6. 그럼, 이동으로 가겠습니다. 이동을 주십시오.
   Well, I'll take the 2nd class, then. Give me a 2nd class ticket, please.

7. 1,360원입니다.
   Here you are. That'll be W1,360.

8. 짧습니다. 그럼요. 여기 표와 거스름 돈 640원 있습니다.
   I have no change; can you change a W1,000 bill for me?

9. 좋은습니다. 그러죠. 여기 표와 거스름 돈 640원 있습니다.
   Certainly, sir. Here's the ticket and your change W640.

10. 고통습니다. 다음 열차의 열차 번호는 몇 번이지요?
    Thank you. What's the train number of the next express?

11. 아닙니다. 다음 열차의 열차 번호는 아니요.
    The 9:45 express is No. 32.
12. 제 삐 플랫폼에서 타십시오.

13. 대단히 고맙습니다.

Thank you very much.

No. 3 platform

Board the train at No. 3 platform.
NOTES ON THE BASIC DIALOGUE

(Numbers correspond to the sentence numbers.)

1. "ticket" occurs in the following kinds of noun phrases.

   기차표  'train ticket'
   버스표  'bus ticket'
   비행기표  'airplane ticket'
   근접표  'admission ticket to the theatre'
   휴일(차)표  'round-trip (train) ticket'

   ‘one way (trip)’ is used but rarely in contrast with ‘round-trip’.

2. 엘등 as a free noun is used to mean 'the 1st', 'top (in competition with others in racing, examination or class, etc.)'. 엘등 '1st class', 엘등 '2nd class', 엘등 '3rd class', 엘등 '4th class' make up noun phrases commonly with the following kinds of nouns:

   엘등표  '1st class ticket'
   (엘등) 여관  '2nd class) inn'
   (엘등) 서기관  '3rd class) Secretary (title)'

   Note that -등 is a derivational noun suffix which is added to the Chinese numerals to denote 'class', 'grade'. Other such similarly used derivational noun suffixes are -급 and -관. Observe the following noun phrases:

   (a) 엘등급식당  '1st class restaurant'
   (엘등급)공무원  '2nd class) Civil Servant (officially designated)'
   (엘등급)교사  '3rd class) teacher (officially certified)'

   38
5. 지정석 is a 'numbered seat with exclusive right for someone'. 지정 occurs either as a noun derivational prefix or as a denominal. 지정 occurs before a small class of nouns to make noun phrases:

- 지정 호텔
- 지정 상점
- 지정 교과서

These are 'officially approved hotel', 'officially approved store', 'officially approved textbook'

8, 9. 잔돈 is small change (usually in coins); 거스름 돈 is the money returned to one after having paid for something with a paper bill.

11. -번 'number' occurs as a derivational noun suffix added to Chinese numerals to designate the number ordering for certain nominals such as numbered trains, airlines, busses or sometimes waitresses in big restaurants or bars. -번 is used similarly for numbered rooms in hotels, hospitals or for automobiles in official use. -번지 is used in address numbering.

12. 제일 'No. 1', '1st', 제이 'No. 2', '2nd', 제삼 'No. 3', '3rd',... are Chinese ordinal numerals which occur before certain nominals and these series of ordinal numerals often substitute for Korean ordinal numeral phrases 첫째, 둘째, 셋째....
UNIT 21
KOREAN BASIC COURSE

GRAMMAR NOTES

1. -(으)나 'since..., as..., because..., in view of the fact that..., etc.'

In Unit 12, Grammar Note 1, we were introduced to the construction -(으)나 which occurs before a final clause. We noticed that the -(으)나 is simply the extended construction of the -(으) form which denotes the cause or basis of action or description of the verb in the -(으) form for the succeeding inflected expression. In Unit 20, we substituted the construction -(으) for -(으) when -(으) denotes only cause or reason. The -(으) form may occur freely without -(으) in less restricted meanings before another inflected expression in sequence, and is called the Sequential Form.

여기 시간표가 있으니, 보시자요. 'Here's a schedule; you can have a look at it.'

잘돈이 없으니, 1,000원짜리 받장 빌 수 있을까요? 'Since I don't have small change, can you break a W1,000 bill for me?'

2. -(으)니가, -(으)니까?

When you make alternate questions in Korean, you have to make two questions in sequence within a sentence with the first question in raised suspended intonation and the second in falling intonation.

이것이 좋습니까, 저것이 좋습니까? 'Which is good, this or that?'

 오늘 집에 있습니까, 학교에 가겠습니까? 'Will you stay home, or go to school today?'

 이동니까, 식동니까? '2nd class or 3rd class?'

 오늘 받습니까, 내일 받습니까? '[When do] you mean, today or tomorrow?'

 한국 읽은 가르치겠어요, 영어도 배우겠어요? '[Which] will you do, teaching Korean or studying English?'
DRILLS

1. Substitution Drill

1. 우천까지 급행 왕복(차) 한장 주십시오.

Please give me a round-trip express ticket to Taejon.

2. 우천까지 급행 일등 왕복(차) 두장 주십시오.

Please give me 2 1st class round-trip express tickets to Taejon.

3. 우천까지 일등 삼등 왕복(차) 세장 주십시오.

Please give me 3 3rd class round-trip local tickets to Taejon.

4. 우천까지 삼등 삼등 왕복(차) 넷장 주십시오.

Please give me 4 3rd class local one way tickets to Taejon.

5. 우천까지 준급행 일등(차) 한장 주십시오.

Please give me just 1 2nd class Semi-Express ticket to Taejon.

6. 우천까지 준급행 일등 면트(차) 두장 주십시오.

Please give me just 2 1st class Semi-Express one way tickets to Taejon.

7. 우천까지 특급 삼등(차) 세장 주십시오.

Please give me 3 3rd class Special Express tickets to Taejon.

8. 우천까지 특급 왕복(차) 대장 주십시오.

Please give me 5 round-trip Special Express tickets to Taejon.

2. Substitution Drill

1. 일등과 삼등은 많이 차이나 차이가 있습니까?

What's the difference in price between 2nd and 3rd class? ('How much difference is there in price for 2nd and 3rd class?')

2. 불과 익은 날씨가 얼마나 차이가 있습니까?

What's the difference between spring and summer weather?

3. 서울과 부산은 집값이 얼마나 차이가 있습니까?

What's the difference is there in housing in Seoul and in Pusan?
4. 아저씨와 아줌마는 나이가 얼마나 차이가 있습니까?

5. 부산과 목포는 서울에서 거리가 얼마나 차이가 있습니까?

6. 버스와 전차는 요금이 얼마나 차이가 있습니까?

7. 뉴욕과 샌프란시스코는 시간이 얼마나 차이가 있습니까?

8. 서울 대학과 부산 대학은 수입도가 얼마나 차이가 있습니까?

9. 한국과 일본은 물가가 얼마나 차이가 있습니까?

10. 부산과 홍천이 얼마나 차이가 있습니까?

11. 부산과 홍천이 얼마나 더불어 달موافقة?

3. Substitution Drill

1. 친구가 친구간에 간격으로 파티를 줄 수 있습니다.

2. 외국 친구 친구 간에 간격으로 파티를 줄 수 있습니다.

3. 식당 친구 친구 간에 간격으로 파티를 줄 수 있습니다.

How many years difference in age is there between your uncle and your aunt?

What's the difference in distance between Seoul and Pusan and Seoul and Mokpo?

What's the difference in fare between bus and streetcar?

What's the time difference between New York and San Francisco?

What's the difference in tuition between Seoul University and Pusan University?

What's the difference in size between Korea and Japan?

What's the difference in price between a Special Express ticket and a local train ticket?

How different is the cost between a Special Express ticket and a local train ticket?

Can you change a W1,000 bill for me?

Can you change a W100 bill for me?

Can you change a W10 bill for me?
4. Substitution Drill

1. Can you change a $10 bill for me?
   I'd appreciate it very much if you could change a W200 bill for me.

2. Can you change a $20 bill for me?
   I'd appreciate it very much if you could change a $1 bill (in coins) for me.

3. Can you change a $100 bill for me?
   I'd appreciate it if you could cash this check for me.

4. I'd appreciate it if you could give me bills for this change (in coins).

5. I'd appreciate it if you could change 50 US Dollars into Won.

6. I'd appreciate it if you could cash this bond.
UNIT 21

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

5. Combination Drill (based on Grammar Note 1)

선생: 선생이 없습니다. 전원 자기의 학장 바껴 주십시오.

학생: 선생이 없습니다. 전원 자기의 학장 바껴 주십시오.

1. 오늘은 피곤합니다. 집에서 쉬십시오.
   오늘은 피곤하니 집에서 쉬십시오.

2. 한국 말이 어렵습니다. 쉬운 말을 배웁시다.
   한국 말이 어려우니 쉬운 말을 배웁시다.

3. 집 선생은 집이 가깝습니다. 집에서 일하러 올 수 있습니다.
   집 선생은 집이 가까우니 집에서 일하러 올 수 있습니다.

4. 미국 자동차가 비싸습니다. 외국 자동차를 사겠습니까.
   미국 자동차가 비싸니 외국 자동차를 사겠습니까.

5. 비행기가 빠르고 컨좆니다. 비행기를 탐니다.
   비행기가 빠르고 컨เพื่อนๆ니다. 비행기를 탐니다.

6. 목이 마르고 마릅니다. 커피를 마십시오.
   목이 마르고 마르니 커피를 마십시오.

7. 오늘은 날씨가 춥습니다. 외투를 입으십시오.
   오늘은 날씨가 추우니 외투를 입으십시오.

I don't have small change. Please break this W1,000 bill for me.

Because I don't have small change, please break this W1,000 bill for me.

I'm tired today. Let's relax at home.

Since I'm tired today, let's relax at home.

Korean is difficult. Let's learn an easy language.

Since Korean is difficult, let's learn an easy language.

Mr. Kim's house is near. He can walk to work.

Because his house is near, Mr. Kim can walk to work.

American cars are expensive. I'll buy a foreign car.

Since American cars are expensive, I'll buy a foreign car.

The airplane is fast and convenient. Let's take the plane.

Since the airplane is fast and convenient, let's take the airplane.

I'm very thirsty. Let's drink coffee.

I'm very thirsty; let's have coffee.

It's cold today. Put on your overcoat.

It's cold today; you'd better put on a coat.
8. 이 선생이 영어 잘 합니다. 이 선생에게 질문 하십시오.

이 선생이 영어 잘 하니 이 선생에게 질문 하십시오.

Mr. Lee speaks English well. Ask Mr. Lee (your questions).

Since Mr. Lee speaks good English, you'd better ask him.

6. Response-Transformation Drill

선생: 부산에서 9시에 떠나는 기차가 도착했어요?

학생: 예, 부산 9시발 기차가 도착했어요.

1. 7시 30분에 떠나는 버스가 벌써 출발했어요?

예, 7시 30분 발 버스가 벌써 출발했어요.

Has the 9 o'clock train from Pusan arrived yet?

Yes, the 9 o'clock train from Pusan ('train which left Pusan at 9') has arrived.

Has the 7:30 bus already left?

Yes, the 7:30 bus already left.

2. 6시에 광주를 떠나는 기차가 출발했어요?

예, 6시 광주 발 기차가 출발했어요.

Is the train which leaves Kwangju at 6 late ('delayed')?

Yes, the 6 o'clock train from Kwangju is late.

Is the Special Express leaving at 11 on time?

Yes, the 11 o'clock Special Express is on time.

3. 11시에 떠나는 특급이 제 시간에 있어요?

예, 11시발 특급이 제 시간에 있어요.

Is that the plane which leaves at 5 p.m.?

Yes, that's the 5 p.m. plane.
Supplementary Dialogues for Comprehension

(1)

역할자: 땅이 가지 급히 차로 환장에 얼마나 가지고 가요?

표 와는 사람: 진도면 이동은 장비 사허공이고 식당은 실학 집합원이에요.

역할자: 이곳, 이동은 잠 비시군요. 그럼 식당 환장 주십시오.

표 와는 사람: 음복으로 드립가요? 음복이면 음복 구실원입니다.

역할자: 그럼 진도와 잠에 어떤 차이가 있어요?

표 와는 사람: 음복토록 사림 오심이 더 사시지요.

역할자: 저는 이번에 땅이에 가면 언제 돌아올지 모르니까 진도로 사겠습니다.

표 와는 사람: 그럼 실학 집합원 주세요.

(2)

표 와는 사람: 자, 여기 음복토 두장 있음다. 모두 천 집합 사허공이시다.

역할자: 제가 안든 없는데, 여기 천은 자가 두장 있음다.

행복은 잘 바꿔 주십시오.

표 와는 사람: 그래요. 예, 여기 가슴은 이복 집합원 있음다.

역할자: 때단이 교망스럽다. 그럼에, 다음 차 잘차 반호는 괜찮이지요?

표 와는 사람: 잘 모르겠음다. 안내예에 가서 시간표를 보세요.
A. Mr. Kim asks you the following questions; reply with an appropriate answer.

1. 이동 표와 심동 표는 어느 것이 더 비싸니까?

2. 이동과 심동은 어떻게 다릅니까?

3. 요금에 차이가 있습니까?

4. 전돈이 있습니까?

5. 친구 자가의 집은 얼마나 멀습니까?

6. 심동 서기관과 심근 서기관은 어느 것이 더 사리니까?

7. 일등 택시와 일등 택시는 어느 것이 더 비싸니까?

8. 풍경을 보는 데 값이 670원입니다. 친구의 친구 자기 풀에서 330원을 주었습니다. 그 돈을 무엇이라고 부릅니까?

9. 누-호와 산드린 시스템은 시간이 얼마나 차이가 있습니까?

10. 미국에서 일본 택시와 이웃 택시는 수입과 얼마나 다릅니까?

B. You are at the ticket window at Seoul Railroad Station; buy the following:

1. one round-trip ticket to Taejon

2. one 2nd class round-trip tickets to Mokpo

3. two 1st class express train tickets to Kyungju

4. three (Regular) Express one-way tickets to Taegu

5. four 3rd class Semi-Express round-trip tickets to Pusan

6. five 1st class one-way airplane tickets to Tokyo

7. two 1st class sleeping-car tickets to Ulsan
UNIT 22. On the Train

BASIC DIALOGUE

차장
Chonan

Next stop, Chonan, Chonan Station.

온양
Onyang

타쳐
Taechon

[you] transfer [the train]

準備
preparation

상관이거나 태천에 가는 승객들은 다음 역에서
Passengers going to Onyang and Taechon, please get ready to transfer at the

가라말 준비를 하여 주십시오.
next station.

본선차
this train

운행
operation (airplane, train,

운행함당
shiplines, etc.)

운행합니다
[they] run (a mode of

운행합니다
transportation)

예정
[it] is run

예정입니다
(previous arrangement; schedule)

도착일이 예정입니다
[it]'s scheduled; [it]'s the

plan
[it]'s scheduled to arrive

3. 전체, 본선차는 제 시간에 운행되고 있으며,
We are on time and expect to arrive at

11시 10분에 천안역에 도착할 예정입니다.
Chonan Station at 11:10. ('At present

(조금 후에)
this train is being operated on time,

(차장이 갱속 가까이 지나 간다.)
and is expected to arrive at 11:10.')

(A little later)

(The conductor passes by Jackson.)

 gợi슨
[it] stops

정기합니다
Do all trains stop at Chonan Station?

4. 전자마타 천안 역에서 정기하나요?
5. 아닙니다. 열차에 따라(서) 다릅니다.

depending on the trains

6. 지난 달까지 열차마다 전안 위에서

depending on the trains

Ministry of Transportation

as of May 1st

Until last month, all the trains used to stop at Chonan Station, but the Ministry of Transportation changed the schedule effective as of May 1.

5월 1일 부(포)

[it] stops

the first train (of the day)

the last train (of the day)

Only Semi-Express and locals stop at Chonan now, and no Special Express trains stop there except the early morning (first) train.
### Additional Vocabulary and Phrases

#### 1. **Ticket**
- 기차 티켓 (train ticket)
- 버스 티켓 (bus ticket)
- 비행기 티켓 (airplane ticket)
- 극장 티켓 (ticket (for admitting to the theatre))

#### 2. **Fare; Fee**
- 티켓 (ticket)
- 버스 요금 (bus fare)
- 비행기 요금 (airplane fare)
- 극장 요금 (theatre) admission fee
- 택시 요금 (taxi fare)

#### 3. **Formalities**
- 여권 (passport)
- 비자 (visa)
- 입국 허가서 (entrance) visa
- 입국 시증 (immigration certificate)
- 출국 허가서 (exit) visa
- 출국 시증
- 면역 검사증
- 신분증 (I.D. card)
- 신분 증명서
- 세관 (custom house)
NOTES ON THE BASIC DIALOGUE

(Numbers correspond to the sentence numbers.)

3. 'the present time', 'at present', occurs either as a noun or as an adverb. Related expressions to 'the present' are 'the past', 'in the past', 'the future', and 'in the future'. 'the future' and 'in the future' are synonymous with 'the future' and 'in the future' respectively.

- is a derivational noun prefix meaning 'main', 'this', 'original', etc. Learn the following words:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>본인</td>
<td>'I (in public speech)'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>본열차</td>
<td>'this train'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>본점</td>
<td>'main office (bank, store)'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>본사</td>
<td>'main office (company, business firm)'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>본토</td>
<td>'mainland'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>본국</td>
<td>'home country'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>본적지</td>
<td>'the place of family origin where the family is registered in the permanent record'</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

6. A date + 보통 means 'as of the date'. 보통 does not occur after other than a date or month name.

GRAMMAR NOTES

1. An organization + 에서 ... 하다 'the organization does...'

In Korean if the topic or subject of an action verb in a sentence is an organization the actor is considered to be some unmentioned people and the organization itself does not occur as the subject or topic, while in English an organization itself can be viewed as the actor and made the subject in the sentence. Compare the following Korean and English equivalents:
The Ministry of Transportation changed the schedule. ('[They] changed the schedule at the Ministry of Transportation.')

The Foreign Service Institute teaches Korean. ('[They] teach Korean at the Foreign Service Institute.')

Our company deals with such kind of business. ('[We] deal with such kind of business in our company.')

2. \textit{N + 에 따라(서)} 'in accordance with + N', 'depending upon + N'

A nominal + 에 followed by 따라(서) before another inflected expression occurs to signify that the following inflected expression takes place based on the nominal to which 에 따라(서) is added.

The Foreign Service Institute teaches Korean. ('[They] teach Korean at the Foreign Service Institute.')

Income depends on the individual. ('Depending on the person, income is different.')

That can happen, depending on the case. ('I'll do so, in accordance with the regulation.')

[We] punished [him] according to the law. ('[We] divide the class based on the performance record of the students.')

Note that as an independent verb, 따라(서) is the infinitive of the verb stem 따라(서). 'to follow (Vt)'.

3. \textit{예정하다} 'to be expected to...', 'to be planning to...', 'to be scheduled to...'

예정 'plan', 'previous arrangement', is a noun. The construction, an action verb in prospective form \textit{-어/어가 + 예정} immediately followed by the copula which literally means something like ('[it]'s the plan to...'), is used to mean 'to be expected to...', 'to be scheduled to...' or 'to be
planning to...'. This pattern is a substitute of the pattern -을/를 계획하다 'to be planning to...', which we learned in Unit 18, Grammar Note 5.

여행을 계획하고 있습니다. 'This train is expected to arrive at Seoul Station on time.'

Are you planning to come back here by 7 o'clock tomorrow night? ('Is it your plan to come back here by 7 o'clock tomorrow night?')
1. Transformation Drill

1. 쌍석을 맞으십시오.

저녁을 먹을 준비를 해 주십시오.

2. 골 별나십시오.

골 먹을 준비를 해 주십시오.

3. 선생이 그 심장을 운전하십시오.

선생이 그 심장을 운전할 준비를 해 주십시오.

4. 다음 정거장에서 정거하십시오.

다음 정거장에서 정거할 준비를 해 주십시오.

5. 다음 정류장에서 버스를 타십시오.

다음 정류장에서 버스를 타고 할 준비를 해 주십시오.

6. 마지 않으면 군대에 들어 가십시오.

며지 않으면 군대에 들어 간 준비를 해 주십시오.

7. 주말에 여행하십시오.

주말에 여행할 준비를 해 주십시오.

8. 사무실을 옮기십시오.

사무실을 옮길 준비를 해 주십시오.

Please change trains.

Please be ready to transfer (or change trains).

Please have [your] supper.

Please be ready to have [your] supper.

Please leave right away.

Please be prepared to leave right away.

(You) run the store.

Please be prepared (or ready) to run the store.

Please stop at the next station.

Please be prepared to stop at the next station.

Please transfer to another bus at the next stop.

Please be prepared to transfer to another bus at the next stop.

Join the military service soon ('before too long').

Be prepared to join the military service soon.

Take a trip on the weekend.

Please be prepared for a trip on the weekend.

Please move the office.

Please be ready to move the office.
2. Response-Transformation Drill

1. Do I have to change trains?
Yes, you have to be prepared to transfer.

2. Do we have to stay at Taejon overnight?
Yes, [we] have to be prepared to stay (for a night at Taejon).

3. Do we have to leave Seoul on the 15th?
Yes, [we] have to be prepared to leave Seoul on the 15th.

4. Do we have to arrive [there] on time?
Yes, [we] have to be prepared to arrive [there] on time.

5. Do you have to get married soon?
Yes, I have to be ready (to get married soon).

6. Do you have to join the military sometime soon?
Yes, I have to be prepared to join the military sometime soon.

7. Does the child have to enter school soon?
Yes, he has to be prepared to enter school soon.

8. Do you have to take the graduation examination soon?
Yes, I have to be prepared to take the graduation examination soon.
3. Transformation Drill (based on Grammar Note 3)

선택: 11시에 기차가 도착할 것입니다.
확정: 11시에 기차가 도착할 예정입니다.

1. 본일차는 전안 와서 정기할 것입니다.
본일차는 전안 와서 정기할 예정입니다.

2. 우리는 시간표를 바꿀 것입니다.
우리는 시간표를 바꿀 예정입니다.

3. 저는 서울 호텔에 머무를 것입니다.
저는 서울 호텔에 머무를 예정입니다.

4. 이 푸른행은 다음 와서 멀출 것입니다.
이 푸른행은 다음 와서 멀출 예정입니다.

5. 음악회에서 그 여자가 노래를 부를 것입니다.
음악회에서 그 여자가 노래를 부를 예정입니다.

6. 이 선생은 미소 짓고 완전할 것입니다.
이 선생은 미소 짓고 완전할 예정입니다.

7. 그분은 2년 동안 한국에 있을 것입니다.
그분은 2년 동안 한국에 있을 예정입니다.

8. 내년 활동에 한국으로 다시날 것입니다.
내년 활동에 한국으로 다시날 예정입니다.

The train will arrive at 11.
The train is supposed (or due) to arrive at 11.
This train will stop at Chonan Station.
This train is scheduled to stop at Chonan Station.
We will change the schedule.
We are planning to change the schedule.
I'll be staying at Seoul Hotel.
I'm planning to stay at Seoul Hotel.
This Semi-Express will stop at the next station.
This Semi-Express is scheduled to stop at the next station.
She will sing at the concert.
She is scheduled to sing at the concert.
Mr. Lee will be engaged to Miss Kim.
Mr. Lee is planning to become engaged to Miss Kim.
He will be in Korea for two years.
He is planning (or supposed) to be in Korea for two years.
[I] will leave for Korea in August of next year.
It's my plan that I will leave for Korea in August of next year.

4. Response Drill

선택: 김 선생이 국무성에 근무합니까?
확정: 예, 현재 국무성에 근무하고 있습니다.

Does Mr. Kim work at the State Department?
Yes, he's employed at the State Department at present.
1. Do you live in Washington?
   Yes, I'm living in Washington at present.

2. Is Mr. James studying Korean?
   Yes, he's studying Korean at present.

3. Do you learn Chinese characters at school?
   Yes, I'm studying Chinese characters at present.

4. Are you changing trains?
   Yes, I'm transferring now.

5. Is the clerk changing the schedule?
   Yes, he's changing the schedule right now.

6. Is President Kim running the company?
   Yes, President Kim is running the company at present.

7. Are they showing French movies at the Central Theatre?
   Yes, they are showing French movies at present.

5. Substitution Drill

1. That depends ('it's different depending') on the train.

2. That depends on the school.

3. That depends on the case.

4. That depends on the hour.

5. That depends on the time.

6. That depends on the place.
7. 그건 사람에 따라 다릅니다.

That depends on the individual.

8. 그건 몸에 따라 다릅니다.

That depends on the sickness.

9. 그건 자동차에 따라 다릅니다.

That depends on the automobile.

10. 그건 설에 따라 다릅니다.

That depends on the season.

11. 그건 크기에 따라 다릅니다.

That depends on the size.

6. Response Drill (based on Grammar Note 2)

선생: 열차마다 선착장 위에서 정거합니까?
 학생: 그건 열차에 따라 다릅니다.

1. 사람마다 외국어를 배울 빌이 많습니까?
 그건 사람에 따라 다릅니다.

2. 책마다 좋은 선생님이 많습니까?
 그건 책에 따라 다릅니다.

3. 국장마다 예술가가 많이합니까?
 그건 국장에 따라 다릅니다.

4. 열차마다 지정석이 있습니까?
 그건 열차에 따라 다릅니다.

5. 식당마다 한식을 잘 합니까?
 그건 식당에 따라 다릅니다.

6. 도서관마다 책이 많습니까?
 그건 도서관에 따라 다릅니다.

7. 정치가마다 부자합니까?
 그건 정치가에 따라 다릅니다.

Does every train stop at Chonan Station?
It depends on the train.

Does everyone learn foreign languages fast?
It depends on the individual.

Does every school have many good teachers?
It depends on the school.

Do you have to make a reservation at every theatre?
It depends on the theatre.

Does every train have numbered seats?
It depends on the train.

Does every restaurant serve good Korean food?
It depends on the restaurant.

Does every library have many books?
It depends on the library.

Is every politician a rich man?
It depends on the politician.
Supplementary Dialogue for Comprehension

차장: 여기는 데리입니다. 무프 지방에 가시는 손님은 여기에서
감아 가 주십시오.

여객: 데리 역에서 얼마나 동안 정거하나요?

차장: 약 사십 오분 동안 멈출니다.

여객: 그 다음 역에서 출발할 예정인가요?

차장: 예, 그렇습니다.

여객: 데리 다음에는 어디에서 정거합니까?

차장: 대구까지는 한 번도 정거하지 않습니다.

Narratives for Comprehension and Reading

(1)

점거장에 도착하기 전에 차장이 정거장 이름을 말합니다. 그럴면 내림 손님은
내림 준비를 해야 합니다. 차를 갱아 다른 손님은 갱아 갱 준비를 해야 합니다.
열차에 따라서 떨리는 점거장이 다르지만 큰 점거장에는 열차마다 떨게 멈출니다.

(2)

기차들이 매개 계 시간에 운행되기 전부터 가끔 잡거나 또는 다른 사고 사태에
높이집니다. 기차 시간표는 교통부에서 만드는데, 철에 따라서 가끔
시각표를 바꿉니다.
A. Ask your instructor:

1. if all the trains stop at Chonan Station.
2. if you have to change trains at Taejon to go to Yosu.
3. if the Korean trains run on schedule.
4. if he is ready (or prepared) to leave America soon.
5. if he is scheduled (or planning) to visit Pusan before too long.
6. if he has arranged for such things as an I.D. card, immunization certificate, passport, visa, and airplane fare, etc.
7. if the Ministry of Transportation has changed the schedule.
8. if the new schedule is in effect (or starts) as of June 15th.
9. if FSI teaches Korean.
10. if they divide classes based on the performance (records) of the students.
11. if the criminals /미안/ are punished according to the law.
12. how much is the taxi fare from here to the Korean Embassy.

B. Tell your friends:

1. that you are ready to change buses at the next stop.
2. that the next stop is Suwon.
3. that you are running the home office of the bank and the branch offices are run very well.
4. that your company handles such business.
5. that you'll do so, in accordance with the rule.
6. that you are ready to leave the Washington area soon.
7. to be ready to change trains.
8. to take the final graduation exams.
9. to change their shirts tomorrow.
UNIT 23. At Taejon Inn

BASIC DIALOGUE

1. 어서 오십시오.

Welcome!

2. 제 이름은 잭슨입니다. 이 속임 실례에

My name is Jackson. I'm the one who
사용해서 잡겨inyin하고 범용 예약했습니다련
asked for a room reservation by long
사람인가요, 기존하시나요?
distance
distance call from Seoul a couple of
days ago. I wonder if you remember it.

3. 예, 예, 지배인에게서 이야기 듣었습니다.

Yes, I do. The manager told me about
서울 미국 대사관에 잡는 잡슨 신청님이시죠?
it. You are Mr. Jackson of the U.S.
Embassy in Seoul, aren't you?

4. 예, 그분입니다. 빈 방이 있습니까?

Yes, I am. Do you have a room?
여러 서기

한(国)식

(서)식

온돌방

조용한 온돌방

5. 선생님이 한식 밥을 원하시다고 하셔서, 
크고 조용한 온돌방을 하나 비어 두었습니다.

 коллектив

공유하고 있습니다.

6. 우리 역원은 한식 밥과 양식 밥을 따 공유하고 있습니다.

침대

7. 선생이 원하신 바에, 침대가 있는 양식 밥을
도릴 수 있습니다.

좋습니다.

공유하고 있습니다.

8. 저는 한식 밥으로 좋아합니다. 온돌방에
공유되었습니다.

여러 서기

숙박부

سيل

주소

따름니다

저를 따름(서)

이용

할 수 있는 한국식

(호텔) 등록부

[당신의 이름 (영호)]

주소

[그리드가 따라옵니다]

지하 2층
9. 그럼, 먼저 이름과 주소를 정확하게 쓰시고, 자를 따라(서) 이름으로 응답 오시지요.

10. 이름과 주소를 완전히 쓸여 줄 니가?

손님

11. 아니요, 이름은 외국 손님이니가, 영어로 쓰셔도 괜찮습니다.

가방

트렁크

12. 짐은 제가 가지고 응답 가집니다.
그 트렁크와 가방은 제게 주시지요.

손가방

가방 없습니다

13. 손 가방은 가방이니, 내가 들고 가집니다.
이 트렁크와 좀 부탁합니다.

Well, then, please write your name and address in this register first, and follow me to the 2nd floor.

Would you like me to write my name and address in Korean?

guest; visitor; customer

No, it’s all right to write them in English because you are a foreign guest.

briefcase; suitcase

suitcase

I will carry your baggages. Let me take your suitcase and briefcase.

briefcase

[it]'s light

The briefcase is light, so I'll carry it myself. Would you just bring this suitcase?
(Numbers correspond to the sentence numbers.)

2. 'long distance' is a noun. 'lengthy-' is a derivational noun prefix which means 'lengthy-'. Other common words which begin in 'lengthy-' are 'long period of time', etc. Opposite to 'short-' is 'short-': 'short distance', 'shortcoming', 'short period of time', etc.

For 'person who made a room reservation', see Grammar Note 1. 'to make a reservation' occurs as a transitive verb for rooms or seats at hotels, restaurants and/or public transportation.

4. 'to be empty'; 'to empty (something)', 'to vacate'. The verb phrase is used only as a transitive expression which means 'to have vacated'. (Vt) is often contracted to 비어.

5. 'Korean style' and 'Western style' is a derivational noun suffix which means 'style'.

6. 'to be endowed with' is a transitive verb which normally occurs in a verb phrase 'to be furnished with' to imply the state of being.

7. is the contraction of 'if you say you want', which is a substitute of 'if you want'. Note that often occurs in place of '-if...'.

8. The verb 'to stay (in a hotel or inn)' is more colloquial than .

9. is often followed by another inflected expression to make up a verb phrase. The following expressions occur commonly.

'Please follow me upstairs. ('Please come up following after me.')
(나를) 따라 오십시오.
'Please come after me.'

(나를) 따라 가십시오.
'Please follow him.'

(나를) 따라 와십시오.
'Please do as I do.'

(나를) 따라 읽으십시오.
'Please repeat after me ('Read after me').'

따라 외십시오.
'Please learn [it] by heart.'

('Memorize it.'

주소 'address' is one's residence. The Korean way of giving one's address is in the order of the large geographic unit down to the smallest, i.e. country, province, city, district, township, street and number, which is the other way around in English. Examples:

대한민국 서울 특별시 중구
'2-ka Sinmunno Chongno-Ku, Seoul
(Special City), Republic of Korea'

경기도 화성시 수원면 박십리
'370-2 Tapsip-li Suwon-Myon, Hwasung-
Kun, Kyunggi-Do'

13. 들고 가다 ('to hold and go') occurs as a transitive verb phrase which is used to mean 'to take (or carry) (something in the hands)'.

들고 오다 ('to hold and come') is used in a parallel way to mean 'to bring (something in the hand)'.

GRAMMAR NOTES

1. -었 + N

-었 is an ending which is added to a verb stem or stem + honorifics and/or past tense suffixes, and the -었 form modifies the following nominal. Since the -었 form always denotes past action or description for the nominal it modifies from the speaker's retrospective point of view, it is called the Retrospective Form. The ending -었 is used in the following meanings:

1. (a) An action verb stem + -었

This form denotes such-and-such an action of the verb in -었 was in
progress in the past from the speaker's retrospective point of view for the following nominal being modified. Examples:

네가 사랑하던 여자
'the girl whom I loved'

그이가 근무하던 직장
'the place (of employment) where he was working'

그 황교에 다니던 학생
'the student who was attending that school'

그 아이가 읽던 책
'the book which the child was reading'

내가 보던 사실
'the fact of which I was not aware'

1. (b) A description verb stem + -던

This form denotes something was in such-and-such a state in the past from the speaker's retrospective viewpoint for the following nominal being modified. Examples:

한때 비싼 집
'the house which was expensive at one time'

젊어서 아름다운 여자
'the woman who was beautiful in her young days'

황교 때에 똑똑하던 학생
'the student who was bright in his school days'

그때까지 유명하던 정치가
'the politician who was famous until that time'

1. (c) -(아, 이)써 름

The -써 form of an action or description verb in past tense denotes a finished action or description of the verb in -(으)','- in the past for the following nominal from the speaker's retrospective point of view.

내가 읽었던 책
'the book which I read 10 years ago'

내가 들었던 역관
'the inn where I stayed'

왕이 쓴다는 모자
'the hat which the King wore'

비싼 집
'the house which was (once) expensive'
We learned that the construction an infinitive + 야하다 is used to mean 'must...', 'have to...' (Unit 11). The same construction in which 야 is replaced by 되다 also occurs in a similar meaning except that it may have a milder connotation of obligation. Observe the following examples:

Do I have to write my name in Hankil?

Should my name be written in Hankil?

[You] have to have a car.

[You] should have a car.

Missionaries have to speak Korean.

Diplomats should know Korean.
1. Substitution Drill

1. 저를 기여하노시지요?
   I wonder if you remember me.

2. 그 때를 기여하노시지요?
   I wonder if you remember that time.

3. 그 사물을 기여하노시지요?
   I wonder if you remember that incident.

4. 그 이름을 기여하노시지요?
   I wonder if you remember my name.

5. 저 여자의 나이를 기여하노시지요?
   I wonder if you remember that woman's age.

6. 김 판사의 전화 번호를 기여하노시지요?
   I wonder if you remember Judge Kim's telephone number.

7. 제가 어렸을 때를 기여하노시지요?
   I wonder if you remember my childhood.

2. Transformation Drill (based on Grammar Note 1)

선생: 제가 이 방을 예약했습니다.

박생: 이 방은 제가 예약했던 방입니다.

1. 제가 그 대학에 다녔습니다.
   그 대학은 제가 다녔던 대학입니다.

2. 제가 저 집에서 살았습니다.
   저 집은 제가 살았던 집입니다.

3. 제가 이 차를 김 선생에게 팔았습니다.
   이 차는 제가 김 선생에게 팔았던 차입니다.
4. 제가 반도 회사에서 그때에 일했습니다.
반도 회사는 제가 그때에 일했던 회사입니다.

5. 제가 그 학생을 가르쳤습니다.
그 학생은 제가 가르쳤던 학생입니다.

6. 제가 음악을 좋아했습니다.
그 음악은 제가 좋아했던 음악입니다.

7. 제가 식당에서 식사를 했습니다.
그 식당은 제가 식사를 했던 식당입니다.

8. 제가 거기서 한국 밥을 먹었습니다.
거기는 제가 한국 밥을 먹었던 곳입니다.

9. 제가 여기에 술을 마셨습니다.
저 여기는 제가 술을 마셨던 곳입니다.

I worked at Bando Company at that time.
Bando Company is (the company) where I worked at that time.

I taught that student.
That student is the one I taught.

I liked that music.
That (music) is the music I liked.

I had lunch at that restaurant.
That (restaurant) is the restaurant where I had lunch.

I studied Korean there.
That's (the place) where I studied Korean.

I stayed in that inn.
That (inn) is the inn where I stayed.

3. Response-Transformation Drill (based on Grammar Note 1)

선생: 이 집은 누가 살던 집입니까?
/혜성은 난/  

학생: 이 집은 난이 살던 집입니다.

1. 왜 선생님, 걱정무엇을 마셔 본입니까?
/혜성은 걱정위에서 가르쳤습니다/

왜 선생님은 걱정 때문에 가르치셨나요.

2. 어느 집이 전에 선생이 살던 집입니까?
/혜성 이증길/

어느 집이 전에 제가 살던 집입니다.

Who was living in this house?
[President Washington]

This is the house in which President Washington used to live.

What was Mr. Park doing before?
[He taught at a college.]

Mr. Park is a man who used to teach at a college.

Which is the house in which you used to live? [that white two storey house]

That white two storey house is the one where I used to live.
UNIT 23  KOREAN BASIC COURSE

3. 어느 여친이 선배이 머무르던 여관입니까?
   /국제 여관/
   국제 여관이 제가 머무르던 여관입니다.

4. 선배이 사먹던 양복이 어느 것입니까?
   /저 가반 양복/
   저 가반 양복이 제가 사먹던 양복입니다.

5. 어느 나막이 선배이 가고 싶던 곳입니까?
   /한국/
   한국이 제가 가고 싶던 곳입니다.

6. 선배이 사먹힌 둔척이 누구 입니까?
   /저 눈썹이 가반 여자/
   저 눈썹이 가반 여자가 제가 사먹힌 둔척입니다.

7. 이 왕고가 선배이 만난 흔한 입니까?
   /아니요/
   아니요, 이 왕고는 제가 만난 왕고가 아닙니다.

8. 저분은 어느 은행에 지배인으로 있던 분입니까?
   /한국 은행/
   저분은 한국 은행에 지배인으로 있던 분입니다.

Which (inn) is the inn where you were staying? [International Inn]
International Inn is the inn where I used to stay.
Which is the suit you intended to buy? [that black suit]
That black suit is the one which I intended to buy.
What country is (the place) where you wanted to go? [Korea]
Korea is (the place) where I wanted to go.
Who is the girl you loved? [that girl with dark eyebrows]
That girl with dark eyebrows is the girl I loved.
Is this the school you attended? [no]
No, this is not the school I attended.
Of what bank was that man the manager? [Bank of Korea]
That man was the manager of the Bank of Korea.

4. Transformation Drill (based on Grammar Note 1)

선생: 그 여자는 예쁘어요.
학생: 그 여자는 예쁘던 여자입니다.

1. 이 집은 건축 아름답어요.
   이 집은 건축 아름답던 집입니다.
   She was pretty.
   She was the woman who was pretty.
   This house was cozy before.
   This was the house which was cozy before.
2. 그 학교는 전에 이름이 있었어요.
그 학교는 전에 이름이 있던 학교입니다.

3. 그 의사의 뒤 전화번호요.
그 의사는 뒤 전화번호 입니다.

4. 그 아이는 대단히 똑똑해요.
그 아이는 대단히 똑똑한 아이입니다.

5. 이 선생은 우리 습관했어요.
이 선생은 우리 습관한 사람입니까.

6. 그 학교가 전에 운동으로 유명했어요.
그 학교가 전에 운동으로 유명하던 학교입니까.

7. 이분이 전에 결정했어요.
이분이 전에 결정한 분입니다.

5. Substitution Drill

1. 미국 대사관에 계시는 귀한 선생이시지요?
You're Mr. Jackson of the American Embassy, aren't you?

2. 한국 은행에 계시는 귀한 선생이시지요?
You're Mr. Kim of the Bank of Korea, aren't you?

3. 중앙 병원에 계시는 뛰어난 선생이시지요?
You're Dr. Kim of the Central Hospital, aren't you?

4. 반도 회사에 계시는 귀국장이시지요?
You're Mr. ("Bureau Chief") Kim of Bando Company, aren't you?

5. 서울 대학에 계시는 젊고 교수 이시지요?
You're Professor Chung of Seoul University, aren't you?

6. 외무부에 계시는 이 과장이시지요?
You're Mr. ("Department Head") Lee of the Ministry of Foreign Affairs, aren't you?

7. 미국 공보관에 계시는 귀한 선생의 친구 이시지요?
You're Mr. Kim's friend who works at USIA, aren't you?
8. 요코 연구원에 체신는 선임 외국어이사요?
You're a linguist of F.S.I., aren't you?

9. 국무서에 체신는 존스 선임의 비서이시지요?
You're Mr. Jones' secretary of the State Department, aren't you?

6. Transformation Drill

선생: 방이 비었어요.
학생: 빈 방이 있습니다.

1. 온돌방이 쓸용하나요.

존용한 온돌방이 있습니다.

2. 앞석 밥이 깨끗합니다.

깨끗한 앞석 밥이 있습니다.

3. 손 가방이 가볍습니다.

가벼운 손 가방이 있습니다.

4. 밥이 시고 밥이랫니다.

시고 밥이 있닙니다.

5. 밥이 아닙닙니다.

아닌 밥이 있습니다.

6. 여학생이 귀엽습니다.

귀엽고 여학생이 있습니다.

7. 자동차가 시고 좋습니다.

시고 좋은 자동차가 있습니다.

8. 소년이 젊습니다.

젊은 소년이 있습니다.

9. 의사가 유명합니다.

유명한 의사가 있습니다.

The room is vacant.
There's a vacant room.
The Ondol room is quiet.
We have a quiet Ondol room.
The Western style room is clean.
We have a clean Western style room.
The briefcase is light.
I have a light briefcase.
The room is noisy.
There's a noisy room.
The room is cozy.
We have a cozy room.
The girl student is cute.
There is a cute girl student.
The automobile is inexpensive and nice.
We have an inexpensive and nice car.
The boy is honest.
There's an honest boy.
The doctor is famous.
There's a famous doctor.
KOREAN BASIC COURSE

UNIT 23

7. Substitution Drill

1. Our inn has (or is furnished with) both Korean style and Western style room.
   Our inn has (or is furnished with) both Korean style and Western style room.

2. That department store has both Korean products and foreign products (goods).
   That department store has both Korean products and foreign products (goods).

3. That tailor shop has both man's (suit) department and woman's (suit) department.
   That tailor shop has both man's (suit) department and woman's (suit) department.

4. She has both beauty and virtue.
   She has both beauty and virtue.

5. Our school has both piano and organ.
   Our school has both piano and organ.

6. This apartment has both heating system and cooling system.
   This apartment has both heating system and cooling system.

7. General Choe has both courage and wisdom.
   General Choe has both courage and wisdom.

8. This restaurant has both Korean food section and Western food section.
   This restaurant has both Korean food section and Western food section.

8. Substitution Drill

1. A Korean style room is enough for me.
   A Korean style room is enough for me.

2. An Ondol room is enough for me.
   An Ondol room is enough for me.

3. A Western style room is enough for me.
   A Western style room is enough for me.

4. A Hanjungsik is enough for me.
   A Hanjungsik is enough for me.
5. 저는 커피 한 잔으로 충분합니다.  
A cup of coffee is enough for me.

6. 저는 홍차만으로 충분합니다.  
Tea alone is enough for me.

7. 저는 양복 세 벌로 충분합니다.  
Three suits are enough for me.

8. 저는 외국어 하나만으로 충분합니다.  
One foreign language is enough for me.

9. 저는 이 돈으로 충분합니다.  
This money is enough for me.

10. 저는 세봉급으로 충분합니다.  
My salary is enough for me.

11. 저는 세봉급으로 만족합니다.  
I'm satisfied with my salary.

9. Substitution Drill

1. 빈 방이 있습니까?  
Do you have a vacant (or empty) room?

2. 빈 그릇이 있습니까?  
Do you have an empty container (or bowl)?

3. 빈 일 자가 있습니까?  
Do you have a vacant position?

4. 빈 자가 있습니까?  
Do you have an empty seat?

5. 빈 병이 있습니까?  
Do you have an empty bottle?

6. 빈 드유가 있습니까?  
Do you have an empty jar?

7. 빈 좌석이 있습니까?  
Do you have (or is there) an empty seat?

8. 빈 선반이 있습니까?  
Do you have a vacant drawer?
9. 김홍이 있습니까?

Do you have an empty can?

10. 빈 상자가 있습니까?

Do you have an empty box?

10. Substitution Drill

1. 저는 운동방에 들겠습니까.

I'll stay in (or take) an Ondol room.

2. 저는 외이 원시 헤이에 드겠습니다.

I'll stay in Y.M.C.A.

3. 저는 한국식 여행에 들겠습니다.

I'll stay in a Korean style inn.

4. 저는 산업 여행에 들겠습니다.

I'll stay in an inexpensive inn.

5. 저는 총 비산 호텔에 들겠습니다.

I'll stay in a rather expensive hotel.

6. 저는 조용한 여행에 들겠습니다.

I'll stay in a quiet inn.

7. 저는 시내에서 가까운 여행에 들겠습니다.

I'll stay in an inn which is near downtown.

8. 저는 교통이 편리한 호텔에 들겠습니다.

I'll stay in a hotel which is convenient in transportation.

9. 저는 깨끗한 집에 들겠습니다.

I'll stay in a clean house.

10. 저는 크고 넓은 방에 들겠습니다.

I'll stay in a big and large room.

11. Substitution Drill

1. 저를 따라서 올라 오십시오.

Please come up (following) after me.

2. 저를 따라서 내려 오십시오.

Please come down after me.
3. Please read after me.

4. Please practise after me.

5. Please pronounce after me.

6. Please come after me.

7. Please do after me.

8. Please write after me.

9. Please say after me.

10. Please dance after me.

12. Combination-Transformation Drill

본문: 온돌방이 좋습니다. 그리고 조용합니다.
의문: 그게 헛소리나요?

1. 집이 넓습니다. 그리고 깔끔합니다.
   넓고 깔끔한 집이 있습니다.

2. 여자가 아름답습니다. 그리고 똑똑합니다.
   아름답고 똑똑한 여자가 있습니다.

3. 자동차가 싸습니다. 그리고 좋습니다.
   사고 좋은 자동차가 있습니다.

4. 학생이 부지런합니다. 그리고 공부를 잘 합니다.
   부지런하고 공부 잘 하는 학생이 있습니다.

The Ondol room is big. And it's quiet.
We have (or there is) a big and quiet room.
The house is large. And it's clean.
There's a house which is large and clean.
The girl is beautiful. And she is smart.
There's a girl who is beautiful and smart.
The car is inexpensive. And it's nice.
There's a car which is inexpensive and nice.
The student is diligent. And he is a good student.
There's a student who is diligent and studies well.
5. 비행기가 빠릅니다. 그리고 편리합니다.
비행기가 빠르고 편리합니다.

6. 식료가 임을 잘 합니다. 그리고 음식을 잘 만듭니다.
음료 임의 식료를 잘 만드는 식료가 임을 합니다.

7. 수영장이 가깝습니다. 그리고 물이 깨끗합니다.
가깝고 물이 깨끗한 수영장이 있습니다.

8. 청이 잘 기スキ입니다. 그리고 재미 있습니다.
잘 기스고 재미있는 청이 있습니다.

13. Response-Transformation Drill (based on Grammar Note 2)

선생: 이름과 주소를 한글로 쓰여야 합니다.

학생: 예, 이름과 주소를 한글로 쓰아야 합니다.

1. 한국에 가지 전에 한국 음식 배워야 합니까?
   예, 한국에 가지 전에 한국 음식 배워야 합니다.

2. 암보이 여력 없이야 합니까?
   예, 암보이 여력 없이야 합니다.

3. 미국에서는 자동차를 개여야 합니까?
   예, 미국에서는 자동차를 개여야 합니다.

4. 외교관들은 외국어를 알아야 합니까?
   예, 외교관들은 외국어를 알아야 합니다.

5. 일요일에 교회에 나가야 합니까?
   예, 일요일에 교회에 나가야 합니다.

Do I have to write name and address in Hankil?
Yes, you have to write your name and address in Hankil.

Do you have to study Korean before you go to Korea?
Yes, you have to study Korean before you go to Korea.

Do you have to have several suits?
Yes, you have to have several suits.

Do you have to have a car in America?
Yes, you have to have a car in America.

Do the diplomats have to know foreign languages?
Yes, diplomats have to know foreign languages.

Do you have to go to church on Sunday?
Yes, you have to go to church on Sunday.
6. Do you have to make an appointment before you visit the doctor?
   Yes, you have to make an appointment before you visit the doctor.

7. Do you have to make a reservation before you buy an airplane ticket?
   Yes, you have to make a reservation before you buy an airplane ticket.

8. Do you have to go to Korea this year?
   Yes, I have to go to Korea this year.

9. Do you have to make a room reservation in advance?
   Yes, you have to make a room reservation in advance.

10. Do you have to start preparing for moving from now?
    Yes, you have to start preparing for moving from now.
Supplementary Dialogue for Comprehension

여관 서기: 어서 오십시오.

손님: 밤을 예약하고 싶은데 별 밝이 있습니까?

여관 서기: 한식 밤을 원하시요. 양식 밤을 원하세요?

손님: 아무 것이나 해볼지만 꼭 해야 차이가 있습니까?

여관 서기: 예, 양식 밤이 100원 더 비상합니다. 그러나 지금 양식 밤은

빈 밤이 없고 조용한 온돌반이 하나 비어 있습니다.

손님: 그럼 그 온돌반이 들어가요.

여관 서기: 먹십니까 먹户籍을 예정이십니까?

손님: 식음 동안 먹户籍을 예정이에요.

여관 서기: 좋습니다. 그럼, 여기에 선생의 식탁과 주소를 서주십시오.

Narratives for Comprehension and Reading

(1)

여행자들은 매번 여관에 묵기 전에 미리 밤을 예약합니다. 시골 여관에는

아무 때나 늦 릴 밤이 없지만 큰 도시에서는 밤을 예약하는 것이 좋습니다.

특히 사람들인 여행을 많이 하는 여행 젊이나 가을 젊에는 미리 예약 하려고

하는 것이 필요합니다.
EXERCISES

A.

Call the Inchon Hotel and make a room reservation for the second week end of the next month. Tell the hotel clerk that you would like a quiet and large Western style room with two beds and a bath.

B.

You arrived at Taejon Inn without a previous reservation; find out from the clerk:

1. if he has a vacant room.
2. (if he has one) whether it is quiet and large.
3. if it has a bathtub and bathroom in it.
4. (if not) where they are.
5. how much they charge for an Ondol room for a night.

C.

Ask your assistant 정철수:

1. to write his name, address and telephone number in your address book.
2. to make a long-distance call to Pusan and make a hotel reservation, preferably at the New Pusan Hotel, for you and your wife for the whole last week of August.
3. to bring the newly arrived Embassy official's brief-case and baggages upstairs following after you.
4. to call your wife and tell her that you had to go to the airport to meet a State Department official arriving at 6:30 and that you will be home late this evening.
D. Tell your instructor that:

1. your address is 275-4 Sindang-Dong Seondong-Ku, Seoul.
2. your former address was 36 Sinchon-Dong Inchon, Kyunggi Province.
3. the place where you were working until last year was a bus. company.
4. this is the book which your daughter was reading.
5. Mr. Ahn was a politician who was very famous until two years ago.
6. Mrs. Song is a woman who was beautiful and intelligent in her young days.
7. that Taejon Inn was where you stayed at that time.
8. that Minister Choe was a General who used to be (or was) honest when he was in the army.
9. that the Bando Company is where you worked for 6 years.
10. that one foreign language is enough for you.
11. that you're satisfied with your salary.
12. that there is no vacant (or empty) seat.
13. that you and your company will stay in a Korean style inn which is convenient to transportation and near downtown.
UNIT 24. At Taejon Inn (Continued)

BASIC DIALOGUE

(Upstairs - a little later)

1. 이 방이 마음에 들어요?  였 이 방이 마음에 안 들어요, 다음 방도 비어 있습니까.
   How do you like this room? If you don't care for this one, the next room is also available.

2. 예, 이 방에 들어요. 이 방에 들기로 하지요.
   Oh, this room is quite nice. I like it. I'll take it. ('I'll decide to stay in.')
3. 목욕을 하시면 야매있는 목욕탕에 목욕시설이 있습니다. 화장실은 용사터라 하시서 있습니다.

4. 선생님은 학생들은 여기 있습니다. 밖에 나가실 일이 있으시면 동료 없이 방을 나가시고 나가시도 학실이시요.

5. 좋은 날아 이 방 번호가 이십 오십이군요.

여관비는 미리 내야 합니까?

6. 숙박비는 하루에 500원인데, 선생이 다이나실때 내면 됩니다.

코드
코드하십시오.
코드됩니다.
코드되어 있습니다.

If you'd like to take a bath, there's a bathroom at the end of the hall downstairs. And there's a toilet on each floor.

key

要 सुरे, without fail

[I] lock

(please try going out); please go out

Here's your room key. If you happen to go out, please be sure to lock the door [before you go].

객실

Room No. 25

lodging charge

in advance; beforehand

[I] pay for the lodging

Fine. I'll do that. Oh, the room number is 25. Would you like me to pay in advance?

숙박비

lodging charge (including meals)

We charge W500 for a day; you can pay when you check out.

inclusive

[it] includes

[it]'s included

[it]'s being included

83
7. 그리고 속tingham에는 아침과 저녁 식사가 포함되어 있습니다.

8. 아, 그것은 좌충우돌. 그럼 식사는 식당에 가서 먹습니까. 밖으로 꼭따 줄니까요?

9. 우리 호텔은 호텔이 아니기 때문에 손님을 위한 식당이 따로 없고 식사도 빌어먹는 여자가 식사를 손님 밖에 꼭따 줍니다.

Breakfast and supper are included in the bill, by the way.

[she] brings; [she] fetches meals.

Oh, that's nice. By the way, do I eat in the dining-room, or do you bring meals to the room?

Our inn is not a big hotel, so we don't have a separate dining-room for guests. The maid will bring your meals to your room.
NOTES ON THE BASIC DIALOGUE

(Numbers correspond to the sentence numbers.)

1. "I'm fond of" is an intransitive expression, so a subject or topic precedes it.

2. "[it]s just a right size" is a description verb which precedes certain nominals (as a subject or topic) such as house, room, physical parts of a human body, etc.

3. is a derivational noun suffix which means 'floor' or 'storey'.

- 1st floor; 'one storey'
- 2nd floor; 'two storeys'
- 3rd floor; 'three storeys'
- upstairs
- downstairs
- each floor

4. 'without fail' is an adverbial which occurs usually in an imperative sentence but also in other sentence types as a substitute of -도. A phrase N + 을/을 'without N' is used as an adverbial. 'please be sure to...'; 'please try... doing...'; 'please try to...' occurs as a kind of an imperative sentence final form. (See Grammar Notes 2 for the ending -도).

5. is a derivational noun suffix which denotes 'expense'. occurs in the following common words:

- lodging charge (which includes meals)
- hotel charge
UNIT 24
KOREAN BASIC COURSE

식비
'expense for food'

학비
'expense for schooling'

교통비
'expenses for transportation'

여비
'travel expenses'

8. 과다 주다 'to bring', 'to fetch' is used as a substitute of 과다 오다 or 과다 오다 'to bring (something)'. We will learn in detail about the ending -다가 과다 주- in the subsequent unit.

9. * in 손님용 식당 is a derivational noun suffix which means 'for the use of'. The nominal ending in * + another nominal makes up a noun phrase with the word in * as attribute to the following noun. * alone occurs occasionally in signs.

손님용 식당
'dining room for guests'

위생용 변소
'toilet for students'

직원용 전화
'telephone for staff only'

숙녀용
'Ladies, Women (restroom)'

신사용
'Gentlemen, Men (restroom)'

GRAMMAR NOTES

1. -토록

The ending -토록 is added to a verb stem or a verb stem + honorific suffix (but no other verb suffixes are added to a stem). The -토록 form is generally used in the following ways:

(a) -토록 하다 'to try doing...', 'to intend to...'

The -토록 form immediately followed by the verb *- without a pause denotes that the speaker or the addressee in the sentence as a subject or a topic 'intends to', 'tries to' or 'tries (doing)....'
시각이 있으면 한국말을 배우고 싶습니다.

내일까지 돌아 오도록 하시요.

이 단어를 왜어 버리지 않도록 아십시요.

(1) A Personal noun + {예게} + -아/어 하다 'to make someone do...'

The same construction as (a) preceded by a personal noun + {예게} is used as a substitute of the -게 하다 construction (Unit 16, Grammar Note 3). Examples:

나 그 사람에게 그런 일을 하도록 할 수 없어요.

그 아이에게 공부하도록 하십시오. 'Have the child study,'

(c) A time expression + -아/어 'until...'

A time expression + the -아/어 form of such verbs as 되- 'to become', 끝- 'to be over', 늦- 'to be late', which may be followed by a pause occurs before another inflected expression, and means 'until...'.

밥 늦 아/어 공부했어요. 'I studied until late at night.'

밥 얼 무시가 끝 아/어 아버지가 집에 안 왔어요. 'Father didn't come home until (it was) 12 o'clock at night.'

(d) -아/어 + other than 하다 'so that...', 'so as to...', 'in order to...', 'to the extent of...'

The -아/어 form followed by a pause before another inflected expression is rendered in English with various meanings, which basically expresses action or state of being in terms of extent to which a following inflected expression is performed. Examples:

학생들이 공부 잘 하도록, 도와 주어야 합니다.

한국에서 근무 앞을 바라 하도록, 열심히 준비하고 있습니다.

그이에게 될 수 있으면 숙지
이 곳에 묵어에 다시 못해 주십시오.

'I'll try to study Korean if I have time.'

'I'll try to come back by tomorrow.'

'Please try not to forget this word.'

'I'll try to come back by tomorrow.'

'Please try not to forget this word.'

The same construction as (a) preceded by a personal noun + {예게} is used as a substitute of the -게 하다 construction (Unit 16, Grammar Note 3). Examples:

나 그 사람에게 그런 일을 하도록 할 수 없어요.

그 아이에게 공부하도록 하십시오. 'Have the child study,'

(c) A time expression + -아/어 'until...'

A time expression + the -아/어 form of such verbs as 되- 'to become', 끝- 'to be over', 늦- 'to be late', which may be followed by a pause occurs before another inflected expression, and means 'until...'.

밥 늦 아/어 공부했어요. 'I studied until late at night.'

밥 얼 무시가 끝 아/어 아버지가 집에 안 왔어요. 'Father didn't come home until (it was) 12 o'clock at night.'

(d) -아/어 + other than 하다 'so that...', 'so as to...', 'in order to...', 'to the extent of...'

The -아/어 form followed by a pause before another inflected expression is rendered in English with various meanings, which basically expresses action or state of being in terms of extent to which a following inflected expression is performed. Examples:

학생들이 공부 잘 하도록, 도와 주어야 합니다.

한국에서 근무 앞을 바라 하도록, 열심히 준비하고 있습니다.

그이에게 될 수 있으면 숙지
이 곳에 묵어에 다시 못해 주십시오.

'You have to help the students, so that they can study well.'

'I'm studying hard in order to prepare to work in Korea.'

'Please tell him to leave this place as soon as possible.'
UNIT 24

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

2. -(으)로 하다 'to decide to do something'

The -(으)로 하다 form occurs to mean 'to decide to...' In this construction, the verb of the -(으)로 하다 form is always an action verb. Neither the copula nor description verbs occur in the -(으)로 하다 form in the same construction. The tenses of the whole construction are generated in -(으)로 하다 but the -(으)로 하다 form may be in honorifics if the subject or topic of the sentence is honored.

이 방에 들기로 했어요.

'I've decided to stay in this room.'

서울에 오는데 한 계시기로 만났어요.

'Will you decide to be in Seoul for a long time?'

한국에 살기로 했지만, 이제 마음이 변했어요.

'[I] decided to live in Korea but now [I] changed my mind.'

3. -(으)면 되다 '[you] may...', '[it] will do', 'you can...'

The -(으)면 되다 form followed by -(으)면 되다 without a pause which literally means ('if [you] do... [it] becomes') is used to denote concession or permission as a response to someone's question in certain situations.

속박비는 선생이 떠나실 때

'You can pay (for the lodging) when you check out.'

(내 맘에 됩니다.)

A: 금 선생, 잔돈 있으면 좀 벌써 주시겠어요?
B: 얼마나 짭랑하세요?
A: 오십원이면 되겠어요.

'Will you lend me some small change, Mr. Kim?'

'How much do you need?'

'W50 will do.'

방 열시까지 오면 되나요?

'Is it all right if I come by 10 o'clock at night?'

예, 그렇게 하면 됩니다.

'Yes, that will be fine.' or 'Yes, you can do that.'
1. Substitution Drill

1. 이 방이 마음에 드나다.
   I like this room. (or This room appeals to me.)

2. 이 교실이 마음에 드나다.
   I like this classroom.

3. 저 학생이 마음에 드나다.
   I like that student.

4. 저 학생의 매도가 마음에 드나다.
   I like the attitude of that student.

5. 저 학생의 행동이 마음에 드나다.
   I like that student's behavior.

6. 저 학생의 척척이 마음에 드나다.
   I like that student's physique.

7. 저 여학생의 성격이 마음에 드나다.
   I like that student's personality.

8. 저 여학생의 체형이 마음에 드나다.
   I like that girl's figure.

9. 김 장군의 차가 마음에 드나다.
   I like General Kim's car.

10. 그 자동차 색이 마음에 드나다.
    I like the color of that car.

2. Substitution Drill

1. 이 방이 위 이쁘지 않나요.
   This room is very cozy!

2. 이 교실이 위 이쁘지 않나요.
   This classroom is very cozy!

3. 선생의 집이 위 이쁘지 않나요.
   Your house is very cozy!
4. 이 침실이 뭐 아늑하군요.
This bedroom is very cozy!

5. 이 음접실이 뭐 아늑하군요.
This parlor is very cozy!

6. 신생의 사무실이 뭐 아늑하군요.
Your office is very cozy!

7. 이 손님 방이 뭐 아늑하군요.
This guest room is very cozy!

8. 이 서재가 뭐 아늑하군요.
This study (room) is very cozy!

9. 이 부엌이 뭐 아늑하군요.
This kitchen is very cozy!

3. Substitution Drill

1. 숙박비에(눈) 식사가 포함되어 있습니다.
Meals are included in the lodging charge.

2. 분고기 때문에 밥이 포함되어 있습니다.
Rice is included in a Pulkoki-Paekpan.

3. 음식비에는 수수 비가 포함되어 있습니다.
The fee for an operation is included in the hospital bill.

4. 수업료에는 휴 (권)이 포함되어 있습니다.
Books are included in the tuition.

5. 비행기 요금에는 식사가 포함되어 있습니다.
Meals are included in the airplane fare.

6. 항정비에는 분고기가 포함되어 있습니다.
Pulkoki is included in Hanjungsik.

7. 음식 과에는 밥이 포함되어 있습니다.
The tip is included in the price of the food.

8. 모든 요금에는 밥이 포함되어 있습니다.
Tips are included in all fares.

9. 그 불건 곳에는 세금이 포함되어 있습니다.
Tax is included in the price of that merchandise.
4. Transformation Drill

선생: 이 방에 돈게율까요?
학생: 이 방에 돈게 유키 헤어요.

1. 서울에서 살게율까요.
   서울에서 살기로 했어요.

2. 좀 더 산 자동차를 사게율까요.
   좀 더 산 자동차를 사기로 했어요.

3. 부산에 이동으로 가게율까요.
   부산에 이동으로 가기로 했어요.

4. 커피를 마시게율까요.
   커피를 마시기로 했어요.

5. 내일은 월요일에 왕고에 오게율까요.
   내일은 월요일에 왕고에 오기로 했어요.

6. 한국에서 한국 밥을 계속 먹게율까요.
   한국에서 한국 밥을 계속 먹기로 했어요.

7. 오늘 오후에 밥찌개에 들른게율까요.
   오늘 오후에 밥찌개에 들르기로 했어요.

8. 새 양복을 사게율까요.
   새 양복을 사기로 했어요.

9. 방에 이사하게율까요.
   방에 이사하기로 했어요.

10. 한국에 가기 전에 자동차를 팔게율까요.
    한국에 가기 전에 자동차를 팔기로 했어요.

I'll take this room.
I've decided to take this room.
I'll live in Seoul.
I've decided to live in Seoul.
I'll buy a little cheaper car.
I've decided to buy a little cheaper car.
I'll go to Pusan by 2nd class.
I've decided to go to Pusan by 2nd class.
I'll drink coffee.
I've decided to drink coffee.
I'll come to school by bus tomorrow.
I've decided to come to school by bus tomorrow.
I'll continue studying Korean in Korea.
I've decided to continue studying Korean in Korea.
I'll stop by the department store this afternoon.
I've decided to stop by the department store this afternoon.
I'll buy a new suit.
I've decided to buy a new suit.
I'll move in August.
I've decided to move in August.
I'll sell my car before I go to Korea.
I've decided to sell my car before I go to Korea.
5. Response Drill

When do I have to pay my bill (for lodging)?
You have to pay it in advance.

When do I have to bring the homework?
You have to bring it in advance.

When do I have to buy the train ticket?
You have to buy the ticket in advance.

When do I have to make a room reservation?
You have to make a room reservation in advance.

When do I order food?
You have to order food in advance.

When do I have to pay tuition?
You have to pay tuition in advance.

When do I have to pay the bus fare?
You have to pay the bus fare in advance.

When do I have to make an appointment?
You have to make an appointment in advance.

6. Substitution Drill

The next room is vacant.

The position (or job) is vacant.

The Information Officer's position is vacant.

The Cultural Attaché's position is vacant.
5. 무관 차기자 비어 있습니다.  
   The Military Attache's position is vacant.

6. 해군 무관 차기자 비어 있습니다.  
   The Naval Attache's position is vacant.

7. 공군 무관 차기자 비어 있습니다.  
   The Air Attache's position is vacant.

8. 일반 사기과 차기자 비어 있습니다.  
   The 1st Secretary's position is vacant.

9. 이등 사기과 차기자 비어 있습니다.  
   The 2nd Secretary's position is vacant.

10. 행정관 차기자 비어 있습니다.  
    The Administrative Officer's position is vacant.

11. 보자관 차기자 비어 있습니다.  
    The Assistant's (or the Aide's) position is vacant.

12. 교문관 차기자 비어 있습니다.  
    The Advisor's position is vacant.

13. 인사 과장 차기자 비어 있습니다.  
    The Personnel Officer's position is vacant.

14. 부대사 차기자 비어 있습니다.  
    The Deputy-Ambassador's position is vacant.

7. Transformation Drill (based on Grammar Note 2)

I’m planning to buy a new car.  
I too have decided to buy a new car.

I’m planning to make a trip on the weekend.  
I too have decided to make a trip on the weekend.

I’m planning to continue studying Korean in Korea.  
I too have decided to continue studying Korean in Korea.
UNIT 24  KOREAN BASIC COURSE

3. 나는 여름에 유가를 밝을 계획입니다. 
나도 여름에 유가를 밝기로 했습니다.

4. 나는 젊음에 미국을 여러날 계획합니다. 
나도 젊음에 미국을 여러날 계획합니다.

5. 나는 내년에 집을 살 계획입니다. 
나도 내년에 집을 살기로 했습니다.

6. 나는 부모님에게 잡거리 전화를 걸 
계획합니다. 
나도 부모님에게 잡거리 전화를 걸기로 했습니다.

7. 나는 곧 이사를 계획입니다. 
나도 곧 이사하기로 했습니다.

8. 나는 서울에서 한식집에서 살 계획입니다. 
나도 서울에서 한식집에서 살기로 했습니다.

9. 나는 다음해 졸 삼촌 집을 벽을 계획합니다. 
나도 다음해 졸 삼촌 집을 벽기로 했습니다.

8. Substitution Drill

1. 문문을 잠궈십시오. 
Please lock the door of the room.

2. 문문을 잠궈십시오. 
Please lock the gate.

3. 자동차 문을 잠궈십시오. 
Please lock the door of the car.

4. 문문을 잠궈십시오. 
Please lock the window.

I'm planning to take a vacation in summer. 
I too have decided to take a vacation in summer.

I'm planning to leave America in August. 
I too have decided to leave America in August.

I'm planning to sell my house next year. 
I too have decided to sell my house next year.

I'm planning to make a long distance call to my parents. 
I too have decided to make a long distance call to my parents.

I'm planning to move soon. 
I too have decided to move soon.

I'm planning to live in a Korean style house in Seoul. 
I too have decided to live in a Korean style house in Seoul.

I'm planning to study a little easier language next time. 
I too have decided to study a little easier language next time.
5. 단추를 잠그십시오.
   Please fasten the button.

6. 가방을 잠그십시오.
   Please lock the briefcase.

7. 창문을 잠그십시오.
   Please lock the window.

8. 자물쇠를 잠그십시오.
   Please lock the locker.

9. (오)두퍼니틀 잠그십시오.
   Please button the pocket.

10. 차고 문을 잠그십시오.
    Please lock the door of the garage.

9. Transformation Drill (based on Grammar Note 1)

선생: 나가십시오.
学生: 나가십시오.

1. 문을 잠그십시오.
   문을 잠그십시오.

2. 약을 잠그십시오.
   약을 잠그십시오.

3. 의사에게 가십시오.
   의사에게 가십시오.

4. 길 선생은 만나십시오.
   길 선생은 만나십시오.

5. 아홉시까지 학교에 오십시오.
   아홉시까지 학교에 오십시오.

선생: Go out (please).
学生: Please (try to) go out.

1. Please lock the door.

2. Please try (to remember) to lock the door.

3. Take the medicine.

4. Please try to take the medicine.

5. Please go to the doctor.

6. Please try to go to the doctor.

7. Please meet Mr. Kim.

8. Please try to meet Mr. Kim.

9. Come to school by 9 o'clock.

10. Please try to come to school by 9 o'clock.
6. 어귀비는 미리 내심시요.
어귀비는 미리 내도록 하십시오.

7. 귀장또는 미리 사심시요.
귀장또는 미리 사도록 하십시오.

8. 교실에서 담배를 피우지 마심시요.
교실에서 담배를 피우지 말도록 하십시오.

9. 교실에서 키친 마시지 마십시요.
교실에서 키친 마시지 말하도록 하십시오.

10. 번 치는 사지 마십시요.
번 치는 사지 말도록 하십시오.

Please pay for the (inn) room in advance.
Please try to pay for the (inn) room in advance.
Please buy the theatre ticket in advance.
Please try to buy the theatre ticket in advance.
Please don't smoke in the classroom.
Please try not to smoke in the classroom.
Please don't drink coffee in the classroom.
Please try not to drink coffee in the classroom.
Please don't buy a wornout car.
Please try not to buy a wornout car.

10. Response-Transformation Drill (based on Grammar Note 3)

선생: 지금 어귀비는 내야 합니까?
학생: 아니요, 나중에 내면 됩니다.

1. 지금 귀장또는 사야 합니까?
아니요, 나중에 사면 됩니다.

2. 지금 음식 값을 내야 합니까?
아니요, 나중에 내면 됩니다.

3. 지금 밥을 바 dealloc 합니까?
아니요, 나중에 먹어야 합니다.

4. 지금 커피 선생을 만나야 합니까?
아니요, 나중에 만나면 됩니다.

5. 지금 임을 시험해야 합니까?
아니요, 나중에 시험하면 됩니다.

Do I have to pay the lodging charge now?
No, you can pay it later. ('No, it's all right to pay it later.')

Do I have to buy the theatre ticket now?
No, you can buy it later.

Do I have to pay for the food now?
No, you can pay for it later.

Do I have to make a room reservation now?
No, you can make a reservation later.

Do I have to meet Mr. Kim now?
No, you can meet him later.

Do I have to start the work now?
No, you can start it later.
6. 지금 출발해야 합니까?
아니요, 나중에 출발하면 됩니다.

7. 지금 밥 싸먹어야 합니까?
아니요, 나중에 밥 싸먹으면 됩니다.

8. 지금 양말을 갈아 신어야 합니까?
아니요, 나중에 갈아 신으면 됩니다.

9. 지금 옷을 밝혀야 합니까?
아니요, 나중에 밝혀면 됩니다.

10. 지금 벽문에 가야 합니까?
아니요, 나중에 가면 됩니다.

11. Substitution Drill

1. 식사용 밥으로 과마다 식시요.

   Please bring [my] meal to the room.

2. 음차료 음거나 식사 주십시오.

   Please bring my tea to the parlor.

3. 이 책을 제 사무실로 과마다 주십시오.

   Please bring this desk to my office.

4. 커피를 교실로 과마다 주십시오.

   Please bring my coffee to the classroom.

5. 김을 차로 과마다 주십시오.

   Please bring my baggage to the car.

6. 자동차를 차고로 과마다 주십시오.

   Please bring the car to the garage.

7. 옷건을 집으로 과마다 주십시오.

   Please bring the merchandise to [my] house.

8. 저녁을 안방으로 과마다 주십시오.

   Please bring dinner to the Anpang.

9. 장난감을 아이들 밥으로 과마다 주십시오.

   Please bring toys to the children's room.
Supplementary Dialogues for Comprehension

(1)

손님: 아름다운 밤의 반석 위에 빛 방이 있는가요?
서기: 예, 깨끗하고 아름다운 밤이 아나 있어요.
손님: 좀 보여 줄 수 있어요?
서기: 예, 저물 따따 밤으로 옮겨 오시지요. 자 이 방입니다.
손님: 이름 뿐니까?
손님: 예, 여름에 높은 군요. 이 밤에 들게이요. 그런데 복용실이 불어 있어요?
서기: 아니요. 이 밤은 밤새 밝아야 이야기 복용실이 같이 있어야
손님: 복용실은 야행음에 따르 있어요.
손님: 예, 야행음. 좀 봐하면 이 밤에 들게이요.

(2)

손님: 밤에 나갈 때 열쇠를 여기에 놓고니까. 혹은 제가 가지고 가야
서기: 열쇠는 여기 밝겨야 합니다. 그리고 나가실 때는 그 방문을
손님: 야행음. 숙박비에는 식사가 포함되어 있나요?
서기: 예. 아침과 저녁 식사가 포함되어 있어요. 아침은 일곱시에
그리고 저녁은 여섯시에 도립니다.
Narratives for Comprehension and Reading

(1)

한국 코 토시에는 앉시 방과 한식 방을 다 가운 호텔이나 여관 등이 있습니다. 앉시 방에는 침대가 있고 또 목욕탕이 같이 있지만 한식 방은 목욕탕이 같이 있지 않기 때문에 분리합니다. 외국 손님들은 매개 앉시 방에서 식이 요금 한식 방은 매개 음식방에 들고 식이 합니다.

(2)

밤에 들기 전에 먼저 숙박 비에 이름과 주소를 시어야 합니다. 한국을 모르는 외국 손님들은 매개 음식을 쓴다. 그리고 밤에 날 때는 밤 식사 물여서 서기에 맡겨야 합니다. 매개 숙박비에는 아침 식사가 포함되어 있고 식사는 식사 장의 연장 사냥가 손님 방에 자다 줍니다.

EXERCISES

A. Tell your friend:

1. that the classroom is very cozy and appealing.
2. that you have decided to move to a new house next month.
3. that the new house you just bought is vacant now.
4. that there's a toilet on each floor and a bathroom is at the end of the hall downstairs.
5. to be sure to lock the car door when he parks the car downtown.
6. that in most Korean inns and hotels breakfast and supper are included in the (lodging) bill.
7. that in many Korean inns you have to pay in advance.
8. that a Korean inn does not have a separate dining room for guests and the maid usually brings meals to the room.
9. that you'll try to come back to Seoul by tomorrow.
10. to try not to forget your telephone number.
11. to tell the maid to bring supper to you as soon as possible.
12. that you decided to live in Cheju but now you've changed your mind.
13. that it will be all right if he comes by 7 p.m.
14. that W50 will do.
15. that Miss Lee's figure appeals to you.
16. that the student's attitude doesn't appeal to you.
17. that he should reserve a seat in advance but he can pay later.

B. Make up a short dialogue so that each of the following expressions is included:

1. 가/이 마음에 들다
2. 들림 없이
3. 가/이 아담하다
4. 원조와 아름다운
5. 과다(가) 주다
6. 밥 늦도록
7. 가/이 드럽게 되어 있다
8. 가/이 비어 있다
9. -기로 왔다
10. -도록 하다
11. -(오)면 되다
12. 마다
13. 미미
14. 나중에
UNIT 25. Room Service

BASIC DIALOGUE

(반문을 녹음하면서)
준비
준비하십시오
준비(가) 됨니다
저녁을 준비하십시오
저녁이 준비되었습니다.

1. 야보세요, 손님. 저녁 준비가 되었습니다. 마시겠습니까?
저녁 식사 하시겠습니까?

손님

(반문을 녹음하면서)

준비
준비음 준비
준비(가) 되었습니다
과버 주십시오

2. 옆, 저녁 준비 음 준비가 되었습니다.
과버 주십시오.

손님

(반문을 녹음하면서)

준비
준비음 준비
준비(가) 되었습니다
과버 주십시오

3. 오늘 저녁 식사는 안절심에 별도 기가 있습니다.

손님

(Basic translation)

Good evening. Dinner is ready, sir. Would you like to have dinner now?

If you've got it ready, then, please bring it.

Tonight's dinner is Hanjongsik and Pulkoki, sir.

101
4. 꼭 주로 원하지만, 외국인 드리지마. 돈은 빌드로 내셔야 됩니다.

If you would like beer, I can bring it for you, but you have to pay for that separately.

5. 꼭 주로 완 대가 왜도 꼭드십시오. 시사는 반드시 드리십시오.

Hanjongsik is fine

You don't have to bring any beer. Hanjongsik will be fine for supper.

(to the Inn clerk at night)

일저기
시청 사무소
본 일이 있어(서)

I have some business and so I have some business at City Hall early tomorrow morning, so I've got to get up by 7 o'clock.

수고
수고드립니다

(trouble)

(it)'s troublesome for you (without forgetting and...)

on time; in time

please don't forget to wake me up ('Do not forget and wake me up.')

(Sorry to trouble you but) please be sure to wake me up in time.
8. Yes, sir. Please don't worry.

9. I will turn on your light outside in the morning and knock your door.

10. I'd appreciate that.

11. Say, your office radio is a little noisy. (Sorry, but,) can you turn it down a little bit?

12. Oh, gee, I'm sorry. I'll turn it down.
NOTES ON THE BASIC DIALOGUE

(Numbers correspond to the sentence numbers.)

1. 손님 is a noun which means 'guest', 'visitor' or 'customer' depending on where it is used. In such places of public accommodations as hotels or inns, the employees use the word 손님 in place of the name of a guest when they don't know his name.

2.4. 고객 주다 'to bring [it] for [him]' and its politer equivalent 고객 드시다 'to bring [it] for [you]' is a fixed expression used in place of 고객 드시다 (See Grammar Note 3 for the ending -다).

3. 안심식 is a regular Korean dish served as a complete meal which normally includes 밥, 국, 케비 and other side dishes (sometimes with 불고기).

4. 돈을 내다 ('to put out money'), 돈을 주다 ('to give money') are used interchangeably to mean 'to pay'.

5. 충분하다 is synonymous with 충분하다 'to be sufficient'.

6. 일어 나와 뵙으십시오 is the contraction of 일어 나와 뵙으십시오 'I'll have to get up.'.

7. 수고 is a noun which means something like ('trouble for [you]'). The denominal verb 수고하- occurs very commonly in the following kinds of fixed expressions and they are used idiomatically as greeting expressions:

수고하세요. is said to an adult who is about to do something for you;
수고하십시오. is said to an adult who is at work; and 수고했습니까.
is said to an adult who has just done something (for you).

계시다 'to wake [someone] up' is a transitive verb with the direct object a personal nominal.

9. The verb 케시 always takes an object, 램, 티비, T.V., etc. and means 'to turn on'. The opposite of 놓을 케시 'to turn on the light' is 뼈를 놓다 'to turn off the light' which also means 'to put out the fire', 'to extinguish fire'.
1. Further Note on Particle 에

In Unit 1 we learned that the particle 에, which is pronounced as /e/ between two nominals, i.e. N1 에 N2 'N1's N2, N2 of N1', occurred as a Possessive Particle. Similarly to 에, the particle 에 /e/ between two nominals, i.e. N1 에 N2, occurs to enumerate the two nominals for the succeeding inflected expression. Examples:

어느 저녁은 안정식에 불고기가
있었습니다.

'Tonight's dinner is Hanjongsik and Pulkiko, sir.' ('As for tonight's supper, there is Hanjongsik plus Pulkoki.')

이번에 시장에 가서 치약에 치솔을
샀어요.

'I went to the market place in the morning and bought a toothpaste and a toothbrush.' ('a toothbrush in addition to toothpaste!')

많이가 아주 나쁘네. 비에 눈에
진우 개미까지 많이 석어(서) 왔요.

'The weather is extremely bad. We're getting rain, snow and even sleet mixed together.'

2. Infinitive + another inflected expression

In Unit 14, Grammar Note 2, we learned that an infinitive + 에, which may be followed by a pause before another inflected expression, was translated as 'and', 'and so'. In the construction where the particle 에 is added to an infinitive before another inflected expression, 에 may be dropped freely without changing the meaning.

이번 일이 왜이, 일이시까지는
있어 나야 케웁니다.

'I have some business, so I've got to get up by 7 o'clock.'

사우시어, 고맙씀니다.

'Thank you for coming.' ('You came, so I thank you.')

식사 마치, 공부 할 수 없군요.

'I cannot study because it's noisy.' ('It's noisy, so I cannot study."

Note that the above construction is distinguished from a verb phrase in which the first verb is the principal verb but is followed by an auxiliary without a pause (See Grammar Note 7, Unit 7).

3. -(가)

-(가) is a verb ending which is added to a verb stem or a verb stem + honorific
suffix and/or past tense suffixes. Dependent noun 가 may be added to the -다 form as an extended construction without changing the meaning.
-다(가) may be added to an action or description verb stem but not to the copula stem, and it occurs in the following ways:

(a) -다(가) + another inflected expression

The -다(가) form which does not have a past tense suffix in it occurs before another inflected expression and denotes shift or interruption of action or description of the verb in -다 without completion to the action or description of the verb in the following inflected expression. Thus, tenses or levels of speech for the whole construction are generated in the succeeding inflected form.

'I stopped by a bookstore on my way to school.' ('I was going to school when I stopped by a bookstore.')

While I was writing a letter, a friend of mine came, so [we] went to the theatre.'

'I worked at a company for a while and from there I joined the State Department.'

(b) -(아, 어)써 다(가)

The -다 form which includes a past tense suffix denotes that the action or description of the verb in -다 has been completed before another action or description follows.

'I have been to Pusan.' ('I had gone to Pusan and came.')

Note that some of the above constructions (a) and (b), i.e., the -다(가) form followed by no pause before another verb occur idiomatically as fixed expressions in unique meanings. Study the following:

'Please bring [it] for me.'

'Yes, I'll bring [it] for you soon, sir.'

'I have been to Pusan.'

'I'll make a trip to Pusan.'
'Have a nice trip (to someone who is expected to come back).'

'She hangs around this street without having nothing to do.'

4. '... not ... but'; 'do ... without doing...'

The -고 form in negation which may be followed by a pause before another inflected expression is used in the same sentence to mean 'not... but' or 'does... without doing...'.

(a) -지 않고 + an inflected expression:

When the sentence is a statement or question, the final clause is preceded by -지 않고.

I'll not marry but will live alone.

Korean is not difficult but is easy.

'I came without having breakfast.'

'He doesn't know that fact but I know it.'

Note: If the sentence is a copula expression -지 않고 is replaced by 아니고.

'It's not a book but a notebook.'

(b) -지 말고 + an inflected expression:

When the final clause is in imperative or propositive form, the preceding construction is in -지 말고.

'Don't stay alone lonely; come to my house.'

'Don't go to left; make a right turn.'
We have learned that there is a class of nouns to which either `있다` or `있따` or both, may be added to make verbs (Unit 20), while `있다` and `있따` can also occur as independent verbs. There is a small class of bound forms which never occur as independent verbs but are added to a class of nouns and produce verbs. We will call such a verb a **Noun Derivative Verb**, and the form which makes a verb by adding it to a noun a **Derivative Verbalizer**.

- `-더다` is a derivative verbalizer which denotes descriptive quality, value or degree. Any noun derivative verb in `-더다` is a description verb and should be memorized for the unique meaning of each verb. Observe the following:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Noun</th>
<th>Noun Derivative Verb</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>의심</td>
<td><code>to be doubtful</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>경확</td>
<td><code>to be suspicious</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>소심</td>
<td><code>to be careful</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>경력</td>
<td><code>to be honorable</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>수고</td>
<td><code>to be troublesome</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>경광</td>
<td><code>to be glorious</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>걱정</td>
<td><code>to be worrisome</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>걱정</td>
<td><code>to be worrisome</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>사랑</td>
<td><code>to be lovable</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>자랑</td>
<td><code>to be a source of pride</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Remember that `-더다` can not be separated from the preceeding noun as a separate verb, while `있다` and `있따` could be separated from the preceeding nominals as the object and the subject of the verbs respectively.
1. Substitution Drill

1. 저녁 준비 되었습니다.

Supper is ready. ('Preparation for supper is all done.')

2. 이사 준비 되었습니다.

We're ready to move.

3. 아침 준비 되었습니다.

Breakfast is ready.

4. 식사 준비 되었습니다.

The meal is ready.

5. 여행 준비 되었습니다.

I'm ready for the trip.

6. 결혼 준비 되었습니다.

I'm ready for marriage.

7. 자동차 삽입 준비 되었습니다.

I'm ready to buy a car.

8. 잠 잡음 준비 되었습니다.

I'm ready to go to sleep.

9. 학교에 갑음 준비 되었습니다.

I'm ready to go to school.

10. 우가 밥은 준비 되었습니다.

I'm ready to take a vacation.

11. 저녁을 맡은 준비 되었습니다.

I'm ready to eat supper.

12. 아침 식사 할 준비 되었습니다.

[We're ready to have breakfast.}
UNIT 25

2. Substitution Drill

1. 나는 저녁을 준비합니다. I'm preparing dinner.
2. 나는 아침을 준비합니다. I'm preparing breakfast.
3. 나는 식사를 준비합니다. I'm preparing the meal.
4. 나는 출발을 준비합니다. I'm preparing to leave. (I'm getting ready to leave.
5. 나는 입대를 준비합니다. I'm getting ready to join the army.
6. 나는 제대를 준비합니다. I'm getting ready to be discharged.
7. 나는 역할을 준비합니다. I'm preparing for a trip.
8. 나는 출장을 준비합니다. I'm preparing for a business trip.
9. 나는 연설을 준비합니다. I'm preparing for a speech.

3. Transformation Drill

선생: 도는 볼도로 내셔야 합니다. You have to pay separately.
학생: 도는 볼도로 내셔야 합니다. You should pay separately.

1. 잃은 볼도로 주 어야 합니다. You have to leave a separate tip.
   잃은 볼도로 주 어야 합니다. You should leave a separate tip.
2. 맥주는 볼도로 사야 합니다. You have to buy beer separately.
   맥주는 볼도로 사야 합니다. You should buy beer separately.
3. 책 값은 볼도로 내야 합니다. You have to pay for the book separately.
   책 값은 볼도로 내야 합니다. You should pay for the book separately.
5. 테이블을 사면 의자는 별도로 사야 합니다.

6. 가동차의 마티스가 별도로 내셔야 합니다.

4. Response-Transformation Drill

선회: 돈은 따로 내야 합니까?

작성: 예, 돈은 따로 내야 합니다.

1. 선생이 운전할 수 있어도 운전수가 따로 있어야 합니까?

2. 여권에서 식사에는 따로 내야 합니까?

3. 전기과 기계가 짜여도 따로 내야 합니까?

4. 본인과 따로 한국에 가야 합니까?

5. 아들도 자동차를 따로 있어야 합니까?

6. 결혼하면 부모님과 따로 살여야 합니까?

Do I have to pay separately?

Yes, you should pay separately.

Do you have to have a separate driver even though you can drive yourself?

Yes, I should have a separate driver even though I can drive myself.

Do you have to pay for the meals separately at the inn?

Yes, you should pay for the meals separately at the inn.

Do you have to pay the electric and gas bills separately?

Yes, the electric and gas bills should be paid separately.

Must you and your wife go to Korea separately?

Yes, my wife and I should go to Korea separately.

Does your son have to have a separate car?

Yes, my son should have a separate car.

When you get married, do you have to live apart from your parents?

Yes, I should live apart from my parents when I get married.
7. 숙녀용 화장실과 신사용 화장실이 따로 있어야 합니까?
   예, 숙녀용화장실과 신사용화장실이 따로 있어야 합니다.

8. 입은 따로 주이야 합니까?
   예, 입은 따로 주이야 합니다.

9. 흰 옷과 색 옷은 따로 밝아야 합니까?
   예, 흰 옷과 색 옷은 따로 밝아야 합니다.

5. Substitution Drill

1. 식사는 한전식이면 충분합니다.
   For the meal, Hanjungsik is enough.

2. 저녁은 불고기면 충분합니다.
   For supper, Pulkoki is enough.

3. 종교 서비스 아님이면 충분합니다.
   For a bachelor, one room is enough.

4. 고전 신생종 그 집이면 충분합니다.
   For Mr. Kim, that house is sufficient.

5. 저는 2,000불 자동차를 사면 충분합니다.
   For me, the $2,000 automobile is sufficient.

6. 아침은 토스트면 충분합니다.
   For breakfast, toast is enough.

7. 흰복은 타셔 벌이면 충분합니다.
   As for suits, five will be enough.

8. 아이는 셋이면 충분합니다.
   Three children are enough for me.

9. 저는 그 월급이면 충분합니다.
   For me, that much salary is enough.

10. 절심은 샌드위치면 충분합니다.
    For lunch, sandwiches are enough.
6. Substitution Drill

1. (Sorry to trouble you, but) please wake me up at 7.

2. (Sorry to trouble you, but) please take this to Mr. Park.

3. (Sorry to trouble you, but) please stop by my house this evening.

4. (Sorry to trouble you, but) please type this for me.

5. (Sorry to trouble you, but) please move this chair.

6. (Sorry to trouble you, but) please take me to school.

7. (Sorry to trouble you, but) please go to school for me.

8. Please come on time.

9. (Sorry to bother you, but) please turn on the light.

10. (Sorry to bother you, but) can you please press these trousers for me?

11. (Sorry to bother you, but) please turn off the light.

12. Please shine the shoes for me.
7. Substitution Drill

1. 업지 말고 깨워 주십시오.
   Please be sure to wake me up. ('Don't forget and wake me up.')

2. 업지 말고 전화해 주십시오.
   Please be sure to call me.

3. 업지 말고 전화 걸어 주십시오.
   Please be sure to telephone me.

4. 업지 말고 길 선생에게 전해 주십시오.
   Please be sure to deliver [the message] to Mr. Kim.

5. 업지 말고 그 친지를 사 주십시오.
   Please be sure to buy me the magazine.

6. 업지 말고 저의 집에 들어 주십시오.
   Please be sure to stop by my house.

7. 업지 말고 일요일 일곱시에 와 주십시오.
   Please be sure to come at 7 on Sunday.

8. 업지 말고 밤에 손에 주십시오.
   Please be sure to reserve a room for me.

9. 업지 말고 약을 먹어 주십시오.
   Please be sure to take the medicine.

10. 업지 말고 의사에게 가십시오.
    Please be sure to go to the doctor.

11. 업지 말고 그 책을 곁다 주십시오.
    Please be sure to bring the book for me.

8. Completion Exercise

선생: 라디오 소리가 시끄러우니.
生: 라디오 소리가 시끄러우니, 좀 낮추어 주십시오.

Because the radio (noise) is noisy,

Since the radio is noisy, please turn it down a little bit.

1. 방이 어두우니.

Because the room is dark,
2. 배가 고프니.

Since I'm hungry,

3. 전화번호를 잊었어요.

Because I have forgotten the telephone number;

4. 그 옷은 너무 비싸요.

Because this dress is too expensive,

5. 공무원의 임금이 너무 적어요.

Because the pay of government employees is too little,

6. 비행기가 빨리고 편리해요.

Because an airplane is fast and convenient,

7. 비행기 소리가 시끄러워요.

Since the airplane is noisy,

8. 한국말이 너무 어려워요.

Since Korean is too difficult,

9. 구두가 너무 답답해요.

Because the shoes are too dirty,

10. 옷이 잘 곡지 않아요.

Because the clothes do not fit well,

9. Substitution Drill

1. 빛을꺼주십시오.

Please turn off the light.

2. 라디오를꺼주십시오.

Please turn off the radio.

3. 텔레비전을꺼주십시오.

Please turn off the T.V.

4. 전등을꺼주십시오.

Please turn off the (electric) light.

5. 선풍기를꺼주십시오.

Please turn off the (electric) fan.

6. 전화기꺼주십시오.

Please turn off the hi-fi.

7. 녹음기꺼주십시오.

Please turn off the tape recorder.
UNIT 25  
KOREAN BASIC COURSE

8. 녹음기를 꺼십시오.
Turn off the tape recorder.

9. 녹음기를 켜십시오.
Turn on the tape recorder.

10. 녹음기를 켜주십시오.
Please turn on the tape recorder.

11. 녹음기를 내주십시오.
(Please) turn down the tape recorder.

12. 녹음기를 내주어 주십시오.
Please turn down the tape recorder.

13. 녹음기를 작은 소리로 들이십시오.
Please turn down the tape recorder.

14. 녹음기를 작은 소리로 들여 주십시오.
Please turn down the tape recorder.

15. 녹음기를 크게 들십시오.
(Please) turn up the tape recorder.

16. 녹음기를 크게 들어 주십시오.
Please turn up the tape recorder.

17. 녹음기를 큰 소리로 들여 주십시오.
Please turn up the tape recorder.

10. Substitution Drill

1. 방이 너무 시끄럽습니다.
The room is too noisy.

2. 방이 너무 조용합니다.
The room is too quiet.

3. 방이 너무 옅습니다.
The room is too full of echoes.

4. 방이 너무 혼란합니다.
The room is too cozy.

5. 방이 너무 좁습니다.
The room is too narrow.
The room is too dark.
The room is too dirty.
The room is too clean.
The rooms are too close.
The room is too hot.
The room is too messy.

11. Response Drill (Use the example in the proper place and answer the question as in the example.)

Has the train arrived?
Yes, it arrived on time.

Has the bus left?
Yes, the bus left on time.

Did you eat your lunch?
Yes, I ate lunch at the usual time.

Do the students come to school?
Yes, the students come to school on time.

Do the children have to sleep?
Yes, the children have to go to bed on time.

Do you start work at the usual time?
Yes, I start work on time.
Was the class over on time?
Yes, the class was over on time.
Did they show the movie on time?
Yes, they showed the film on time.

Supplementary Dialogues for Comprehension

(1)

손님: 저녁 식사 시간은 끝나셨나요?

서기: 배가 먹어서 저녁 준비가 마칩니다. 그러니 손님이 일찍 식사를 끝내시면 더 일찍 갈 수 있습니다.

손님: 여섯시에 끝나시군요. 그런데 음식은 제가 원하는 것을 주문할 수 있나요?

서기: 미안하지만, 그렇게 할 수 없어요. 메뉴는 매일 다르지만 우리 여관은 호텔이 아니기 때문에 모든 손님이 갖고 음식을 둡니다.

손님: 그럼, 오늘 저녁에는 무엇이 있습니까?

서기: 볶음기 뒤판과 골단이 있겠습니다.

손님: 저는 볶음기 뒤판을 먹겠습니다.

(2)

손님: 수고스럽지만, 내일 아침 여섯시분 좀 그게 될 수 있겠어요?

서기: 예, 본관 7개의 토일 수 있습니다. 익혀주시고 잘 추부십시오.
손님: 고맙습니다. 그런데 제가 누스를 좀 듣고 싶은데 마티오 좀 빌릴 수 있겠어요?

서기: 아니, 여기 없습니다. 그런데 일시 후에는 너무 크게 들지 마십시오. 다른 손님들이 시끄럽면 잘 수 없어요. 그리고 주부실 땐은 두 분을 따로 주부십시오.

Narratives for Comprehension and Reading

(1)
김 선생이 회사 일과 부산에 출장을 가습니다. 이동 동안 부산에 있을 예정입니다. 부산의 부근에 아담하고 조용한 여관이 있어 거기에 들었습니다. 그 여관에서는 아침과 저녁 식사를 하는게 음식도 중한 별도로 내야 합니다. 그 여관에는 손님들은 식당이 따로 없어서 식사하는 여자도 식사를 손님 방에 갔다 줍니다.

(2)
오지음 미국 영관에는 매개 애매하기 전화가 많지만 한국 영관에는 마트 없으니 있습니다. 밤 일시 후에는 마트를 크게 들면 안 됩니다. 여관 서기가 말했습니다. 왜냐하면 마트로 소비가 시끄럽다면 다른 손님들이 잠을 잘 수 없기 때문입니다. 자기 전에 김 선생은 여관 서기에 네일 애매에 일찍 9시에 달라고 부탁했습니다.
EXERCISES

A. Tell the room-girl:

1. to bring supper if it's ready.
2. to bring one bottle of O.B. beer now and coffee after supper.
3. that 6월 1일 will be fine for supper.
4. that you have some business at City Hall early tomorrow morning and you've got to get up by 7 o'clock.
5. to be sure to wake you up in time.
6. not to worry about how to turn the light on and off.
7. that you would appreciate it if she would turn down the office radio when you go to bed because it's a little noisy.
8. to shine your shoes for you in the morning.
9. to press your trousers for you.
10. to take you to the railroad station.
11. to deliver the message to President (of Hanil Company) Lee.
12. to buy you a morning paper and Time magazine.
13. to call Dr. Min's office and make an appointment for you.
14. to turn up the tape-recorder a little.

B. Tell your instructor:

1. that you stopped in at a bookstore on your way to school yesterday.
2. that you worked at the Bank of Manhattan for a while and from there you joined the State Department.
3. that you have been to Pusan recently.
4. that you'll make a quick trip to the post office.
5. to have a nice trip (he is going abroad but is expected to come back).
6. that a girl is hanging around the street.
7. that Mr. KIM doesn't know that fact but YOU know it.
8. that you came to school without having breakfast.
9. that it is not a book but a notebook.
10. not to stay by himself and be lonely but to come to your house.
11. not to work too hard and take it easy.
12. that Mr. Kim's attitude is a little suspicious.
13. that Korean villages are peaceful.
UNIT 26. Giving Errands to the Inn Maid

BASIC DIALOGUE

(The maid came to the guest’s room in the morning.)

Good morning, sir. I came to straighten your room. Is there anything else you’d like me to do?

I’ve already folded up the bedding, so you just clean the room. That’s all.

Yes, sir. I’ve brought a broom and a floor cloth here with me. While you are washing your face, I’ll clean up your room.

1. Did you sleep peacefully, sir? Straightening (room)

2. I’ve already folded up the bedding, so you just clean the room. That’s all.

3. Yes, sir. I’ve brought a broom and a floor cloth here with me. While you are washing your face, I’ll clean up your room.
4. Oh, by the way, I do have some things I'd like you to do for me before you straighten the room.

   a shoe-shine boy
   please call (one) for me
   trousers
   iron (used for ironing)
   [she]'s ironing

   Please call me a shoe-shine boy ('if there is one'). And I wonder if you can iron my trousers.

   laundry
   [she] launders

   Also, I have a few things to launder. Will you send these to the laundry for me?

   at least

   Yes, sir. ('I'll do so.') But it takes at least three or four days if you send them to the laundry.

   [it]'s special
   specially; especially
   urgently; in a hurry
   washing clothes; laundry items
   [she] washes (clothes)

   If you need them in a hurry ('If it's thing you guest need especially in a hurry,'), I can wash them for you.
9. 그림계 왜추면, 돈을 (아주머니에게) 준을 줄어니, 그림계 해주세요.

10. 그림, 옷바탕 게은 타 내놓으시지요.

11. 그리고 갈아 입은 화이사소도 있으면
    제게 주십시오.
A. 입다
1. 나는 옷을 입습니다.
2. 나는 옷을 입습니다.
3. 나는 비옷을 입습니다.
4. 나는 캐주얼을 입습니다.
5. 나는 옷 캐주얼을 입습니다.
6. 나는 양복 캐주얼을 입습니다.
7. 나는 바지를 입습니다.
8. 나는 양복 바지를 입습니다.
9. 나는 짧은 바지를 입습니다.
10. 나는 코트를 입습니다.
11. 나는 오바코트를 입습니다.
12. 나는 오바코트를 입습니다.
13. 나는 외투를 입습니다.
14. 나는 치마를 입습니다.
15. 나는 스커트를 입습니다.
16. 나는 양말을 입습니다.
17. 나는 자켓을 입습니다.

ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY AND PHRASES

to wear

I wear the suit.
I wear the clothes.
I wear the raincoat.
I wear the coat.
I wear the coat.
I wear the coat.
I wear the trousers.
I wear the trousers.
I wear the short trousers.
I wear the short coat.
I wear the overcoat.
I wear the overcoat.
I wear the overcoat.
I wear the skirt (Korean style).
I wear the skirt (Western style).
I wear the uniform.
I wear the jacket.
이런

18. 나는 스웨터를 입습니다.
I wear the sweater.

19. 나는 셔츠를 입습니다.
I wear the shirt.

20. 나는 반팔 셔츠를 입습니다.
I wear the half-sleeve (summer) shirt.

21. 나는 바이스포츠를 입습니다.
I wear the dress shirt.

22. 나는 운동복을 입습니다.
I wear the (sport) uniform.

23. 나는 내화를 입습니다.
I wear the underwear.

24. 나는 내화를 갈아 입습니다.
I change the underwear.

25. 나는 내화를 벗습니다.
I take off the underwear.

B. 신발

1. 나는 구두를 신습니다.
I wear shoes.

2. 나는 신발을 신습니다.
I wear shoes.

3. 나는 신발을 신습니다.
I wear shoes.

4. 나는 고무신발을 신습니다.
I wear rubber shoes.

5. 나는 양말을 신습니다.
I wear socks.

6. 나는 스탠일을 신습니다.
I wear stockings.

7. 나는 장화를 신습니다.
I wear boots.

8. 나는 비신을 신습니다.
I wear rain shoes.

9. 나는 운동화를 신습니다.
I wear sport shoes (or sneakers).

10. 나는 릴신을 신습니다.
I wear overshoes.
11. I change overshoes.
나는 닥신을 갈아 신습니다.

12. I take off overshoes.
나는 닥신을 벗습니다.

C. 키다
1. [Please] wear a ring.
반지를 써십시오.

2. [Please] wear your wedding ring.
 결혼 반지를 써십시오.

3. [Please] wear your engagement ring.
 약혼 반지를 써십시오.

4. [Please] take off your engagement ring.
 약혼 반지를 벗으십시오.

D. 키다
1. [Please] wear gloves.
장갑을 써십시오.

2. [Please] wear glasses.
 안경을 써십시오.

3. [Please] wear sunglasses ("color glasses").
 샐 안경을 써십시오.

4. [Please] take off your sunglasses.
 샐 안경을 벗으십시오.

E. 차다
1. I wear a watch.
나는 시계를 착니다.

2. I wear a wrist watch.
나는 손목 시계를 착니다.

3. I wear a medal.
나는 문장을 착니다.

4. I wear a sword.
나는 갈을 착니다.

5. I wear a pistol.
나는 권총을 착니다.
I wear a rank insignia...

I don't wear rank insignia.

I wear ('tie') the belt.

I wear the belt.

I wear the tie.

I tie (my) shoe (strings).

I tie (my) shoe (strings).

I untie (my) shoe (strings).

I put on a hat.

I put on a (school) cap.

I put on a (military) cap.

I put on a full-dress hat.

I put on a helmet.

I put on a sport cap.

I wear [my] glasses.

I don't wear glasses.

I take off [my] glasses.
H. 약식
1. 귀걸이를 착시시오. [Please] wear earings.
2. 넥타이를 착시시오. [Please] wear a tie pin.
3. 목걸이를 착시시오. [Please] wear a necklace.
4. 마フ를 착시시오. [Please] wear a muffler.
5. 보로재를 착시시오. [Please] wear a broach.
6. 보로재를 마치 착시시오. [Please] don't wear a broach.

I. 약식
1. 귀걸이를 착시시오. [Please] wear earings.
2. 장갑을 착시시오. [Please] wear rank insignia.
3. 보로재를 착시시오. [Please] wear a broach.
4. 보로재를 탈지 마치시시오. [Please] don't wear a broach.
5. 보로재를 헐고 싶시시오. [Please] take off a broach.

J. 약식
1. 자켓에 꽃을 버сты시오. [Please] wear a flower on your coat.
2. 머리핀을 버сты시오. [Please] wear a hair pin.
3. 만년필을 토트머니에 버сты시오. [Please] put a fountain pen in your pocket.
4. 만년필을 마치 마치시시오. [Please] don't put the fountain pen in your pocket.
K. 닦다
1. 구두를 닦으십시오.
2. 이부를 닦으십시오.
3. 마루를 닦으십시오.
4. 유리창을 닦으십시오.
5. 유리병을 닦으십시오.

[Please] polish the shoes.
[Please] brush your teeth.
[Please] clean the (wooden) floor.
[Please] clean the (glass) window.
[Please] clean the (glass) bottle.

L. 지워 주다
1. 이 향수(향)를 지워 주십시오.
2. 이 장난감을 지워 주십시오.
3. 이 벽지(지)를 지워 주십시오.
4. 이 냅킨을 지워 주십시오.
5. 이 캐시미어를 지워 주십시오.
6. 이 향수(향)를 지워 주십시오.
7. 이 분필(분)을 지워 주십시오.
8. 이 섬유(섬)을 지워 주십시오.
9. 이 파티셔(파)를 지워 주십시오.
10. 이 소프트(소프트)를 지워 주십시오.
11. 이 소프트(소프트)를 지워 주십시오.

[Please] take away this waste basket.
[Please] take away this ashtray.
[Please] take away this pillow.
[Please] take away this cushion.
[Please] take away this sheet.
[Please] take away this mosquito net.
[Please] take away this fan.
[Please] take away this electric fan.
[Please] take away this fly swatter.
[Please] take away this trash.
[Please] take away this trash can.
M. 씻다
1. 얼굴을 씻습니다. I washed [my] face.
2. 발을 씻습니다. I washed [my] feet.

N. Usages
1. 화장
   [She] makes up her face.
2. 화장합니다.
3. 비
   comb
4. [머리] 빗습니다.
   [She] combs [her] hair.
5. 머리 빗습니다.
   [She] washes [her] hair.
6. 양치
   brushing teeth
7. 양치해야.
   Brush your teeth.
8. 면도
   shaving
9. 면도하십시오.
   Please shave yourself.

O.
1. 칫솔이 필요합니다.
   [I] need a tooth-brush.
2. 칫솔이 필요합니다.
   [I] need a toothpaste.
3. 면도카이 필요합니다.
   [I] need a razor.
4. 면도칼이 필요합니다.
   [I] need a razor blade.
5. 비누가 필요합니다.  [I] need a soap.

6. 세수 비누가 필요합니다.  [I] need a toilet soap.

7. 텐트 비누가 필요합니다.  [I] need a soap for laundry.
NOTES ON THE BASIC DIALOGUE

(Numbers correspond to the sentence numbers.)

1. ‘Did you sleep peacefully? ’ is somewhat old-fashioned but is often used as an early morning greeting just like English ‘Good Morning.’ or ‘How are you, this morning?’ ‘Did you eat meal, sir?’ is another old-fashioned greeting used usually around or at a meal time to a casual older person such as a neighbor or a member of family or relatives.

9. ‘aunt’ is not only used to one’s own aunt but is also used as a term of address to a married (or once married) woman who works as a maid or cook in someone’s home, restaurant, or inn. It is also used to his older brother’s wife or to a grown-up friend’s wife. The shortened word for ‘aunt’ is which is a much more casual and familiar in terms of the degree of respect shown to the one addressed. or its synonym is used to a young girl around the age of 17 to 20 who works in the similar circumstances as does. is also used by servants (of a family) to the master’s daughters. ‘uncle’ is used to other than one’s own uncle by the boys of teen age who are engaged in blue collar jobs. For instance, you can frequently hear from shoe-shine boys or from taxi drivers’ helpers.

GRAMMAR NOTES

1. and

is a derivational noun suffix which is added to a small class of nouns and denotes an ‘act’ of doing something for the noun expression. It often suggests that the person who does such a work has a low social status. The form is a denominal noun, so when is added to it, it becomes a denominal verb. The following are common denominals and denominal verbs in and respectively:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Noun</th>
<th>-[^1] D.N.</th>
<th>-[^2] D.V.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>선생님</td>
<td>'teacher'</td>
<td>선생님하하다 'to do teaching'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>선생님</td>
<td>'teaching'</td>
<td>선생님하하다 'to be in the teaching racket'</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The pattern  -(으)니더다 'intends to...', 'will do...' 

The pattern -(으)니더다 (i.e. an action verb prospective modifier word -(으)니 + dependent noun 니다 + the copula 니다), which occurs only in a statement or question sentence, is used to denote the speaker or addressee's intention or presumption for the future action of the subject or the topic of the sentence. In this construction, the copula is always in the present tense.

1. I’ll pay you. Please do it for me.
2. I intend to take a bath.
3. Do you intend to raise a dog?
UNIT 26
KOREAN BASIC COURSE

DRILLS

1. Response Drill

1. 선생이 바쁜 맛종에서 어느 밥이 제일 어색하요? [한국 밥]

 선생: 선생은 무슨 자동차를 좋아해요?
 /캐디락/

2. 미국 어느 도시에 흑인이 많어요? [워싱턴]

 선생: 저는 캐디락을 특별히 좋아합니다.

3. 사철 중에 어느 계절이 제일 좋어요? [가을]

 선생: 가을이 제일 좋어요.

4. 여러 색종에서 무슨 색을 가장 싫어해요? [노란색]

 선생: 노란색을 싫어요.

5. 오늘 저녁에 무슨 음식을 먹고 싶어요? [한식]

 선생: 오늘 저녁에 한식을 특별히 싫어합니다.

6. 미국 자동차 중에서 무슨 자동차가 고장이 쉽게 나요? [샌산 자동차]

 선생: 미국 자동차 중에서 산산 자동차가 특별히 쉽게 고장이 납니다.

7. 무슨 영화를 보고 싶어요? [영화]

 선생: 영화를 특별히 보고 싶습니다.

What kind of car do you like? [Cadillac]
I particularly like Cadillacs.

Which is the most difficult language among the languages that you have studied? [Korean]
Among the languages I've studied, Korean is particularly hard.

In what American city are there many negroes? [Washington]
Washington has particularly large number of negroes.

Which season (among the four seasons) do you like best? [autumn]
Of four seasons, I particularly like autumn.

Of several colors, which color do you like least? [yellow color]
Of several colors, I particularly don't like yellow.

What (food) do you want to eat tonight? [Korean food]
I'd particularly like to eat Korean food tonight.

Among American cars, which cars break down easily? [cheaper cars]
Among the American cars, inexpensive cars break down particularly easily.

What movies would you like to see? [comedies]
I particularly like to see comedies.
2. **Response Drill** (Use **골리** in the proper place.)

선생: 사무실에 몇 일이 있어요?<br>
학생: 예, 사무실에 몇 일이 있어요.

1. 김 사장이 비서가 필요하니까? <br>
   예, 김 사장이 비서가 필요해요.

2. 오오, 어떤 일이 많습니까? <br>
   예, 오오, 어떤 일이 많어요.

3. 집을 이사해야 합니까? <br>
   예, 집을 이사해야 해요.

4. 운행에서 돈을 벌어야 합니까? <br>
   예, 운행에서 돈을 벌어야 해요.

5. 밥 섭취를 안나라고 합니까? <br>
   예, 밥 섭취를 안나라고 해요.

Do you have something to do at the office? <br>
Yes, I have something urgent to do at the office.

Does President Kim (of the company) need a secretary? <br>
Yes, President Kim urgently needs a secretary.

Do you have a lot of things to do in the afternoon? <br>
Yes, I have a lot of urgent things to do in the afternoon.

Do you have to move? <br>
Yes, I have to move in a hurry.

Do you have to borrow money from the bank? <br>
Yes, I have to borrow money from the bank right away.

Are you going to meet Mr. Park? <br>
Yes, I'm going to meet Mr. Park right away.

3. **Response Drill** (Use **즉석도** in the proper place.)

선생: 세탁소에 가져 주면 오래 걸립니까? [삼 살임]/<br>
학생: 예, 즉석도 삼 살임은 걸립야 해요.

1. 자동차를 사려면 돈이 있어야 합니까? [2,000원]<br>
   예, 즉석도 2,000원은 있어야 해요.

2. 의사가 되려면 오래 공부해야 합니까? [10년]<br>
   예, 즉석도 10년은 공부해야 해요.

Does it take a long time if you take [it] to the laundry? [3 or 4 days]<br>
Yes, it takes at least 3 or 4 days.

Do you have to have money if you're going to buy a car? [$2,000]<br>
Yes, you have to have at least $2,000.

Do you have to study long to become a doctor? [10 years]<br>
Yes, you have to study at least 10 years.
Does it take many hours to learn to drive? [10 hours]
Yes, it takes at least ten hours.
Is the school far from your house? [8 miles]
Yes, it is at least 8 miles.
Does a foreign service officer have to speak foreign languages? [one]
Yes, he has to speak at least one.
Are you planning to stay long when you go to Korea? [2 years]
Yes, I'm planning to stay there for at least two years.

Do you like Korean food?
Of course, I like it.
Do you have a driver's license?
Of course, I do (have it).
Do you know Mr. Smith of the U.S. Embassy?
Of course, I do (know him).
Is Korean a difficult language?
Of course, it is (a difficult language).
Do diplomats have to study foreign languages?
Of course, they must (study them).
Have you ever travelled to Europe?
Of course, I have (travelled).
6. Have you heard about Korean customs?
   Of course, I have (heard).

5. Substitution Drill

1. (Sorry but) I'd appreciate it if you would do some ironing for me.

2. (Sorry but) I'd appreciate it if you would wash [my] clothes.

3. (Sorry but) I'd appreciate it if you would send [this] to the laundry.

4. (Sorry but) I'd appreciate it if you would give me a ride.

5. (Sorry but) I'd appreciate it if you would polish my shoes.

6. (Sorry but) I'd appreciate it if you would stop by my office.

7. (Sorry but) I'd appreciate it if you would help me a little.

8. (Sorry but) I'd appreciate it if you would turn on the light.

9. (Sorry but) I'd appreciate it if you would turn down the volume (of the sound).

10. (Sorry but) I'd appreciate it if you would straighten the room.

11. (Sorry but) I'd appreciate it if you would sweep the room.
12. 미안하지만 손수건을 빌어 주시면 고맙겠습니다.
(Sorry but) I'd appreciate it if you would wash [my] handkerchief.

13. 미안하지만 바지를 타탁 주시면 고맙겠습니다.
(Sorry but) I'd appreciate it if you would press my trousers.

6. Transformation Drill (based on Grammar Note 2)

선생: 저는 목욕을 하겠습니다.
학생: 저는 목욕을 할 수 있습니다.

1. 저는 어가 때에 산책을 하겠습니다.
저는 어가 때에 산책할 수 있습니다.

2. 저는 세 차례를 사겠습니까.
저는 세 차례를 삼아 갈 것입니다.

3. 저는 계산기를 사겠습니다.
저는 계산기를 삼아 갈 것입니다.

4. 왕성한 부근에 산책을 하겠습니다.
왕성한 부근에 산책할 수 있습니다.

5. 밤중에 이란에 들릅니다.
밤중에 이란에 들립니다.

6. 음이 싸울 때면 변교할 것입니다.
음이 싸울 때면 변교할 수 있습니다.

7. 목욕을 할 때마다 머리를 감pegawai니다.
목욕을 할 때마다 머리를 감pegawai합니다.

8. 물건 짐을 까딱해Longrightarrow.
물건 짐을 까딱해Longrightarrow.

I'll take a bath.
I intend to take a bath.

I'll take a walk during my spare time.
I intend to take a walk during my spare time.

I'll buy a new car.
I intend to buy a new car.

I'll raise a dog.
I intend to raise a dog.

I'll live in the Washington area.
I intend to live in the Washington area.

I'll stay at a (popular class) inn.
I intend to stay at a (popular class) inn.

I'll shave when I have a moment.
I intend to shave when I have a moment.

I'll shampoo my hair when I take a bath.
I intend to shampoo my hair when I take a bath.

I'll talk the price down. or I'll cut the price.
I intend to talk the price down. or I intend to cut the price.
7. Response Drill (based on Grammar Note 2)

Will you get a haircut?
Yes, I intend to get my haircut.

Will you go mountain-climbing on the weekend?
Yes, I intend to go mountain-climbing on the weekend.

Will you keep that job?
Yes, I intend to keep that job.

Will you make Korean friends?
Yes, I intend to make Korean friends.

Will you wait for your turn?
Yes, I intend to wait for my turn.

Will you get off at the front door?
Yes, I intend to get off at the front door.

Will you quit studying Korean two months from now?
Yes, I intend to quit studying Korean two months from now.

Will you buy a round-trip ticket?
Yes, I intend to buy a round-trip ticket.

Will you shampoo your hair later?
Yes, I intend to shampoo later.

Will you travel a lot in Korea?
Yes, I intend to travel a lot in Korea.
Supplementary Dialogue for Comprehension

Shirō: 벌써 일어나셨어요?

Sonnō: 네, 아침 일찍 커피 한 잔이 있어 일찍 일어나셨어요. 그런데 식사전에 밥을 좀 소제해 주시겠어요?

Shirō: 물론입니다. 손님의 섭수하시는 동안 제가 이복을 개고 밥을 짜준 야케이죠. 그 외에 또 제가 할 일이 있으면 말씀주십시오.

Sonnō: 참, 자기가 된 부조를 구두 둘 아이라게 보내고 이 상태 가지 않아 주시겠어요?

Shirō: 네, 그렇게 하겠습니다.

Narratives for Comprehension and Reading

(1)

저는 아침에 일어난 직마 전처 아들 둘에게 커피를 끓고 친절하고 세우고 싶어를 빛났습니다. 그 후에 내의와 외숙자들을 간하고 대화를 멋지게 많습니다. 그 다음에는 양말을 신고 앞두 바지와 저고리를 입고 위탁을 맡고 시계를 잡니다. 마치므로, 아침을 뜬고 외부를 입고 가방을 들고 토지를 챙고 외고에 옵니다.

(2)

한국 어린에서는 식사나 심부를 하는 아이가 손님 밥을 집도해 줍니다. 음식을 소제할 때는 왜게 비로 소도 급하게 많습니다. 또 손님이 부탁하면 다리미질이나 세탁도 해 줍니다. 어떤 어린에서는 구두 둘 아이라 있어서 구두도 많이 줍니다.

140
EXERCISES

A. Give your maid the following instructions:

1. to fold up the bedding and straighten and clean up the room with a floor cloth and broom.
2. to call a shoe shine boy to polish your shoes.
3. to iron your trousers and wash your dress shirts and socks.
4. to send your winter suits to the laundry for dry-cleaning.
5. to go to get the clothes from the laundry which were sent 3 or 4 days ago.

B. Use appropriate verbs for the following things for 'putting on', 'taking off' and 'changing' and make a short statement for each:

1. (a) overcoat (b) underwear (c) trousers
2. (a) shoes (b) socks (c) boots
3. (a) wedding ring (b) gloves (c) sunglasses
4. (a) watch (b) pistol (c) medals
5. (a) necktie (b) belt (c) shoe laces
6. (a) hat (b) glasses
7. (a) earrings (b) rank insignia
8. (a) flowers (b) fountain-pen

C. Can you explain in detail what you do in the morning from the time you wake up to the time you leave home for your office?

D. Using each of the following expressions, make up a short question and answer:

1. 2. 6. 7. 8. 9. 10.
UNIT 27. Reading Signs

BASIC DIALOGUE

이 거리

간랑

1. 간랑, 이 거리에 한자로 쓴

상점 간판들이 많았는데, 지금은 다 한글로

되어 있군요.

this street

sign; sign board (commercial)

I recall there were many store signs written in Chinese characters before, but they are all in Hankil now, Mr. Kim.

in principle

[it] is supposed to be written, but...

still; even now; not yet

Chinese characters

signs written in Chinese characters

(Store) signs are supposed to be written in Hankil (in principle), but you can still see occasionally signs written in Chinese characters.

한자

한자로 쓴 간랑

2. 한자로 간판을 한글로 쓰기로 되어 있지만,

사직도 한자로 쓴 간판은 가끔 볼 수

있[NUM.145]

one side; one direction

passing; going through

(One Way)

meaning

Over there it says '일방통행'; what does it mean?
한 점으로만.

의미

갈 수 있다는 의미입니다.

4. "일방통행"이라는 말은 한 점으로만.

갈 수 있다는 의미입니다.

다른 방향 말하면

요요 말합니다.

5. 다른 방향 말하면, 자동차가 같은 길에서

양쪽으로 요요 가지 못 한다는 뜻이지요.

I can see many signs here and there; would you explain to me what they are, one by one?

(Keep Right)

(Keep Left)

All right. You see the signs '우측 통행' and '좌측 통행' over there?
8. 여기에서는 차량은 길 오른쪽으로 동행하고 사람들은 길 왼쪽으로 동행해야 합니다.

Vehicles must go on the right-hand side of the street and pedestrians on the left-hand side.

9. "인도"와 "포도"는 무엇을 의미합니까?

What do '인도' and '포도' mean?

10. 사람이 걷기 어려운 길은 "인도" 또는 "포도"라고 부르지요.

The place where pedestrians walk is called either '인도' or '포도'.

11. 그리고 "차도"란 많은 차량만 지나가는 길입니다.

And what you call '차도' means vehicles only (can go).
GRAMMAR NOTES

1. -더니

The ending -더니 is added to a verb stem or stem + honorifics and/or past tense suffix. The -더니 form which may be followed by a pause occurs before another inflected expression and is used in the following ways:

(a) A -더니 form which does not have a past tense suffix occurs to denote the speaker's recollection for the past action or description of the verb in -더니 for the succeeding inflected expression.

그 아이가 공부를 열심히 하더니.
지난 학기에 우등생이 되었어요.

The child was studying hard (I remember), and he became an honor student last semester.

그 여자가 젖었을 때에는
어렸더니, 지금은 왜
저렇게 변했어요?

'She was beautiful when young (I recall); how come she's been changed so much?'

(b) -(이, 여)ㅅㅅ 더니

An action verb in past tense ending in -더니 occurs before another inflected expression to indicate the succeeding inflected expression takes place as the result of the speaker's action in the past in the manner of the verb in -ㅅㅅ 더니.

어제 밤에 술을 많이 마셔더니,
베가 아프군요.

I drank too much last night, and I have a stomach ache.

일찍 동안 놀았더니, 다른
우생들에게 떨어지게 됐어요.

'I played (around) for a while and I got behind other students.'

어제 학교에 갔더니, 아무도
오지 않았었어요.

'I went to school yesterday but (as I should have known) nobody came.'

2. -기로 되다

In Unit 24, Grammar Note 2, the pattern -기로 되다 occurred to denote the subject or topic's active intention to 'decide to do something'. The same pattern in which 되다 is replaced by 되다 (i.e. -기로 되다) is used to mean the subject or topic's passive action which is 'decided upon' by
someone or something. The -기로 되어 is usually translated as 'is decided that...', 'is decided upon', 'will be...'. Tenses for the whole construction are generated in 되-. Examples:

저는 다음 달부터 매일 사람에게 근무하기로 되었습니다.  'It has been decided that I will work at the Embassy beginning next month.'

김 박사님은 미지 않아서 구약의 삼각형
여비야기로 되고 혼합니다.  '[They] say that Dr. Kim will be making a trip to Europe before long.'

Note that the pattern -기로 되어 있다 occurs if something has been already decided upon to do/be such-and-such. The English translation for this pattern is usually 'has been decided that...' or 'is supposed to...'.

그린이는 한국으로 쓰기로 되어 있습니다.  'Signs are supposed to be written in Hankil.'

3. 위해서(서) 'for', 'for the sake of'

위해서 as a transitive verb occurs after a nominal expression and means something like 'cares about', 'feels respect for'.

그 여자는 남편을 봉 위해서.  'She cares about her husband very much.'

A nominal as an object (i.e. N 을/를 + 위해서(서)) which may be followed by a pause before another inflected expression implies the inflected expression takes place for (the sake of) the nominal. 위해서 in the above construction is 위해 (infinitive of 위해-) + (particle  서), and 서 may be dropped freely in a rapid speech without changing the meaning.

아내를 위해서(서) 선물을 사어요.  'I bought a present for my wife.'

나를 위해서(서) 군대에 가야 해요.  'You have to go to the army for the country.'

사랑을 위해서(서) 생존이 아프다
위해할 수 있지요.  'For the sake of love, [I] can even sacrifice [my] life.'

The -기 form + 위해서(서) may also occur before another inflected expression to mean 'for the sake of doing something', or 'in order to do something'.

삼키 위해서(서) 삽술이가, 터기
위해서(서) 삽술이가?  'Do you eat to live, or live to eat?'

사람들이 듣고 벌기 위해서(서)
말선이 입습니다.  'People work hard to make money.'
1. Combination Drill (based on Grammar Note 1)

선생:  진에는 한자로 쓰는 간단한 글씨가 많았습니다. 지금은 없으니까.

학생:  진에는 한자로 쓰는 간단한 글씨가 많이 지금은 없으니까.

1. 아침에 날씨가 틀렸습니다. 비가 옵니다.

학생:  아침에 날씨가 틀렸니 비가 옵니다.

2. 그 학생이 얼색이 좋았습니다. 시험에 합격했습니다.

학생:  그 학생이 얼색이 좋으니 시험에 합격했습니다.

3. 그 문은 열쇠로 열었습니다. 성공했습니다.

학생:  그 문은 열쇠로 열어버려 성공했습니다.

4. 처음엔 한국 말이 어려웠습니다. 지금은 관심있습니다.

학생:  처음엔 한국 말이 어렵니 지금은 관심있습니다.

5. 이 길이 진에는 양쪽 통행이었습니다. 지금은 일방 통행입니다.

학생:  이 길이 진에는 양쪽 통행이니 지금은 일방 통행입니다.

6. 그가 한국에 가고 싶어 했습니다. 도미어 왔습니다.

학생:  그가 한국에 가고 싶어 하니 도미어 왔습니다.

There were many signs written in Chinese characters before. There aren't any now.

I remember that there were many signs written in Chinese characters before but I don't see any now.

It was cloudy this morning. It's raining.

(I recall) it was cloudy this morning; now it's raining.

That student worked hard. He passed the exam.

(I recall) that student was studying hard, and he passed the exam.

He worked hard. He has become a success.

I remember his working hard, and now he has become a success.

In the beginning Korean was difficult. It is all right now.

Korean was difficult in the beginning (I recall) but now it's all right.

This street was two-way before. Now it's one way.

This street used to be two way but now it's one way.

He wanted to go to Korea. At last he has gone to Korea.

I remember he wanted to go to Korea; finally he has gone.
UNIT 27  KOREAN BASIC COURSE

7. 아이가 전에는 우유를 좋아하지 않았습니다. 요즘은 싫어하지 않습니다.
   The child didn't like milk before. He doesn't dislike it these days.

8. 그 여자야 전에는 미인이었습니다. 지금은 미워하지 않습니다.
   She was a beauty before. Now she became ugly.

9. 금 선생이 전에는 가난했습니다. 지금은 부자입니다.
   Mr. Kim used to be poor. He is a rich man now.

The child didn't like milk before. He doesn't dislike it these days.
I remember that the child didn't like milk before but he doesn't dislike it these days.
She was a beauty before. Now she became ugly.
She used to be a beauty (I recall) but she has become ugly now.
Mr. Kim used to be poor. He is a rich man now.
I remember Mr. Kim used to be poor before but he is rich now.

2. Combination Drill (based on Grammar Note 1)

선생: 어제 술을 많이 마셨습니까. 머기가 아プ니다.

학생: 어제 술을 많이 마셨더니 머기가 아프니다.

I drank a lot yesterday. I have a headache today.
I drank a lot yesterday and I have a headache today.

1. 금 선생을 만났습니다. 그 사건에 대해서 말씀드릴까요.
   금 선생을 만났더니 그 사건에 대해서 말씀드릴까요.

I met Mr. Kim. He told me about the incident.
When I met Mr. Kim, he told me about the incident.

When I met Mr. Kim, he told me about the incident.

2. 며칠 후 가을 밖었습니다. 기분이 좋아졌습니다.
   며칠 후 가을 밖더니 기분이 좋아졌습니다.

I took a vacation for several days. My feeling has become excellent.
I took a vacation for several days, and I feel pretty good.

3. 큰 자동차를 삽니다. 가페스가 많이 듭니다.
   큰 자동차를 삽더니 가페스가 많이 듭니다.

I bought a big car. It burns a lot of gas.
I bought a big car and it takes a lot of gas.

4. 십년 후에 교향에 갔습니다. 많이 변했습니다.
   십년 후에 교향에 갔더니 많이 변했습니다.

I went to my hometown ten years later. It had changed a lot.
I went to my hometown ten years later, and found it had changed a lot.
5. I have not practised Korean for several days. I forgot it all.
I did not practise Korean for several days, and I've forgotten it all.

6. We did not use that machine for some time. It doesn't work well.
We didn't use that machine for some time, and (now) it doesn't work well.

7. I didn't go to school for a long time. I don't feel like going to school.
I didn't go to school for a long time, and as a result I don't feel like going to school.

3. Transformation Drill (based on Grammar Note 2)

선생: 간단한 한글로 쓰시야 됩니다.
학생: 간단한 한글로 쓰시기로 되어 있습니다.

라. 아침 아침시에 학교에 와야 됩니다.
학생: 아침 아침시에 학교에 오기로 되어 있습니다.

2. 8월에 한국에 가야 됩니다.
학생: 8월에 한국에 가기를 되어 있습니다.

3. 학교에서 한국어 백화야 됩니다.
학생: 학교에서 한국어 배우기로 되어 있습니다.

4. 학교에 가기 전에 한국 믿을 백화야 됩니다.
학생: 한국에 가기 전에 한국 믿을 배우기로 되어 있습니다.

5. 김 선생을 미안해서 만나야 됩니다.
김 선생을 미안해서 만나기로 되어 있습니다.

Signs should be written in Hankil.
Signs are supposed to be written in Hankil.

[You] should come to school at nine.
[You]‘re supposed to come to school at nine.

I have to go to Korea in August.
I'm supposed to go to Korea in August.

[We] have to study Chinese characters in school.
[We] are supposed to study Chinese characters in school.

[He] has to study Korean before he goes to Korea.
[He] is supposed to study Korean before he goes to Korea.

I have to meet Mr. Kim at the tearoom.
I'm supposed to meet Mr. Kim at the tearoom.
6. 텀비는 미적 내야 됩니다.
   텀비는 미적 내기로 되어 있습니다.
7. 비행기로 한국에 가야 됩니다.
   비행기로 한국에 가기로 되어 있습니다.
8. 수업이 끝나면 잠이나야 됩니다.
   수업이 끝나면 잠이나기로 되어 있습니다.
9. 한국에서 사람은 좌측 통행해야 됩니다.
   한국에서 사람은 좌측 통행하기로 되어 있습니다.
10. 후계 시간에는 담배를 피워야 됩니다.
    후계 시간에는 담배를 피우기로 되어 있습니다.

4. Substitution Drill

   1. "일방 통행"이라는 말은 무슨 뜻인가?
      What is meant by (One Way)?
   2. "좌측 통행"이라는 말은 무슨 뜻인가?
      What is meant by (Keep Left)?
   3. "우측 통행"이라는 말은 무슨 뜻인가?
      What is meant by (Keep Right)?
   4. "통행 금지"라는 말은 무슨 뜻인가?
      What is meant by (No Trespassing)?
   5. "출입 금지"라는 말은 무슨 뜻인가?
      What is meant by (Off Limits)?
   6. "금연구"라는 말은 무슨 뜻인가?
      What is meant by (No Smoking)?
   7. "할모"라는 말은 무슨 뜻인가?
      What is meant by (Remove your Hat)?
   8. "금주"라는 말은 무슨 뜻인가?
      What is meant by (No Drinking)?

You have to pay your hotel bill in advance.
You're supposed to pay your hotel bill in advance.
I have to go to Korea by airplane.
I'm supposed to go to Korea by airplane.
The class should end at four.
The class is supposed to end at four.
In Korea, the pedestrians should walk on the left side.
In Korea, the pedestrians are supposed to walk on the left side [of the street].
You should smoke only during the breaks.
You're supposed to smoke only during the breaks.
9. "세짐"이라는 말은 무엇을 의미하나요?

What is meant by (Slow)?

10. "신사용"이라는 말은 무엇을 의미하나요?

What is meant by (Man's Room)?

11. "초도"라는 말은 무엇을 의미하나요?

What is meant by (Sidewalk)?

5. Response Drill

선생: 한쪽으로만 갈 수 있다는 의미인가요?

학생: 1. 네, 한쪽으로만 갈 수 있다는 뜻입니다.

2. 네, 한쪽으로만 갈 수 있다는 뜻입니다.

1. 한쪽으로만 갈 수 있다는 의미인가요?

Does it mean that you can go in one direction only?

Yes, that means you can go in one direction only.

1. 네, 한쪽으로만 갈 수 있다는 뜻입니다.

2. 네, 한쪽으로만 갈 수 있다는 뜻입니다.

2. 오른쪽으로만 들 수 있다는 의미인가요?

Does it mean that (you) can go only to the left?

Yes, it means you can go only to the left.

1. 네, 오른쪽으로만 들 수 있다는 뜻입니다.

2. 네, 오른쪽으로만 들 수 있다는 뜻입니다.

3. 지나갈 수 없다는 의미인가요?

Does it mean that you cannot go through (or pass)?

Yes, it means that you cannot pass.

1. 네, 지나갈 수 없다는 뜻입니다.

2. 네, 지나갈 수 없다는 뜻입니다.

4. 들어갈 수 없다는 의미인가요?

Does it mean that you cannot enter?

Yes, it means that you cannot enter.

1. 네, 들어갈 수 없다는 뜻입니다.

2. 네, 들어갈 수 없다는 뜻입니다.
5. Does it mean you should not smoke?
   1. 애, 담배를 피우지 말라는 의미입니다.
   2. 애, 담배를 피우지 말라는 말씀입니다.

Does it mean that you should not smoke?
Yes, it means that you should not smoke.

6. Does it mean that you should take off your hat?
   1. 애, 모자를 벗으라는 의미입니다.
   2. 애, 모자를 벗으라는 말씀입니다.

Does it mean that you should take off your hat?
Yes, it means that you should take off your hat.

7. Does it mean that we cannot drink (liquor)?
   1. 애, 술을 마실 수 없다는 의미입니다.
   2. 애, 술을 마실 수 없다는 말씀입니다.

Does it mean that we cannot drink (liquor)?
Yes, it means that we cannot drink.

8. Does it mean that [we] should go slowly?
   1. 애, 견청이 가라는 의미입니다.
   2. 애, 견청이 가라는 말씀입니다.

Does it mean that [we] should go slowly?
Yes, it means that [we] should go slowly.

9. Does it mean that only women can use it?
   1. 애, 여자만 사용 가능한다는 의미입니다.
   2. 애, 여자만 사용 가능한다는 말씀입니다.

Does it mean that only women can use it?
Yes, it means that only women can use it.

10. Does it mean only people can go through?
   1. 애, 사람이 통과할 수 있다는 의미입니다.
   2. 애, 사람이 통과할 수 있다는 말씀입니다.

Does it mean only people can go through?
Yes, it mean only people can go through.

11. Does it mean that you should be quiet?
    1. 애, 소음이 나라는 의미입니다.
    2. 애, 소음이 나라는 말씀입니다.

Does it mean that you should be quiet?
Yes, it means that you should be quiet.

12. Does it mean you can park there?
    1. 애, 차를 세우는 데는 허락한다는 의미입니다.
    2. 애, 차를 세우는 데는 허락한다는 말씀입니다.

Does it mean you can park there?
Yes, it means you can park there.

13. Does it mean that you should not park?
    1. 애, 차를 세우지 말라는 의미입니다.
    2. 애, 차를 세우지 말라는 말씀입니다.

Does it mean that you should not park?
Yes, it means that you should not park.
6. Substitution Drill

1. "보도"는 무엇을 의미합니다가?  
   What do you mean by (Sidewalk)? or  
   What is meant by (Sidewalk)?

2. "차도"는 무엇을 의미합니다가?  
   What do you mean by (Road)?

3. "도로"는 무엇을 의미합니다가?  
   What do you mean by (Road)?

4. "철도"는 무엇을 의미합니다가?  
   What do you mean by (Railroad)?

5. "지하철"은 무엇을 의미합니다가?  
   What do you mean by (Subway)?

6. "인도"는 무엇을 의미합니다가?  
   What do you mean by (Sidewalk)?

7. "네거리"는 무엇을 의미합니까가?  
   What do you mean by (Crossroads)?

8. "네거리"는 무엇을 뜻합니까가?  
   What is meant by (Crossroads)?

9. "네거리"는 무엇을 말합니까가?  
   What is meant by (Crossroads)?

7. Completion Exercise

1. 지속 위해서,  
2. 가족을 위해서,  
3. 아내를 위해서,  
4. 나라를 위해서,  
5. 돈을 위해서,  
6. 생명을 위해서,  
7. 삶을 위해서,  
8. 인간 말고 무엇을 위해서,
Supplementary Dialogue for Comprehension

스미스: 요지음은 한국의 상점 간판들을 한글로 쓸 수 있나요?

이: 예, 잘 한글로 쓸 수 있는 점 báo이 있습니다. 그러나 가끔은 아예 판자에 쓰는 간판을 볼 수 있습니다.

스미스: 그러면 거미의 머리 가리 토시키는 말 한글로 되어 있습니까?

이: 예, 그렇습니다. 선생님은 묻으신데요.

스미스: 저기에 '일반 통행이미지는 말은 무엇을 의미합니까?

이: 그것은 정해의 '위 웨이'가 같은 뜻이지요. 그리고 한국에서 차량은 우측 통행을 하고 사람들은 좌측으로 통행합니다.

Narrative for Comprehension and Reading

요지음은 거미의 간판들은 거의 한글로 되어 있습니까. 판자들을 보는 사람을 위해서 대단히 좋다고 생각합니다. 그리고 거미의 포식은 한글을 모르는 외국 사람들이 할 수 있도록 토끼가 되어 있습니까.

한국에서는 미국과 같이 차량은 우측으로 통행하고 사람이 왼쪽으로 통행하지만 좌측의 좌측 상측이 많습니다. 사람들은 금방 은어서도 좌측 통행하는 것이 보통입니다. 그리고 차가 다니는 길은 '차도'라고 부르고 사람이 다니는 길은 '보도'라고도 합니다. 사람이 차도로 다니면 대단히 위험합니다.

154
EXERCISES

A. Explain what the following public signs mean based on the Basic Dialogue:

1. "설방 통행"
2. "우측 통행"
3. "좌측 통행"
4. "인도" 또는 "보호"
5. "차도"
6. "통행 금지"
7. "출입 금지"
8. "주행"
9. "정적"
10. "서행"
11. "신사용"
12. "측 넘어진"
13. "금지"
14. "주차장"

B. Tell your classmates:

1. that you remember Mr. Kim used to be poor before but he is rich now.
2. that Mrs. Parker was beautiful when young (you recall) but that she has changed very much.
3. that you fooled around for a while and that you got behind the other students.
4. that you didn't come to class yesterday and (as a result) you cannot follow the teacher.
5. that it has been decided that you will work at the Secretary's office beginning next month.
6. that all the signs are supposed to be written in 한글.
7. that you bought a present for your mother.
8. that you have to work hard for your future.
9. that your friend works 60 hours a week to earn more money.
10. that you do not know what 네거역 means.
UNIT 28. Reading Signs (Continued)

BASIC DIALOGUE

They enter a public building.

[he] opens [it]

[it] opens

How do you open this door? I can't open it ('it doesn't open').

[he] pushes

[it] becomes open

[he] holds [it]; [he] catches [it]

[he] pulls [it]

Push it inside. If you can't push it open, try pulling it.

(Off Limit; Do Not Enter)

side door

arrow sign

Oh, there's a sign which says 'Outlet; Do Not Enter'. I see an arrow sign pointing to the side door.

(No Trespassing)

you should not go in

You should stay out of places where you see 'Outlet' and 'No Trespassing'.

1. 이 문을 어떻게 엽니까? 문이 안 열리는데요.

2. 안으로 밀어 보십시오. 밀어서 열어 지시 없으면 잠어 닦기세요.

"Outlet"

외문

화살표

3. 여기 "Outlet; Do Not Enter"라고 쓰여 있습니다.

외문으로 가리는 화살표가 있는 면에

"Outlet"

들어 가면 안 됩니다

4. "Outlet; Do Not Enter"라는 곳이나 "Outlet; Do Not Enter"라는 면

들어 가면 안 됩니다.
5. 턱이 충층대 옆벽 가는 옆 벽에 "금연"이라고 써 있습니다.

6. "금연"이란 토끼의 턱이 있으면 담배를 피우지 말아야 합니다.

대답

When you see the sign '금연' you must not smoke.

왜냐하면

사람이 모입니다

공공 건물

화재

위험

위험하십시오

위험이 있습니다

공기

공기가 위험합니다

공기가 위험하게 됩니다

7. 왜냐하면, 사람이 많이 모이는 공공 건물에는 화재의 위험이 있고 또 공기가 위험해 되기 때문입니다.

대답

The reason is that there's a danger of fire in public buildings where many people gather, and also because the air becomes stuffy.

8. 그럼, 담배를 피우고 싶은 사람은 어떻게 해요?

대답

What about people who want to smoke, then?
There's a lounge at the end of the hall where you can smoke.

now that you mention about the lounge; restroom

[I'm reminded of ('a thought comes out')]

[I'm reminded of the toilet]

Your talking about the lounge reminds me of the restroom.

I'll make a trip to ('I'll have gone and come')

Excuse me, I'll be back in a minute. ('I'll make a quick trip to the restroom.')

gentleman

('for gentleman')

lady

('for ladies')

The door with the sign '선생' beside the lounge is 'Men's Room'. You should not go into '숙녀실'.
### Additional Vocabulary

#### A. Idioms

1. 신사 숙녀 역할
   - Ladies and Gentlemen!
2. 작업중
3. 공사중
4. 철도
5. 주차 금지
6. 박근한 골목
7. 통행 금지 시간

#### B. (유료)

1. 유료 주차장
   - pay parking lot
2. 유료 승차권
   - paid token (for bus, train, etc.)
3. 유료 입장권
   - paid admission (to theatre, stadium, public buildings)
4. 유료 통행
   - pay toll

#### C. (무료)

1. 무료 주차장
   - free parking lot
2. 무료 승차권
   - free token (for bus, train, subway, etc.)
3. 무료 여행
   - free travel
4. 무료 우편
   - free mail
5. 무료 입장권
   - free admission (to theatre, stadium, public buildings)
UNIT 28

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

free lodging
free service

D. Modern City and Traffic System:

1. 지하철
   subway

2. 지하도
   underground pass

3. 구름 다리
   overpass; underpass

4. 엘리베이터
   (airplane) boarding ladder

5. 승강기
   elevator

6. 고층 건물
   skyscraper; high rise building

7. 육교
   overpass (used by pedestrians to cross the street)
1. -개 되다

In Unit 16, Grammar Notes 3, the construction -개 하다 was used as a causative expression. The same pattern in which 하다 is replaced by 되-, (i.e. the -개 form followed by no pause + 되다) occurs in the following ways:

(a) A description verb in -개 되다 'becomes + adjective'. 되다 in this construction may have tense suffixes.

\[ \text{물건 가격이 비싸게 되었습니다.} \] 
\[ \text{Things became expensive.} \]

\[ \text{살기가 좀 더 어렵게 되었습니다.} \] 
\[ \text{Living has become a little more difficult.} \]

(b.1) An action verb in -개 되다 'turns out to be/do...'

The -개 form of an action verb which may occur without a pause before 되- which is in either present or future tense denotes the subject or topic's passive action to be taken in the future.

\[ \text{직장을 옮기려, 저는 야마다} \] 
\[ \text{퇴사하게 되겠습니다.} \] 
\[ \text{If I change my job I'll probably have} \] 
\[ \text{to move [my residence].} \] 

\[ \text{선배는 내일 떠나게 됐니까?} \] 
\[ \text{Are you going to leave tomorrow?} \]

\[ \text{누구나 다 알게 될 것입니다.} \] 
\[ \text{Everyone will come to know it.} \]

(b.2) An action verb in -개 되었다

This construction in which 되- is in a past tense occurs when something or some action has already turned out to be such for the subject or topic of the sentence.

\[ \text{저는 다음 달부터 서울} \] 
\[ \text{대학교에서 가르치게} \] 
\[ \text{퇴사했습니다.} \] 
\[ \text{I'm supposed to teach at Seoul} \] 
\[ \text{University from next month. ('It's} \] 
\[ \text{been decided that I teach at Seoul} \] 
\[ \text{University.'')} \]

\[ \text{이제는 그 사실을 알게} \] 
\[ \text{되었습니다.} \] 
\[ \text{Now I came to know the fact.' or 'It} \] 
\[ \text{has turned out that I know the fact.'} \]
'My family is to leave this city because of my job.'

Compare the construction '계 되--'with--'기로 되--' (Grammar Note 2 of Unit 27).

2. 'should not...' , 'must not...'

The pattern -(으)며 안 되וצר (which literally means 'IX [you] do... , [it] doesn't become') is used as the opposite of the pattern infinitive + 야 (or 되) 다 'must...', 'have to...' or its equivalent -지 않으려면 안 됩니다 (Unit 11, Grammar Notes 3). Thus, the common No-responses to Infinitive ÷ doannie 하기? 'May I...? ' (Is it all right even if [I] do...?') are -지 마십시오. 'Please don't...' or -(으)며 안 됩니다 'You must not...'. Compare (a) and (b):

(a) 
지금 뭐나서 안 됩니다. 'You should not leave now.'
매일 그렇게 두번 안 됩니다. 'You must not quit college.'
이 건에 들어 가면 안 됩니다. 'You should not go into this street.'

(b) 
학교에 가야 합니다. 'You must go to school.'
학교에 가지 않으려면 안 됩니다.
Remember that -지 않으려면 (or 되) 다 and -지 않으려 하 (or 되) 다 can be substituted by -편 안 되וצר 'should not...', 'must not...'.

3. (왜나비면,)...-기 데롬 이다 'it (the reason) is because [it] does / is' ('if you ask why... [that]'s because...')

The construction -기 데롬 에 'because X does / is...' occurs before another inflected expression to denote cause or reason (Unit 21). -기 데롬 + the copula expression occurs as the sentence final form with or without being preceded by 왜나비면 at the beginning of the sentence and gives a full explanation why. Examples:

A. 왜 공공 건물 안에서는 담배를 피우지 말아야 합니다가? 'Why must you not smoke in public buildings?'

B. 왜나래면, 화재의 위험이 있기 때문에입니다. 'That's because there's a danger of fire.'

그래도 또 공기가 막혀가 되기 때문에입니다. 'And also because the air becomes stuffy.'
KOREAN BASIC COURSE

UNIT 28

DRILLS

1. Response Drill

선생: 교실에서 담배를 피우도 괜찮습니까?
학생: 아니오, (교실에서 담배를) 피우지 말여야 합니다.

1. 학교 앞에 차를 세우도 괜찮습니까?
   아니오, (학교 앞에) 차를 세우지 말여야 합니다.

2. 학교 앞에 놓게 와도 괜찮습니까?
   아니오, (학교 앞에) 놓게 오지 말여야 합니다.

3. "물리 금지"라는 표誌이 가도 괜찮습니까?
   아니오, ("물리 금지"라는 표誌이 가도) 가지 말여야 합니다.

4. 벽에 그림을 부착도 괜찮습니까?
   아니오, (벽에 그림을) 부착하지 말여야 합니다.

5. 교실에서 영어로 말해야 괜찮습니까?
   아니오, (교실에서) 영어로 말하지 말여야 합니다.

6. 청인이 차로 달리도 괜찮습니까?
   아니오, (청인이) 차로 달리지 말여야 합니다.

7. 차가 달릴 때 자동차 문을 열어도 괜찮습니까?
   아니오, (차가 달릴 때) 자동차 문을 열지 말여야 합니다.

May I smoke in the classroom? ('Is it O.K. even though I smoke in the classroom?')
No, you must not smoke in the classroom.

May I park the car in front of the school?
No, you must not park the car in front of the school.

Is it all right if I come to school late?
No, you must not come to school late.

Is it all right to go where it says 'DO NOT ENTER'?
No, you must not enter where it says 'DO NOT ENTER'.

Is it all right if I hang a picture on the wall?
No, you must not hang a picture on the wall.

Is it all right if I speak English in class?
No, you must not speak English in class.

Is it all right if the pedestrians walk on the road?
No, the pedestrians must not walk on the road.

Is it all right to open the door when the car is running?
No, you must not open the door when the car is running.
UNIT 28  KOREAN BASIC COURSE

2. Transformation Drill (based on Grammar Note 2)

생성: 화재의 위험이 있으니가. 담배를 피우면 안 됩니다.

화성: 화재의 위험이 있기 때문에. 담배를 피우면 안 되요.

1. 후유니가 창문을 열면 안 됩니다.
   물기가 때문에 창문을 열면 안 되요.

2. 강이 지저분 하니가 소게하지 않으면 안 됩니다.
   강이 지저분하기 때문에 소게하지 않으면 안 되요.

3. 방공기가 탁해 지니가 담배를 피우면 안 됩니다.
   방공기가 탁해지기 때문에 담배를 피우면 안 되요.

4. 수 염증 이니가 화장실에 가면 안 됩니다.
   수 염증이기 때문에 화장실에 가면 안 되요.

5. 신사용이니가 술녀가 들어 가면 안 됩니다.
   신사용이기 때문에 술녀가 들어 가면 안 되요.

6. 한자를 모르니가 한자를 배우지 않으면 안 됩니다.
   한자를 모르기 때문에 한자를 배우지 않으면 안 되요.

7. 잘 모르니가 하나 하나 설명하지 않으면 안 됩니다.
   잘 모르기 때문에 하나 하나 설명하지 않으면 안 되요.

Because there's a danger of fire, you should not smoke.

Because it's cold, you should not open the windows.

Because the room is messy, you must clean it.

Because the air in the room becomes stuffy, you must not smoke.

Because we're in the middle of class, you must not go to the rest room.

Because it's for gentlemen, ladies must not go in.

Because I don't know Chinese characters, I must study them.

Because I don't know [them] well, you must explain them one by one.
8. 이 길엔 차량이 많으니까 주의해서 운전하지 않으면 안 됩니다.
   이 길엔 차량이 많기 때문에 주의해서 운전하지 않으면 안 됩니다.

9. 이 문은 일행하고 엽으니까 잘어 담기면 안 됩니다.
   이 문은 일행하고 있기 때문에 잘어 담기면 안 됩니다.

10. 한국말을 잘 모르니까 저에게 한국말로 말하든 안 됩니다.
    한국말을 잘 모르기 때문에 저에게 한국말로 말하든 안 됩니다.

3. Response Drill (based on Grammar Note 3)

선생: 왜 담배를 피우면 안 됩니다가? /공기가 좋아지니까

학생: 왜 담배를 피우면 안 됩니다가? /공기가 좋아지니까.

1. 왜 한국말을 배우면 안 됩니다가? /한국어로 학습합니다가
   왜냐하면, 한국어로 학습합니다.

2. 왜 한국말이 그렇게 어렵습니까? /문법이 복잡하기 때문입니다.
   왜냐하면, 문법이 복잡하기 때문입니다.

3. 왜 술을 마시고 운전하면 안 됩니다가? /메일하십시오가
   왜냐하면, 메일할기가 때문입니다.

4. 왜 극장 안에서 포자를 벗어nad 항니까? /인사가 불 수 없습니다가
   왜냐하면, 인사가 불 수 없기 때문입니다. (The reason is), because the people behind you cannot see.
UNIT 28
KOREAN BASIC COURSE

5. 왜 버스로 학교에 온니까? 
   /편의합니다/ 
   왜냐하면, 편의하기 때문입니다.

Why do you come to school by bus? 
   [It's convenient.] 
   (The reason is), because it's convenient

6. 왜 아침까지 학교에 왔어 합니까? 
   /수업이 아침시에 시작합니다/ 
   왜냐하면, 수업이 아침시에 시작하기 때문입니다.

Why do you have to come to school by 9? 
   [Class starts at 9.] 
   (The reason is), because class begins at 9 o'clock.

7. 왜 교실에서 커피를 마시면 안 됩니까? 
   /교실이 더워진 지기 때문입니다/ 
   왜냐하면, 교실이 더워진 지기 때문입니다.

Why shouldn't you drink coffee in the classroom? 
   [The classroom gets dirty] 
   (The reason is), because the classroom gets dirty.

8. 왜 거미의 글라도 하필로 되어 있습니까? 
   /한글로 쓰기로 되었습니다/ 
   왜냐하면, 한글로 쓰기로 되었습니다.

Why are the signs along the street written in Hankil? 
   [They are supposed to be written in Hankil] 
   (The reason is), because [they]'re supposed to be written in Hankil.

9. 왜 집에서 학교까지 오래 걸립니까? 
   /집이 멀기 때문입니다/ 
   왜냐하면, 집이 멀기 때문입니다.

Why does it take so long to get from your house to school? 
   [My house is far away] 
   (The reason is), because my house is far away.

4. Response-Transformation Drill (based on Grammar Note 1)

선생: 그 분을 알았습니까?  
학생: 네, 그 분을 잘 알게 되었습니다.

Did you know him? 
   Yes, I came to know him well.

1. 손님이 틴펫을 많이 피워서 공기가 흐리니까?  
   네, 손님이 틴펫을 많이 피워서 공기가 흐리게 되었습니다.

Is the air stuffy because the guests smoked a lot? 
   Yes, the air became stuffy because the guests smoked a lot.

2. 아버지가 돌아 가신 후에 생활이 어려습니까? 
   네, 아버지가 돌아 가신 후에 생활이 어려워졌습니다.

Has your life become difficult after your father passed away? 
   Yes, since my father passed away, my life has become difficult.
3. 그 여자가 많이 말이어서 싫어 하지 않습니까?
   예, 그 여자가 많이 말이어서 싫어 하게 되었습니다.
   Don't you like her because she is talkative?
   Yes, I came to dislike her because she is talkative.

4. 담배가 좀에 나쁘다면 그래서 담배를 깊었습니다.
   예, 담배가 좀에 나쁘다면 그래서 담배를 깊었습니다.
   Did you quit smoking because they said that cigarettes are not good for your health?
   Yes, I came around to quitting smoking because they said that cigarettes are not good for the health.

5. 신문 기사를 읽고 그 사건을 알겠습니까?
   예, 신문 기사를 읽고 그 사건을 알게 되었습니다.
   Did you learn about that incident from the newspaper articles?
   Yes, I read a newspaper article and came to know about the incident.

6. 자동차 사고가 난 후에 조심해서 운전하십시오.
   예, 자동차 사고가 난 후에 조심해서 운전하게 되었습니다.
   Do you drive carefully since you had the auto accident?
   Yes, I've come to drive carefully since I had the auto accident.

7. 국원이 잘 삶습니까?
   예, 전쟁후에 국원이 잘 삶게 되었습니다.
   Do the people live well?
   Yes, after the war the people came to live well.

8. 한번 시큰한 후에 한해 잘어요니까?
   예, 한번 시큰한 후에 한해 지게 되었습니다.
   Having once quarrelled with him, have you become close?
   Yes, after we had a quarrel, we started to become close.

5. Substitution Drill

1. 비행기 타는 것이 위험합니다.
   Taking ('riding on') an airplane is dangerous.

2. 자동차 운전하는 것이 위험합니다.
   Driving a car is dangerous.

3. 권총 잡난하는 것이 위험합니다.
   Playing with a pistol is dangerous.

4. 밤에 운전하는 것이 위험합니다.
   Driving at night is dangerous.

5. 산에서 불을 피우는 것이 위험합니다.
   Setting a fire in the mountains is dangerous.
6. 은자 사는 것이 위험합니다.  
   Living alone is dangerous.
7. 전쟁이 일어 나면 위험합니다.  
   If there's a war ('if a war occurs') it's dangerous.
8. 약을 먹지 않으면 위험합니다.  
   If you don't take medicine, it's dangerous.
9. 바람이 불 때 배를 타는 것이 위험합니다.  
   Sailing a boat when it's windy is dangerous.
10. 불을 켜두는 것이 위험합니다.  
    Leaving the light on is dangerous.

6. Response-Transformation Drill

선생: 그 만을 심게 있어 버릴가요?
학생: 예, 심게 있어 버릴 위험이 있습니다.
1. 아이들이 돈을 일어 버릴가요?
   예, 일어 버릴 위험이 있습니다.
2. 아침 기차를 노실가요?
   예, 노실 위험이 있습니다.
3. 그 아이가 학교로 쓰여 왔어요?
   예, 쓰여 왔어요 위험이 있습니다.
4. 전기 불을 가지 않으면 불이 날가요?
   예, 불이 날 위험이 있습니다.
5. 창문을 열지 않으면 공기가 막혀 질까요?
   예, 공기가 막혀질 위험이 있습니다.
6. 집을 청소하지 않으면 벌이 생겨날까요?
   예, 벌이 생겨질 위험이 있습니다.

Do you think [we]'ll forget it easily?
Yes, there's a danger of forgetting it easily.

Do you think the children will lose money?
Yes, there's danger that they'll lose it.

Do you think [we]'ll miss the morning train?
Yes, there's a danger of missing it.

Do you think the child will dislike school?
Yes, there's a danger that he'll dislike it.

Do you think there will be a fire if [we] don't turn off the (electric) light?
Yes, there's a danger of fire.

If we don't open the windows, do you think the air will become stuffy?
Yes, there's a danger of the air becoming stuffy.

If we don't clean the house, do you think there'll be disease?
Yes, there's a danger of disease.
7. When the prices (of things) go up, do you think living will be more difficult?
   Yes, there's a danger that living will be harder.

8. Do you think there'll be many auto accidents if there're a lot of vehicles?
   Yes, there's a danger that there'll be many auto accidents.

9. Do you think old cars will break down easily?
   Yes, there's a danger that old cars will break down easily.

10. Do you think we'll be unable to sleep well if we drink a lot of coffee?
    Yes, there's a danger that we'll not be able to sleep well.

7. Substitution Drill

1. I'm reminded of the restroom.

2. I'm reminded of Korean food.

3. I'm reminded of the taste of Kimchi.

4. I'm reminded of (my) parents.

5. I'm reminded of [my] childhood.

6. I'm reminded of [my] school days ('the time when I was attending school').

7. I'm reminded of [my] hometown.

8. I'm reminded of the time when I was living in Seoul.

9. I'm reminded of the old days.

10. I'm reminded of [my] old friends.
8. Combination Drill

[You] talk about the lounge. I'm reminded of the rest room.

Now that (or because) you mention the lounge, I'm reminded of the Men's Room.

I see you. I'm reminded of your father.

Now that I see you, I'm reminded of your father.

I look at the pictures. I'm reminded of the old days.

Now that I look at the pictures, I'm reminded of the old days.

I hear that story. I'm reminded of my college days.

Now that I hear the story, I'm reminded of my college days.

Was stories come up. I'm reminded of days in the army.

Now that we talk about war stories, I'm reminded of my days in the army.

I see a 'No Smoking' sign. I'm reminded of cigarettes.

Now that I see a 'No Smoking' sign, I'm reminded of cigarettes.

I meet [my] hometown friends. I'm reminded of my hometown.

Now that I meet my hometown friends, I'm reminded of my hometown.

I receive letters from my friends. I'm reminded of my school days.

Now that I receive letters from my friends, I'm reminded of my school days.
8. 식당 음식을 지났습니다. 맛있는 음식이 생각납니다.

I pass by a restaurant. I'm reminded of tasty food.

Now that I pass by a restaurant, I'm reminded of delicious food.

9. FSI 이야기를 듣습니다. 한국말 배우던 때가 생각납니다.

I hear about FSI. I'm reminded of the time I was studying Korean.

Now that I hear about FSI, I'm reminded of the time I was studying Korean.

9. Substitution Drill

1. 집에서 외장실에 갑다 오겠습니다.

I'll make a quick trip to the men's room. (I'll go to the toilet for a while and come back.)

2. 집에서 사무실에 갑다 오겠습니다.

I'll make a quick trip to my office.

3. 집에서 두위에 갑다 오겠습니다.

I'll make a quick trip to the kitchen.

4. 집에서 음접실에 갑다 오겠습니다.

I'll make a quick trip to the parlor.

5. 집에서 안방에 갑다 오겠습니다.

I'll make a quick trip to the family room.

6. 집에서 서재에 갑다 오겠습니다.

I'll make a quick trip to [my] study (room).

7. 집에서 가게에 갑다 오겠습니다.

I'll make a quick trip to the shop.

8. 집에서 광장에 갑다 오겠습니다.

I'll make a quick trip to the lounge.

9. 집에서 대합실에 갑다 오겠습니다.

I'll make a quick trip to the waiting room.

10. 집에서 기숙사에 갑다 오겠습니다.

I'll make a quick trip to the dormitory.
11. 저는 학교에 갔다 왔습니다.
   I have been to the dormitory for a little while.

12. 저는 학교에 다시 오겠습니다.
   I'll make a quick trip to the dormitory.

13. 저는 학교에 다시 왔습니다.
   I have been to the dormitory for a little while.

10. Combination Drill (based on Grammar Note 3, Unit 25)

   선생: 학교에 다녀왔습니다. 그라 두었어요.
   I attended school. I quit it.
   화제: 학교에 다녀왔다가 그라 두었어요.

   1. 한국 밖은 공부했습니다. 한국에 왔어요.
   I was attending school, but I quit it.
   한국 밖은 공부하다가 한국에 왔어요.

   2. 빨리 담배를 빨았어요. 사고가 났어요.
   I smoked. [I] caused a fire.
   빨리 담배를 빨다가 사고가 났어요.

   3. 합배를 피우겠습니다. 화재를 냈습니다.
   While I was smoking I caused a fire.
   합배를 피우다가 화재를 냈습니다.

   4. 학교에 다녀왔습니다. 결혼했습니다.
   I attended school. I got married.
   학교에 다녀왔다가 결혼했습니다.

   5. 부대서로 왔습니다. 대사가 되었습니다.
   I was Vice-Ambassador. I became an Ambassador.
   부대서로 와다가 대사가 되었습니다.

   6. 비가 왔습니다. 그쳤습니다.
   It rained. It stopped.
   비가 오다가 그쳤습니다.

   7. 오후 시내에 갔습니까. 집에 돌아 왔습니다.
   I went downtown to buy clothes. I came back.
   오후 시내에 가다가 집에 돌아 왔습니다.
8. I followed the sign. I got lost.

9. I was following the sign, but I got lost.

10. I ate supper. I received a telephone call.

Supplementary Dialogue for Comprehension

Guest: "동일 길지"와 "통행 길지"는 같은 말입니까?

Host: "동일 길지"는 길이의 비슷한데 "통행 길지"는 다른 뜻이 오지 말다는 말이고 "통행 길지"는 길이가 가미가 있는 뜻입니다.

Guest: "통행 길지"는 다른 뜻이 있는 뜻이 있습니까?

Host: 예, 한국에서는 밤 12시를 통행 길지 시간이라고 합니다.

Guest: 외국 사람도 마실 수 있습니까?

Host: 예, 외국 사람도 한국에 있는 동안은 한국 법을 지켜야 합니다.
EXERCISES

A. Plan a field trip this time; go out to the street and visit some public places. If you are studying Korean in Korea, the instructor will be the guide; if you are in other than Korea, the student should be the guide. The guide should answer and explain in Korean all the questions about the street or public signs.

B. Tell your guide:

1. to catch a cab.
2. to push the door open.
3. to pull the door.
4. to follow the arrow sign.
5. not to smoke in the theatre because the air becomes stuffy.
6. that he should not go in where it says 흡연 금지.
7. that he must not cross the street in the middle of the block.
8. that you've come to know about all the signs now.
9. that you've come to like studying Korean.
UNIT 29. Going Out for a Drive

BASIC DIALOGUE

1. Do you know how to drive, Mr. Kim?

2. Of course I do. I don't know how to fix a car when it is out of order, but I know how to drive one.

Do you know how to drive, Mr. Kim?

Of course I do. I don't know how to fix a car when it is out of order, but I know how to drive one.

I took a driving test two years ago and have a license but I have had little opportunity to drive.

that's nice ('[it] became')

[I] get injured; [I] get hurt

[I] hurt my hand and

[it]'s difficult
4. Well, good! I hurt my hand, and I have some trouble with driving lately.
   [I] drive (very colloquial)
   [I] drive a car
driving

5. You drive my car and let's go out, say, for a ride.

6. Oh, that's a good idea. Let's do that.

(a little later)

(Kim and Jackson are driving along the street.)

7. If there's a sign which says '천정', you have to stop before crossing the street.

(Slow)
speed

[he] lowers

[he] is careful; [he] watches out

And where it says '천정', you must slow down and be careful.
9. "시속 25마일"은 시내에서만 적용됩니까?

Does '25 MPH' (speed limit) apply only in the downtown area?

Commercial area
Residence
Residential area
District
Speed limit
Indication; sign
It’s indicated

10. 대개 시내 상가와 주택가 지역에서는 속도 제한을 아트록 표시가 되어 있습니다.

Usually, in commercial and residential areas, there are speed limit signs (so that one should limit speed).

Gratefully
Signal
Traffic signal
[he] obeys; [he] keeps; [he] protects
[he] obeys the signals
[he] exceeds; [he] goes beyond (a line)
It’s all right as long as you don’t exceed
[there]’s no trouble; [there]’s no problem

So if you obey the traffic signals and do not exceed the speed limits, you have no problems.
On roads outside of the city you're not supposed to exceed 40 MPH, but (only) on super highways you can drive up to 55 MPH.

Say, the gas is almost gone. ('Gas is almost out of stock in the car.') Let's stop at a gas station and fill up before we go.

Oh, that's right. The gas gauge is almost all the way down.
Additional Vocabulary

A. Structure of a Typical Traditional Korean House:

1. standings (the room where family gather and parents live)
2. 마루 (wooden floor room)
3. 겨니방 (the room used by children which is across '방')
4. 부엌 kitchen
5. 상방방 (the room used as a guest room, or as a study)
6. 창고 (storage room)
7. 탑문 gate
8. 변싉 toilet
9. 수도 running-water
10. 젖뚝대 (the place where pickle jars are placed)
11. 벼랑방 flower bed
12. (뒷)뜰 (back) yard
13. 벽 wall (which surrounds the house)
14. 굴뚝 chimney
15. 지붕 roof
16. 정원 garden
17. 울타리 fence
18. 선반 shelves; shelf
B. Auxiliary Structure for a Modern House:

1. 카포
   carport
2. 지하실
   basement
3. 도구실
   tool room
4. 방
   parlor
5. 로비
   vestibule
6. 다락
   attic
7. 오락실
   recreation room
8. 잔디(밭)
   lawn

C. Furniture and Home Furnishing:

1. 가구
   furniture
2. 옷장
   clothes chest
3. 책장
   bookcase; book shelves
4. 베드
   bedding chest
5. 미러
   mirror stand
6. 거울
   mirror
7. 키보드
   hi-fi
8. 텔레비전(촌)
   television
9. 폰
   phonographer
10. 레코더
    tape recorder
11. 냉장고
    refrigerator
12. 세탁기
    washing machine
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>13.</td>
<td>옷걸이</td>
<td>(clothes) hangers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.</td>
<td>뚫지통</td>
<td>trash basket</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.</td>
<td>재떨이</td>
<td>ashtray</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.</td>
<td>소фа</td>
<td>sofa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.</td>
<td>안락의자</td>
<td>armchair</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18.</td>
<td>벅셔</td>
<td>cushion</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
UNIT 2
KOREAN BASIC COURSE

NOTES ON THE BASIC DIALOGUE

(Numbers correspond to the sentence numbers.)

2. 'mechanical trouble' is a noun. The verbs 'to occur' 'to happen' commonly occur (as intransitive verbs) for the subject.

차가 고장이 납니다. 'The car is out of order.'

제품에 고장이 생겼습니다. 'There's mechanical trouble in the',

제품이 고장이 생겼습니다. 'The sewing machine is out of order.'

고장을 내야 and 고장은 일으키다 both mean 'to cause a mechanical trouble' or 'to have the machine be out of order'.

내가 그 자전거를 고장(을) 'I've made the bicycle be out of order.'

3. 'test', 'examination' is a noun. 'to test (N)' is a transitive verb. 시험을 보다 or 시험을 치다 means 'to take a test'.

4. 'Financially in a difficult situation'.

골난하다 pronounced as /골탄하다/ as an independent verb preceded by a personal nominal is an intransitive verb meaning 'to be financially in a difficult situation'.

골난하다 preceded by the -기 form as subject means 'to be difficult to do...'.

한국 학과 때 유기 연구 골난하기. 'Learning Korean is certainly, hard.'

생활비가 비싸서, 도서에 살기가 골난어요. 'Living cost is high, and living in the city is not easy.'
5. (차음) 토타 'to drive (a car)' is much more colloquial than (차음) 운전하다.

11. The verb 지키다, which is a transitive verb, has several meanings depending on what nominal is preceded as its object.

- 시간을 지키다. 'to be punctual'
- 학교를 지키다. 'to keep an appointment'
- 규칙을 지키다. 'to obey the regulation'
- 법을 지키다. 'to obey the law'
- 나라를 지키다. 'to (defend) the country' (guard)
  (protect)

12. 최고 'maximum', 'at most', occurs either as a noun or an adverb. The opposite of 최고 is 최소 'minimum', 'at least'. 최고 and 최소 are used only as adverals.

14. 바다 'bottom' is a noun phrase in which 바다 'bottom' and 바다 ('bottom') both may also be used as free nouns. 바다 occurs in certain noun phrases:
- 바다 'sole (of a foot)', 손 바다 'palm', 바다 'room floor', 바다 'wooden floor', 바다 'ground'.

13. 멜어 지하 is a verb phrase which occurs always as an intransitive expression, and has different meanings depending on what nominal precedes it as its subject. Study the following sentences:

- 개소가 멜어 걸렸습니다. 'Gas ran out.'
- (상처에) 물러이 멜어 걸렸습니다. 'Things are out of stock (in the store).'
- 옷이 멜어 걸렸습니다. 'Clothes are worn out.'
- (저림) 돈이 멜어 걸렸습니다. 'I'm broke.' ('Money ran out for me.')
- 비행기가 멜어 걸렸습니다. 'The airplane crashed.'
- 빗 물이 멜어 걸렸습니다. 'Rain drops fell down.'
The price of the house has fallen.

I failed in the exam.

GRAMMAR NOTES

1. 

The pattern '-/을 쓰 알다' literally means 'knows how to...'. The same construction occurs sometimes as a substitute of '-/을 수 있다' 'can do...' whenever it can be interchangeable in actual meaning. The negative expression 'does not know how to do...' is '-/을 쓰 보다.'

Do you know how to drive?
Can you drive a car?

I can read Hankil but I don't know how to read Chinese characters.

2. 

'certainly is / does!', 'is / does, indeed!'

The pattern '-고 말고! occurs always as a kind of emphatic sentence final form when the speaker agrees completely with the addressee's statement or question.

A: 자동차를 운전할 줄 알지요?
You know how to drive, don't you?

B: 네, 말고! 난 자주 운전하는 맘.
Of course, I do. I drive every day.

A: 한국어 문법이 어려워요?
Is Korean grammar difficult?

B: 그려요! 어렵고 말고!
That's right. It certainly is (difficult).

Note that in the construction '-고 말고! 말- is a verb which previously occurred in the construction '-지 말다, 'not to do...' (Unit 11).

Please don't go,

Let's not go.
KOREAN BASIC COURSE

UNIT 29

Let's not go (to a child).

However, an action verb in -고 (followed by no pause) + 말야 occurs to mean 'to do something at all cost', 'to do something at last', 'to end up doing something'. In the -고 말야-construction, tenses and/or levels of speech are generated in 말야. Examples:

(a) -고 말야 'will do... at all cost'

나는 한국 말을 배우고 말야. 'I'll learn (or master) Korean by all means (or at all cost).'

하고 결혼하고 말야. 'I'll marry Park Youngja at all cost.'

(b) -고 말써 'finally did...', 'ended up doing...'

나는 돈이 없어서 대학을 그만두고 말써. 'I finally quit college because I didn't have money.'

그 차를 팔고 말써. 'Finally I sold that car.'

다른 일자리를 구하지 못해서 지금 회사에 들어 요고 말써 요. 'I couldn't find other jobs, so I ended up joining the present company.'

The ending -(으)며 is added to a verb stem or stem + honorific and/or tense suffixes. The -(으)며 form which may be followed by a pause occurs before another inflected expression and is used to state the action or description of the verb in the -(으)며 form first. Compare the -(으)며 form with the -(으) form for its meaning (Unit 9, Grammar Notes 1-e), both of which is often translated as '... and'.

'You cannot exceed 40 MPH on ordinary roads, and (or but) only on super highways you can drive up to 55 MPH.'

'Korean is difficult and Chinese is easy.'
The 9 o'clock express has left and there is a local which leaves at 11.'

Note, however, that the - formas form may be in any tense regardless of the tense of the following inflected expression even when the subject or topic of the whole sentence is the same, while for the - formas form tenses are generated only in the final clause when the subject or topic in the same sentence is the same.
DRILLS

1. Transformation-Response Drill 1 (based on Grammar Note 1)

선생: 나는 자동차를 운전할 수 있어요.

위생: 나는 또 자동차를 운전할 줄 알닙니다.

1. 나는 한국말을 할 수 있어요.
나도 한국말을 할 줄 알닙니다.

2. 나는 음식을 먹을 수 있어요.
나도 음식을 먹을 줄 알닙니다.

3. 나는 편지를 쓸 수 있어요.
나도 편지를 쓸 줄 알닙니다.

4. 나는 화물 자동차를 운전할 수 있어요.
나도 화물 자동차를 운전할 줄 알닙니다.

5. 나는 배운 것을 생각에 적용할 수 있어요.
나도 배운 것을 생각에 적용할 줄 알닙니다.

6. 나는 교통 법을 지킬 수 있어요.
나도 교통 법을 지킬 줄 알닙니다.

7. 나는 한국말을 통역할 수 있어요.
나도 한국말을 통역할 줄 알닙니다.

8. 나는 음식을 만들 수 있어요.
나도 음식을 만들 줄 알닙니다.

9. 나는 연합이 바람을 날을 수 있어요.
나도 연합이 바람을 날을 줄 알닙니다.

10. 나는 피아노를 칠 수 있어요.
나도 피아노를 칠 줄 알닙니다.

I can drive a car.
I too know how to drive a car. OR I too can drive a car.
I can speak Korean.
I too know how to speak Korean.
I can repair the engine.
I too know how to repair the engine.
I can write Chinese characters.
I too know how to write Chinese characters.
I can drive a truck.
I too know how to drive a truck.
I can apply to life what I've learned.
I too know how to apply to life what I've learned.
I can obey the traffic laws.
I too know how to obey the traffic laws.
I can translate Korean.
I too know how to translate Korean.
I can cook. ('I can make food.') I too know how to cook.
I can put air in the tire.
I too know how to put air in the tire.
I can play the piano.
I too know how to play the piano.
UNIT 29  KOREAN BASIC COURSE

2. Response Drill (based on Grammar Note 1)

Can you drive a car? or Do you know how to drive a car?
Yes, I know how to drive.
No, I don't know how to drive.

Do you know how to repair [a car]?
Yes, I know how to repair [a car].
No, I don't know how to repair a car.

Can you speak foreign languages?
Yes, I can.
No, I cannot.

Do you know how to type?
Yes, I know how to type.
No, I don't know how to type.

Can you draw (or paint) pictures?
Yes, I know how to draw.
No, I don't know how to draw.

Can you write Chinese characters?
Yes, I can (write).
No, I don't know how to write [them].

Do you know how to make clothes?
Yes, I know how to make [them].
No, I don't know how to make [them].

Do you know how to use chopsticks?
Yes, I know how to use [them].
No, I don't know how to use [them].
3. Response Drill (based on Grammar Note 2)

Do you know how to drive a car?
I sure do. ('Yes, I certainly know.')

Are your parents still living?
They certainly are.

Shouldn't you exceed the speed limit?
Of course you should not.

Is it difficult to get a driver's license in Korea?
Yes, it's sure difficult.

Is Korean needed if you are going to work in Korea?
Yes, it is certainly needed.

Do the Korean drivers know how to repair autos?
They sure do.

Will it be dangerous if you don't stop where it says 'STOP'?
Of course it will be dangerous.

Will there be no problems if I work well?
Of course there will be no problems.

Are there many gas stations in Seoul?
Yes, there certainly are.

Does he have a child?
of course he does.
4. Response-Transformation Drill (based on Grammar Note 2)

선택: 자동차 운전을 배우겠습니까?
와생: 예, 배우고 말겠습니다.

1. 왜가 되겠습니까?
   예, 왜가 되고 말겠습니다.

2. 운전 면허증을 받겠습니까?
   예, 받고 말겠습니다.

3. 그 자동차를 사겠습니까?
   예, 사고 말겠습니다.

4. 빠 구박사들이 열심히 학습합니까?
   예, 열심히 학습하고 말겠습니다.

5. 좋은 대타에 들어 가겠습니까?
   예, 좋은 대타에 들어 가고 말겠습니다.

6. 페스 급과 같은 학생합니까?
   예, 같은 학생과 말겠습니다.

Are you going to learn driving?
Yes, I will learn it by all means.

Are you going to be a scholar?
Yes, I will become a scholar by all means.

Are you going to get a driver's license?
Yes, I will get one no matter what.

Will you buy that car?
Yes, I will buy that car by all means.

Will you travel to Europe without fail?
Yes, I will travel to Europe no matter what.

Will you enter a good college?
Yes, I will enter a good college by all means.

Will you marry Miss Kim?
Yes, I will marry her by all means.

5. Response-Transformation Drill (based on Grammar Note 2)

선택: 자동차 운전을 배웠습니까?
와생: 예, 배웠고 말았습니다.

1. 그 일을 그만두겠습니까?
   예, 그만두고 말았습니다.

2. 벌써 말이 막아가 사고를 넣겠습니까?
   예, 사고를 넣고 말았습니다.

Did you learn driving?
Yes, I've learned it at last.

Have you quit that job?
Yes, I've finally quit it.

Did you cause an accident while driving fast?
Yes, I ended up causing an accident.
KOREAN BASIC COURSE

UNIT 29

Have you sold the used car?
Yes, I've finally sold the used car.

Has he passed away?
Yes, he has passed away at last.

Have you finished your homework?
Yes, I've finished it at last.

Has the couple divorced?
Yes, they have finally gotten divorced.

Have you missed a good chance?
Yes, I've ended up missing a good chance.

6. Substitution Drill

1. 저는 운전 면허증을 빼어 두었어요.
   I have received a driver's permit.

2. 저는 운전 면허증을 빼어 두었어요.
   I have received a driver's license.

3. 저는 낚시질 면허증을 빼어 두었어요.
   I have received a fishing license.

4. 저는 사냥 면허증을 빼어 두었어요.
   I have received a hunting license.

5. 저는 의사 면허증을 빼어 두었어요.
   I have received a license to practise medicine.

6. 저는 이발사 면허증을 빼어 두었어요.
   I have received a barber's license.

7. 저는 미용사 면허증을 빼어 두었어요.
   I have received a beautician's license.

8. 저는 교사 자격증을 빼어 두었어요.
   I have received a teaching certificate.

9. 저는 조종사 면허증을 빼어 두었어요.
   I have received a pilot's license.
7. Substitution Drill

1. 볼트 차를 운전할 기회가 없습니다. I don't have many opportunities to drive a car.
2. 볼트 친구를 만날 기회가 없습니다. I don't have many opportunities to meet friends.
3. 볼트 한국 말을 배우기 위한 기회가 없습니다. I don't have many opportunities to use Korean.
4. 볼트 아저씨를 방문할 기회가 없습니다. I don't have many opportunities to visit my uncle.
5. 볼트 편지 쓰기 기회가 없습니다. I don't have many opportunities to write letters.
6. 볼트 기차 타기 기회가 없습니다. I don't have many opportunities to ride trains.
7. 볼트 출을 쓰기 기회가 없습니다. I don't have many chances to dance.
8. 볼트 한식을 먹기 기회가 없습니다. I don't have many opportunities to eat Korean food.
9. 볼트 여행을 여행하기 기회가 없습니다. I don't have many opportunities to travel abroad.
10. 볼트 차를 타기 기회가 없습니다. I don't have many opportunities to wash (or polish) my car.

8. Response-Transformation Drill

선생: 자주 차를 운전합니까? Do you often drive (a car)?
학생: 아니요, 볼트 차를 운전할 기회가 없어요. No, I don't have many chances to drive.

1. 자주 한식을 먹습니까? Do you often eat Korean food?
   아니요, 볼트 한식을 먹을 기회가 없어요. No, I don't have many chances to eat Korean food.

2. 자주 봄날을 연습합니까? Do you often practise French?
   아니오, 볼트 봄날을 연습할 기회가 없어요. No, I don’t have many chances to practise French.
3. 자주 친구를 만남니까?
아니오, 별로 친구를 만날 기회가 없어요.
Do you often meet your friends?
No, I don't have many opportunities to meet my friends.

4. 자주 외국을 여행합니까?
아니오, 별로 외국을 여행할 기회가 없어요.
Do you make frequent trips to foreign countries?
No, I don't have many chances to travel to foreign countries.

5. 자주 자동차를 타습니까?
아니오, 별로 자동차를 타기를 원하지 않아요.
Do you often polish your car?
No, there're not many chances to polish my car.

6. 자주 동산합니까?
아니오, 별로 동산할 기회가 없어요.
Do you often climb mountains?
No, I don't have many opportunities to climb mountains.

7. 자주 친구들을 초대합니까?
아니오, 별로 친구들을 초대할 기회가 없어요.
Do you often invite friends?
No, I don't have many opportunities to invite friends.

8. 자주 집안과 집도록 만남니까?
아니오, 별로 집안과 집도록 만날 기회가 없어요.
Do you often see your wife's parents?
No, I don't have many opportunities to see my parents-in-law.

9. 자주 한국 경제 문제에 대해서 생각합니까?
아니오, 별로 한국 경제 문제에 대해서 생각할 기회가 없어요.
Do you often think about Korean economic problems?
No, I don't have many chances to think about Korean economic problems.

10. 자주 친척들을 방문합니까?
아니오, 별로 친척들을 방문할 기회가 없어요.
Do you often visit your relatives?
No, I don't have many opportunities to visit my relatives.

9. Substitution Drill

1. 자물 온전하게(가) 고통받습니다.
It's hard to drive a car.

2. 자물 몸기(가) 고통받습니다.
It's hard to drive a car.

3. 알아들기(가) 고통받습니다.
It's hard to understand (by ear).
4. 설명하기(가) 곤란합니다.
   It's hard to explain.

5. 이해하기(가) 곤란합니다.
   It's hard to understand.

6. 밤에 길을 찾기(가) 곤란합니다.
   It's hard to find the way at night.

7. 길 선생에게 부탁하기(가) 곤란합니다.
   It's difficult to ask a favor of Mr. Kim.

8. 외국에서 살기(가) 곤란합니다.
   It's hard to live in foreign countries.

9. 길 선생과 일하기(가) 곤란합니다.
   It's hard to work with Mr. Kim.

10. 이가 아서 밥 먹기(가) 곤란합니다.
    It's hard to eat meals because my teeth ache.

10. Substitution Drill

1. 신호를 잘 지키십시오.
   Let's obey the signals.

2. 교통 신호를 잘 지키십시오.
   Let's obey the traffic signals.

3. 왕복을 잘 지키십시오.
   Let's keep the appointments (without fail).

4. 규정을 잘 지키십시오.
   Let's obey the rules.

5. 법을 잘 지키십시오.
   Let's obey the law.

6. 시간을 잘 지키십시오.
   Let's be punctual.

7. 의무를 잘 지키십시오.
   Let's be faithful to duty.

8. 집을 잘 지키십시오.
   Let's look after the house well.
11. Substitution Drill

1. 속도 제한을 넘지 않으면 문제가 없습니다.
   There's no problem if you do not exceed the speed limits.

2. 교통 신호를 지키면 문제가 없습니다.
   There's no problem if you obey the traffic signals.

3. 토끼를 잡지 않으면 문제가 없습니다.
   There's no problem if you do not exceed the speed limits.

4. 영어를 잘 하면 문제가 없습니다.
   There's no problem if you speak English well.

5. 한국말을 잘하면 편리한 문제 없습니다.
   There'll be no problem if you study Korean for ten months.

6. 빵 선생에게 부탁하면 문제가 없습니다.
   There's no problem if you ask Mr. Kim for a favor.

7. 공부를 잘하면 시험에 문제 없습니다.
   The test will not be a problem if you study well.

8. 운전 면허증이 있으면 문제 없습니다.
   There will be no problem if you have a driver's license.

9. 지급과 주소를 알면 문제 없습니다.
   There'll be no problem if you know (his) name and address.

10. 돈이 많으면 문제가 없습니다.
    There'll be no problem if I have $10,000.

11. 시속 60마일을 초과하지 않으면 문제가 없습니다.
    There'll be no problem if you do not exceed 60 MPH.

12. 차에 빈발수관 밖에 지지 않으면 문제 없습니다.
    There'll be no problem unless gasoline tank is empty.

13. 속도감 조절하기 불편 문제가 없습니다.
    There'll be no problem if you pay attention to the speed limit.
12. Combination Drill (based on Grammar Note 3)

mr. park speaks english well. mr. kim speaks french well.

the speed limit is 25 mph downtown.

it is 55 mph on highways.

my younger brother was born in north korea. i was born in seoul.

the speed limit downtown is 25 mph and it is 55 mph on highways.

my younger brother was born in north korea and i was born in seoul.

my younger brother was born in north korea.

i was born in seoul.

my younger brother was born in north korea and i was born in seoul.

my younger brother was born in north korea.

i was born in seoul.

my younger brother was born in north korea and i was born in seoul.

my younger brother was born in north korea.

i was born in seoul.

my younger brother was born in north korea and i was born in seoul.

my younger brother was born in north korea.

i was born in seoul.

my younger brother was born in north korea and i was born in seoul.

my younger brother was born in north korea.

i was born in seoul.

my younger brother was born in north korea and i was born in seoul.

my younger brother was born in north korea.

i was born in seoul.

my younger brother was born in north korea and i was born in seoul.

my younger brother was born in north korea.

i was born in seoul.

my younger brother was born in north korea and i was born in seoul.

my younger brother was born in north korea.

i was born in seoul.

my younger brother was born in north korea and i was born in seoul.

my younger brother was born in north korea.

i was born in seoul.

my younger brother was born in north korea and i was born in seoul.

my younger brother was born in north korea.

i was born in seoul.

my younger brother was born in north korea and i was born in seoul.

my younger brother was born in north korea.

i was born in seoul.

my younger brother was born in north korea and i was born in seoul.

my younger brother was born in north korea.

i was born in seoul.

my younger brother was born in north korea and i was born in seoul.

my younger brother was born in north korea.

i was born in seoul.

my younger brother was born in north korea and i was born in seoul.

my younger brother was born in north korea.

i was born in seoul.

my younger brother was born in north korea and i was born in seoul.

my younger brother was born in north korea.

i was born in seoul.

my younger brother was born in north korea and i was born in seoul.

my younger brother was born in north korea.

i was born in seoul.

my younger brother was born in north korea and i was born in seoul.

my younger brother was born in north korea.

i was born in seoul.

my younger brother was born in north korea and i was born in seoul.

my younger brother was born in north korea.

i was born in seoul.

my younger brother was born in north korea and i was born in seoul.

my younger brother was born in north korea.

i was born in seoul.

my younger brother was born in north korea and i was born in seoul.

my younger brother was born in north korea.

i was born in seoul.

my younger brother was born in north korea and i was born in seoul.

my younger brother was born in north korea.

i was born in seoul.

my younger brother was born in north korea and i was born in seoul.

my younger brother was born in north korea.

i was born in seoul.

my younger brother was born in north korea and i was born in seoul.

my younger brother was born in north korea.

i was born in seoul.

my younger brother was born in north korea and i was born in seoul.

my younger brother was born in north korea.

i was born in seoul.

my younger brother was born in north korea and i was born in seoul.

my younger brother was born in north korea.

i was born in seoul.

my younger brother was born in north korea and i was born in seoul.

my younger brother was born in north korea.

i was born in seoul.

my younger brother was born in north korea and i was born in seoul.

my younger brother was born in north korea.

i was born in seoul.

my younger brother was born in north korea and i was born in seoul.

my younger brother was born in north korea.

i was born in seoul.

my younger brother was born in north korea and i was born in seoul.

my younger brother was born in north korea.

i was born in seoul.

my younger brother was born in north korea and i was born in seoul.

my younger brother was born in north korea.

i was born in seoul.

my younger brother was born in north korea and i was born in seoul.

my younger brother was born in north korea.

i was born in seoul.

my younger brother was born in north korea and i was born in seoul.

my younger brother was born in north korea.

i was born in seoul.

my younger brother was born in north korea and i was born in seoul.

my younger brother was born in north korea.

i was born in seoul.

my younger brother was born in north korea and i was born in seoul.

my younger brother was born in north korea.

i was born in seoul.

my younger brother was born in north korea and i was born in seoul.

my younger brother was born in north korea.

i was born in seoul.

my younger brother was born in north korea and i was born in seoul.

my younger brother was born in north korea.

i was born in seoul.

my younger brother was born in north korea and i was born in seoul.

my younger brother was born in north korea.

i was born in seoul.

my younger brother was born in north korea and i was born in seoul.

my younger brother was born in north korea.

i was born in seoul.

my younger brother was born in north korea and i was born in seoul.

my younger brother was born in north korea.

i was born in seoul.

my younger brother was born in north korea and i was born in seoul.

my younger brother was born in north korea.

i was born in seoul.

my younger brother was born in north korea and i was born in seoul.

my younger brother was born in north korea.

i was born in seoul.

my younger brother was born in north korea and i was born in seoul.

my younger brother was born in north korea.

i was born in seoul.

my younger brother was born in north korea and i was born in seoul.

my younger brother was born in north korea.

i was born in seoul.

my younger brother was born in north korea and i was born in seoul.

my younger brother was born in north korea.

i was born in seoul.

my younger brother was born in north korea and i was born in seoul.

my younger brother was born in north korea.

i was born in seoul.
13. Substitution Drill

1. 자에 최밥유가 거의 다 떨어졌습니다.  The car is almost out of gas. ('Gas is almost gone in the car.')
2. 우리 집에 음식이 거의 다 떨어졌습니다. We are almost out of food at our home.
3. 모주머니에 돈이 거의 다 떨어졌습니다. I am almost broke.
4. 채바에 쌍이 거의 다 떨어졌습니다. The book store is almost out of books.
5. 병원에 병이 거의 다 떨어졌습니다. ('Water in the water-pail is almost gone.')
6. 염니에 기름이 거의 다 떨어졌습니다. The engine is almost out of oil.
7. 펄브에 개소가 거의 다 떨어졌습니다. The gas tank is almost empty.
8. 부엌에 간장이 거의 다 떨어졌습니다. The soy sauce in the kitchen is almost gone.
9. 정열에 물건이 거의 다 떨어졌습니다. The store is almost out of stock.
10. 풍악서비스상품이 거의 다 떨어졌습니다. The department store is almost out of merchandise.

14. Substitution Drill

1. 최밥유 좀 넘고 갑시다. Let's get some gas before we go.
2. 커피 한잔 마시고 갑시다. Let's have a cup of coffee before we go.
3. 전화 좀 걸고 갑시다. Let's make a telephone-call before we go.
4. 길 좀 물러보고 갑시다. Let's ask the way before we go.
UNIT 2
KOREAN BASIC COURSE

5. 시가표 좀 잡어 보고 감시다.
   Let's find out what the schedule is before we go.

6. 급 선생 좀 만나 보고 감시다.
   Let's look Mr. Kim up before we go.

7. 여기에서 좀 쉬고 감시다.
   Let's rest a little here before we go.

8. 자동차 좀 고치고 감시다.
   Let's fix the car before we go.

9. 손을 좀 씻고 감시다.
   Let's wash our hands before we go.

10. 구두를 좀 닦고 감시다.
    Let's polish (our) shoes before we go.
    or Let's get our shoes shined before we go.

15. Response-Transformation Drill

선생: 시속 몇 마일을 탈릴 수 있습니까?
   /30 마일/
   학생: 최고 30 마일까지 탈릴 수 있습니다.

1. 지하철 몇 시가 갑니다? /일곱시가/  최고 일곱시까지 갑니다.

2. 공무원은 매년 몇 화요일에 변직합니다? /일요일/  매년 일요일까지 변직합니다.

3. 미국 공무원은 늦게 일을 일이나 탈릴 수 있습니까? /28,000불/  최고 28,000불까지 탈릴 수 있습니다.

4. 한 버스에 몇 명이 탈 수 있습니까? /60 명/  최고 60 명까지 탈 수 있습니다.

How many miles an hour can you go? [30 miles]
You can go up to 30 MPH at most.

How many hours a day do you study? [7 hours]
I study up to 7 hours at most.

How many years does a civil servant usually serve in the government? [60 years of age]
Usually he serves until the age of 60.

How much does a U.S. Government employee get paid? [$28,000]
One gets paid up to $28,000 at most.

How many people can be loaded in one bus? [60 people]
A maximum of 60 people can ride in one bus.
5. 얼마나 한국에 있을 수 있습니까?
/오년/
    최고 오년까지 한국에 있을 수 있습니다.

6. 위십동 어려움에 몇도까지 올라 감니까?
/105도/
    최고 105도까지 올라 감닙니다.

7. 위십동 거움에 몇도까지 내립 감니까?
/を作って 10도/
    최고 10도까지 내립 감닙니다.

8. 선생님 일본에 화물 차림 빨을 수 있습니까?
    있습니까? /두주일/
    최고 두주일까지 빨을 수 있습니다.

9. 야후에 메시지를 외한 사람니까?
    /더서란/
    최고 더서란까지 마십니다.

10. 개수 한 걸로 또는 되어미나 갈 수 있습니까?
    있습니까? /17마일/
    최고 17마일까지 갈 수 있습니다.

16. Transformation Drill

선키: 숏트를 넘으면 안 됩니까?
학생: 숏트를 넘지 않으면 됩니까?

1. 시속 65마일도 넘으면 안 됩니까?
    시속 65마일도 넘지 않으면 됩니까?

2. 수업중에 잠을 자면 안 됩니까?
    수업중에 자지 않으면 됩니까?
3. Shouldn't I be late for school?

4. Is everything all right provided I am not late for school?

5. Shouldn't I drive fast in commercial and residential areas?

6. Is everything all right if I don't drive fast in commercial and residential areas?

7. Is it wrong to violate traffic laws?

8. Is it all right as long as I don't violate traffic laws?

9. Shouldn't I enter where it says 'One Way'?

10. Is everything O.K. as long as I don't enter where it says 'One Way'?

11. Shouldn't I go in where it says 'No Trespassing'?

12. Is everything O.K. as long as I don't go in where it says 'No Trespassing'?

13. Shouldn't I smoke in the classroom?

14. Is everything fine as long as I don't smoke in the classroom?

15. Mustn't I drive after drinking liquor?

16. Is everything O.K. as long as I don't drive after drinking?

17. Shouldn't I drive without a driver's license?

18. Is everything O.K. as long as I don't drive without a driver's license?

19. Did you exceed the speed limit?

20. Yes, I exceeded the speed limit.
1. Are you over thirty years old?
   Yes, I've passed thirty.

2. Did the luggage exceed 20 lbs?
   Yes, the luggage exceeded 20 pounds.

3. Did your weight go over 150 pounds?
   Yes, my weight went over 150 pounds.

4. Are you late for your appointment?
   Yes, it's past the time for my appointment.

5. Did you exceed 60 MPH?
   Yes, I exceeded 60 MPH.

6. Did the budget go over the plan?
   Yes, the budget exceeded the plan.

7. Is it past time to go to school?
   Yes, it's past the time to go to school.

8. Was the electric bill more than 50 dollars?
   Yes, the electric bill exceeded 50 dollars.
Supplementary Dialogue for Comprehension

주손: 한국에서 운전 면허 받기가 어렵습니까?

김: 예, 대단히 어렵습니다. 한국에서 운전 면허를 받으려면 자동차 끝처럼 조금 알아야 하기 때문입니다.

주손: 자동차 운전하는 것과 자동차 조치하는 것이 무슨 관계가 있습니까?

김: 미국같이 자동차 조치는 메가 많으면 편하십시오. 그러나 한국에는 자동차 조치는 메가 많지 않기 때문에 겨울에서 자가 교통이 나쁜 쪽입니다. 그래서 운전이 자동차를 끝들 줄 알아야 합니다.

주손: 그래서 한국은 여자 운전이 받기는 어렵군요.

김: 예, 그래서 한국에는 여자 운전이 거의 없어요.

Narrative for Comprehension and Reading

한국에서는 미국과 같은 고속 도로는 많지 않지만 서울 부근에는 도도가 다 그리 나쁘지 않습니다. 거리에 속도 표시와 교통 신호 등이 잘 되어 있기 때문에 운전하기 불편하지 않습니다. 다만 한국에서는 속도에 마인을 쓰지 않고 킬로미터(Km)를 쓰기 때문에 미국 사람들에게 좀 불편합니다. 속도 제한은 시내에서는 시속 30킬로미터이고 시외 도로에서는 70킬로미터입니다.
EXERCISES

A. Ask your instructor:
1. if he can drive.
2. if he knows how to repair automobiles.
3. if he has many chances to practise English.
4. if one may drive 65 MPH on a regular highway.
5. if he can play the piano.
6. if he knows how to use chopsticks.
7. if it is difficult to get a driver's license.
8. if there will be no problems if you work well.
9. if it is dangerous to walk on the highway.
10. if he is almost broke.
11. if the gas tank is almost empty.
12. if the department store is out of merchandise.
13. if the airplane crashed.
14. if his clothes are worn out.
15. if he has to be careful on the cross road.
16. if all the taxi drivers obey the traffic regulations well.
17. if he is going to keep the appointment with the reporter.
18. if he will master Korean in the end.
19. if he finally sold the car.
20. if he caused an accident while driving fast.

B. Your instructor will take or invite you to a typical Korean style house and will give you a detailed explanation about the structure of the house telling you the names of each section, furniture and furnishing in the house. If the circumstances do not permit, he will draw or show you such a Korean house, explaining everything as above.

C. As your turn, do exactly the same thing which your instructor has done in B about a typical American suburban house.
UNIT 30. At the Service Station

BASIC DIALOGUE

'Good afternoon. Would you like some gas?'

('Yes, please.')

How much would you like? ('How much shall I put in for you?')

Fill it up, please. And check the battery and oil, too.

radiator
motor
can
5. The battery and radiator are all right, but you need a can of motor oil.

That's strange. It hasn't been long since I put oil in.

6. Oil seems to be leaking; have you noticed it?

7. I had it replaced last week because they said it was leaking.

8. If you leave it long, you should have it checked.

---

The battery and radiator are all right, but you need a can of motor oil.

That's strange. It hasn't been long since I put oil in.

Oil seems to be leaking; have you noticed it?

I had it replaced last week because they said it was leaking.
9. 아야, 다시 급사해야 할 거 감습니다. 
오래 두려 엔진에 좋지 않음을 걱정입니다. 
I think you should check it again. 
If you leave it alone for very long (as it is), it might hurt the engine.

9. [한국어]
I don't have time today. Could you check it if I bring the car tomorrow morning?

9. [한국어]
I don't have time today. Could you check it if I bring the car tomorrow morning?

10. 오늘은 시간이 없으니, 내일 약속에 차를 가져오면 좀 주시겠어요?
I think you should check it again.
If you leave it alone for very long (as it is), it might hurt the engine.

10. 오늘은 시간이 없으니, 내일 약속에 차를 가져오면 좀 주시겠어요?
I don't have time today. Could you check it if I bring the car tomorrow morning?

10. 오늘은 시간이 없으니, 내일 약속에 차를 가져오면 좀 주시겠어요?
I don't have time today. Could you check it if I bring the car tomorrow morning?

11. 그렇게 하시지요. 아침 일찍 차를 가져오고 오시면, 고쳐 드릴게요.
Sure. (You can do that.) If you (bring and) leave the car here early in the morning, I'll fix it for you.

11. 그렇게 하시지요. 아침 일찍 차를 가져오고 오시면, 고쳐 드릴게요.
Sure. (You can do that.) If you (bring and) leave the car here early in the morning, I'll fix it for you.

11. 그렇게 하시지요. 아침 일찍 차를 가져오고 오시면, 고쳐 드릴게요.
Sure. (You can do that.) If you (bring and) leave the car here early in the morning, I'll fix it for you.

12. 그림, 그렇게 좀 부탁합니다.
(Then,) I would appreciate that.

12. 그림, 그렇게 좀 부탁합니다.
(Then,) I would appreciate that.

12. 그림, 그렇게 좀 부탁합니다.
(Then,) I would appreciate that.

13. 그리고, 타이어에 구멍이 나서 엽본을 다 해버리고 말았습니다.
And I had a flat tire, so I used up [my] spare.

13. 그리고, 타이어에 구멍이 나서 엽본을 다 해버리고 말았습니다.
And I had a flat tire, so I used up [my] spare.

13. 그리고, 타이어에 구멍이 나서 엽본을 다 해버리고 말았습니다.
And I had a flat tire, so I used up [my] spare.
14. I don't have any spare now, so I have to replace it tomorrow, too.

주변 사항

15. I understand, sir.

[it]'s durable used item
(brand) new item

16. We have nice durable used tires as well as new ones; we can give you one at a reasonable price.
NOTES ON THE BASIC DIALOGUE

(Numbers correspond to the sentence numbers.)

1. 니요시럽니다가? is the contraction of 니요시립고 합십니까가? 'Are you going to put in?'.

2. 갈아 냈다 'to change' is a transitive verb phrase which is used with only certain nouns as its objects. 오일, 옷, 옷장, 옷바지, 양말 are such common nouns. 갈아 냈다 as an independent verb is a transitive verb and means 'to change'. Followed by certain auxilliary verbs 갈아 냈다 in infinitive form makes up verb phrases. The following are some of the common expressions:

   - 갈아 기다 'to change (ring, tire, bolt, etc.)'
   - 갈아 입다 'to change (clothes)'
   - 갈아 신다 'to change (shoes, socks, stockings, etc.)'
   - 갈아 타다 'to change (bus, airplane, etc.)'
   - 갈아 쓰다 'to change (hat, cap, etc.)'

GRAMMAR NOTES

1. Infinitive + 나+ 것이다

나+ 것이다 as an independent verb means 'to throw away', 'to discard', 'to abandon'. As an auxilliary verb preceded by the infinitive form of an action verb, it denotes finality, termination or completion of the action for the preceding principal verb. Since an infinitive + 나+ 것이다 is a verb phrase, every such phrase should be memorized as a separate entity in meaning.

   - 여분은 다 사서 버릴으십시오. ('I have used up all the spares.')
   - 그 여자는 가 버렸으십시오. 'She's gone away.'
You must feel wonderful, now that you've finished up all the work.

[We] finished up the left-over ('remaining food') in the morning.

'I studied some Korean, but I have completely forgotten it (all) now.'

Note that the pattern, an infinitive + 빼고 떨다, may occur emphatically as an extended expression for an Infinitive + 빼고 + 고 떨다.

'I have completely forgotten Japanese.'

So, you quit the company for good after one year?
1. Substitution Drill

1. 그분을 가득 채워 주십시오.  
   Fill it up, please (at the gas station). ('Please fill the tank all the way up for me.')

2. 병을 가득 채워 주십시오.  
   Fill the bottle up, please.

3. 고짜를 가득 채워 주십시오.  
   Fill the cup to the brim, please.

4. 그릇을 가득 채워 주십시오.  
   Fill the bowl up, please.

5. 그릇을 가득 채워 주십시오.  
   Fill the tin can up, please.

6. 바구니를 가득 채워 주십시오.  
   Fill the bucket to the brim, please.

7. 그물이 가득 채워 주십시오.  
   Fill the (woven) basket up, please.

8. 상자들을 가득 채워 주십시오.  
   Fill the box up, please.

9. 상자를 가득 채우십시오.  
   Fill up the box.

2. Substitution Drill

1. 그 사람이 참 이상합니다.  
   He is really strange.

2. 그 문제가 참 이상합니다.  
   That problem is really strange.

3. 그의 성격이 참 이상합니다.  
   His personality is really strange.

4. 그의 태도가 참 이상합니다.  
   His attitude is really strange.
KOREAN BASIC COURSE

UNIT 30

5. 요새 날씨가 참 이상합니다.
   The weather these days is really strange.

6. 긴 선생의 말 소리가 참 이상합니다.
   Mr. Kim's voice is really strange.

7. 이 분장이 참 이상합니다.
   This sentence is really strange.

8. 자동차 모양이 참 이상합니다.
   The shape of the car is really strange.

9. 그 분 병세가 참 이상합니다.
   His illness is really strange.

10. 그 책 내용이 참 이상합니다.
    The content of the book is really strange.

3. Response Drill

선생: 今해스가 참있으니까?

1. 옷장에 옷이 있습니까?
   에, 옷장에 옷이 가득 있습니다.
   Is it filled with gas?
   Yes, it's filled up.

2. 도주머니에 돈이 있습니까?
   에, 도주머니에 돈이 가득 있습니다.
   Is the chest full of clothes?
   Yes, the chest is full of clothes.

3. 방에 사람이 있습니까?
   에, 방에 사람이 가득 있습니다.
   Do you have money in your pocket?
   ('Is there money in the pocket?')
   Yes, I have a pocket full of money.

4. 병에 물을 채웠습니까?
   에, 병에 물을 가득 채웠습니다.
   Are there people in the room?
   Yes, the room is full of people.

5. 벽매기에 물이 있습니까?
   에, 벽매기에 물이 가득 있습니다.
   Did you fill the bottle with water?
   Yes, I have filled up the bottle with water.

   Is there water in the battery?
   Yes, the battery is full up with water.

211
4. Substitution Drill

1. 가방이 새롭다.
2. 오일 필터가 새롭다.
3. 물이 새롭다.
4. 비밀이 새롭다.
5. 밑바닥이 새롭다.
6. 지붕이 새롭다.
7. 바닥이 새롭다.
8. 모피가 새롭다.
9. 구두가 새롭다.
10. 비밀이 새롭다.
11. 비밀이 새롭다.

Oil is leaking.
Oil filter is leaking.
Water is leaking.
The glass bowl leaks.
The bottom is leaking.
The roof (of the house) leaks.
Air is leaking.
The pocket leaks.
[My] shoe leaks.
The secret leaks.
The secret has been leaked.

5. Combination Drill

선생: 밑이 새는 것 같습니까. 주의해(서) 보셨습니까?
학생: 밑이 새는 것 같은데, 주의해(서) 보셨습니까?

The bottom seems to be leaking. Have you noticed it?
The bottom seems to be leaking; have you noticed it?
1. 아야하의 바람이 세는 것이 같습니다. 주의해 보셨습니까?
   The tire seems to be leaking. Have you noticed it?

2. 엔진이 고장(이) 난 것이 같습니다. 검사해 보셨습니까?
   The engine seems to be out of order. Have you checked it?

3. 아이가 급기야 든 것이 같습니다. 의사에게 가 보셨습니까?
   The child seems to have a cold. Have you gone to see the doctor?

4. 휴수예가 구멍이 난 것이 같습니다. 주의해 보셨습니까?
   It seems there's a flat tire. (There seems to be a hole in the tire.) Have you noticed it?

5. 길 선생이 잊었난 것이 같습니다. 이야기 듣셨습니까?
   It seems that Mr. Kim is in the hospital; have you heard about it?

6. 박 선생이 선장을 찾는 것이 같습니다. 만나 보셨습니까?
   Mr. Park seems to be looking for you; have you seen him?

7. 국제 극장에서 좋은 영화를 상영하는 것이 같습니다. 가 보셨습니까?
   It seems they are showing a good movie at the International Theatre. Have you (gone and) seen it?

8. 설이 많은 것이 같습니다. 재 보셨습니까?
   He seems to have a high temperature. Have you measured it?
6. Substitution Drill

1. 엔진을 검사하지 않았습니다. I have not checked (‘inspected’) the engine.

2. 기계를 검사하지 않았습니다. I have not checked the machine.

3. 문제를 검사하지 않았습니다. I have not investigated the problem.

4. 배터리를 검사하지 않았습니다. I have not checked the battery.

5. 이물 검사하지 않았습니다. I have not checked the teeth.

6. 숙제를 검사하지 않았습니다. I have not checked the home work.

7. 모터 오일을 검사하지 않았습니다. I have not checked the motor oil.

8. 가방 속을 검사하지 않았습니다. I have not inspected the inside of the briefcase.

7. Response Drill

선생: 제 차를 좀 바라 주십시오. Please check my car, or Please look after my car for me.

학생: 예, 배터리를 검사합니다. Yes, I'll check it for you. or Yes, I'll look after for you.

1. 배터리와 파이프의 봉을 좀 바라 주십시오. Please check the water in the battery and radiator.

   예, 배터리를 검사합니다. Yes, I'll check them for you.

2. 창문과 아이트림을 좀 바라 주십시오. Would you look after my child just a little while?

   예, 아이트림을 검사합니다. Yes, I'll look after him for you.

3. 제 집을 좀 바라 주십시오. Would you please look after my baggage?

   예, 집을 바라겠습니다. Yes, I'll look after it for you.
4. 줄이나 빈 공간이 좀 바꾸시겠어요.
   예, 바도 틀리지 않습니다.

5. 빈칸에 어기가 담치지 좀 바꾸시겠어요.
   예, 바도 틀리지 않습니다.

6. 어기가 고가로 absorbing지 좀 바꾸시겠어요.
   예, 바도 틀리지 않습니다.

7. 어느 것이 더 좋은 채지 좀 바꾸시겠어요.
   예, 바도 틀리지 않습니다.

8. 어기에 구멍이 있는지 좀 바꾸시겠어요.
   예, 바도 틀리지 않습니다.

Would you please check and see if the filter is all right?
Yes, I'll check it for you.

Would you check what's wrong with the engine?
Yes, I'll check it for you.

Would you check if anything is out of order?
Yes, I'll check it for you.

Would you examine which is more durable?
Yes, I'll examine them for you.

Please check if there's a hole somewhere.
Yes, I'll check it for you.

8. Response-Transformation Drill (based on Grammar Note 1)

선생: 여분을 다 썼었어요?

학생: 예, 다 사서 버렸어요.

1. 아이가 잡을 삽개었어요?
   예, 잡을 삽개 버렸어요.

2. 봉글이 졸어서 질병을 그만 두었어요?
   예, 봉글이 졸어서 질병을 그만 두어 버렸어요.

3. 종교를 법장교를 삽은어요?
   예, 종교를 법장교를 사 버렸어요.

4. 친 자동차를 없앴어요?
   예, 친 자동차를 없애 버렸어요.

5. 자동차에 다친 개가 죽었어요?
   예, 자동차에 다친 개가 죽어 버렸어요.

Have you used all your spares?
Yes, I have used up all my spares.

Has the child swallowed the (chewing) gum?
Yes, he swallowed all the gum.

Did you quit the job because the pay was little?
Yes, I gave up the job because the pay was little.

Did you buy a used refrigerator?
Yes, I finally came around to buying a used refrigerator.

Have you got rid of the old car?
Yes, I've finally got rid of the old car.

Has the dog that was injured by the car died?
Yes, the dog that was injured by the car has finally died.
UNIT 30
KOREAN BASIC COURSE

6. 미스 김이 그 남자와 결혼했습니까?
   엠, 미스 김이 그 남자와 결혼해 버렸어요.

7. 남은 볼고기들을 다 먹었습니까?
   엠, 남은 볼고기가 다 먹어 버렸어요.

8. 선생이 자동차를 고쳤습니까?
   엠, 제가 자동차를 고쳐 버렸어요.

9. 그 둘 자동차를 팔았습니까?
   엠, 그 둘 자동차를 팔아 버렸어요.

10. 냉장에 위발유를 가득 채웠습니까?
    엠, 냉장에 위발유를 가득 채워 버렸어요.

Did Miss Kim marry that man?
Yes, Miss Kim finally ended up marrying that man.

Have you eaten the leftover Pulkoki?
Yes, I've eaten up all the leftover Pulkoki.

Have YOU repaired the automobile?
Yes, I have fixed up the car.

Have you sold the old car?
Yes, I have finally sold the old car.

Have you filled up the tank with gas?
Yes, I have filled up the tank with gas completely.

9. Transformation Drill

선생: 위발유를 넣으시겠습니까?
학생: 위발유를 넣으시겠습니까?

1. 구멍에 한구에 가까우고 하십시오?
   구멍에 한구에 가십시오?

2. 신물을 사시겠습니까?
   신물을 사시겠습니까?

3. 이사할 때 집을 파시겠습니까?
   이사할 때 집을 파십시오?

4. 오늘 자동차를 교체시겠습니까?
   오늘 자동차를 교체시겠습니까?

5. 현재 자동차가 담배를 밖으로 뿌릴까요?
   현재 자동차가 담배를 밖으로 뿌릴까요?

Are you going to put in gas, (sir)?
Are you going to go to Korea in September?
Are you going to buy a brand new one?
Are you going to sell your house when you move?
Are you going to fix your car?
When are you going to get your car inspected?
6. 보자마는 것을 언제 보충하시니까? 
보자마는 것을 언제 보충하시니까?

7. 론토란 기계를 보시니까? 
롯토란 기계를 보시니까?

8. 온전 편히 시험을 시시니까? 
온전 편히 시험을 시시니까?

9. 점심에 음식을 접수습니까? 
점심에 음식을 접수습니까?

10. 구마타 어셈블리 하시니까? 
구마타 어셈블리 하시니까?

10. Response Drill

선생: 가시느냐?
학생: 아니, 가십시오.

1. 한국에 빠르면 기사를 읽으십시오?
   아니, 읽으십시오.

2. 한국 날씨를 계속하십시오?
   아니, 계속 하십시오.

3. 지금 주부 식당이?
   아니, 지금 자십시오.

4. 이따 저녁을 접수십시오?
   아니, 이따 접수십시오.

5. 교통 순정에게 급한 문의 보십시오?
   아니, 교통 순정에게 불어 보십시오.

When are you going to make up the shortage?

Are you going to see durable machines?

Are you going to take a driver's test?

Are you going to eat Korean food for lunch?

Are you going to take a trip to Europe?

Are you going to go, (sir)?

Yes, I'm going to go.

Are you going to read articles about Korea?

Yes, I'm going to read [some].

Are you going to continue Korean language study?

Yes, I'm going to continue.

Are you going to sleep now, sir?

Yes, I'm going to sleep now.

Are you going to have supper later?

Yes, I'm going to eat later.

Are you going to ask directions from the traffic policeman?

Yes, I'm going to ask the traffic policeman.
UNIT 30  KOREAN BASIC COURSE

6. 이것은 저지 사시 exercitation가?
   예, 이것은 저지 사십니다.
   Are you going to buy all sorts of things?
   Yes, I'm going to buy all sorts of things.

7. 뉴-유로 이사하시겠습니까?
   예, 뉴-유로 이사하십시오.
   Are you going to move to New York?
   Yes, I'm going to move to New York.

8. 금행을 타시겠습니까?
   예, 금행을 타십시오.
   Are you going to take an express?
   Yes, I'm going to take an express.

9. 텔프를 치시겠습니까?
   예, 텔프를 치십시오.
   Are you going to play golf?
   Yes, I'm going to play golf.

10. 식물 길에 세우시겠습니까?
    예, 길에 세우십시오.
    Are you going to park the car on the street?
    Yes, I'm going to park it on the street.

11. Response Drill

   선생: 왜 침대를 갈아 냥었어요? /선생가 합니까/
   학생: 침대가 섬박하고 해서 침대를 갈아 냥었습니다.
   Why did you change the filter? [They say it leaks.]
   They said the filter was leaking, so I've changed it.

   1. 왜 술로는 음료를 샀어요? /술로 합니까/
      술로는 음료는 술로 합니까 음료를 샀습니다.
      Why did you buy a used item? [They say it's good.]
      They said that a used item is good, so I bought a used one.

   2. 왜 병원에 갔어요? /아이가 아프다고 합니까/
      아이가 아프다고 해서 병원에 갔습니다.
      Why did you go to the hospital? [The child says he's sick.]
      The child said that he was sick, so I took him to the hospital.

   3. 왜 한국 말을 배우십니까? /필로하다고 합니까/
      한국 말을 배우고 합니까 음료를 배웁니다.
      Why are you studying Korean? [They say it is needed.]
      I'm studying Korean because they say I'll need it.

   4. 왜 비행기를 타요? /비행기타고 합니까/
      비행기가 편리하기이고 해서 비행기를 타요.
      Why are you taking the airplane? [They say it's convenient.]
      They say the airplane is convenient, so I am taking the airplane.

218
5. 왜 어제 중국 식당에 갔어요? /어네가 가자고 합니다.
   왜어제 중국식당에 갔어요. 어네가가자고해서진심입니다.

   그 영화를 보러가서-wrapper

7. 왜 식당에서 살려고 왔어요? /살기 좋은 곳이라고 합니다.
   식당에서 살려가서-good

   우산을 들고 우산을 들고 갈니다.

   점거장에 가서친구가 온다고 합니다.

10. 왜 한국에 가세요? /사람이 가라고 합니다.
    사람들이 가라고 한국에 갔습니다.

12. Combination Drill (based on Grammar Note 3, Unit 25)

선생: 한국말을 배우고 있습니까. 한국에 왔습니다.

어셔: 한국말을 배우다가 한국에 왔습니다.

1. 저녁을 먹고 있었어요. 전화를 받았어요.
   저녁을 먹다가 전화를 받았어요.

2. 여기에서 살고 있었어요. 이사가왔어요.
   여기에서 살다가 이사가왔어요.
3. I was attending school. I quit.
   I stopped going to school.

4. I wore this overcoat. I gave it to my younger brother.
   We were using the furniture. We put it in the warehouse.

5. I was sleeping at night. I got up and drank milk.
   I was sleeping at night, and then I got up and drank some milk.

6. I was on my way to the office. I came back because I was sick.
   On my way to the office I became sick, so I came back.

7. I was repairing my car. I stopped it.
   I stopped in the middle of repairing my car.

8. I was studying at home. I went to the library.
   I was studying at home, and then I went to the library.
4. 염화 구경가마가...
5. 그분은 알타가...
6. 자동차를 쓰타가...
7. 왓고 에 타니타가...
8. 권지는 쓰타가...
9. 납시가 출타가...
10. 박따이 봉타가...
11. 부모님과 살타가...
12. 집에서 놀타가...

14. Response Drill

선생: 제 자동차를 고쳤으니가?
학생: 예, 선생 자동차를 고쳐 놓았습니다.

1. 겨울 옷을 삽품니가?
   예, 겨울 옷을 사 놓았습니다.

2. 전기 타이틀마이거를 빌렸으니가?
   예, 전기 타이틀마이거를 빌려 놓았습니다.

3. 커피를 깜얹 혐음니가?
   예, 커피를 깜썼습니다.

4. 권지를 썼으니가?
   예, 권지를 써 놓았습니다.

5. 바지에야에 동을 쌓혀요니가?
   예, 동을 쌓혀 놓았습니다.

Did you repair my car?
Yes, I have fixed your car (for you).

Did you buy winter clothes?
Yes, I have bought winter clothes (in advance).

Did you borrow an electric typewriter?
Yes, I have borrowed an electric typewriter (for future use).

Did you bring coffee?
Yes, I've brought coffee for you (already).

Did you write a letter?
Yes, I've got the letter written (already).

Have you put water in the radiator?
Yes, I have filled the radiator with water.
UNIT 30  KOREAN BASIC COURSE

6. 그릇을 씻었습니까?
   예, 그릇을 씻어 놓았습니다.

7. 구장 포름 예약했습니까?
   예, 구장 포름 예약해 놓았습니다.

8. 음식을 남겼습니까?
   예, 음식을 남겨 놓았습니다.

9. 밥 섭취가 참나 양속을 했습니까?
   예, 밥 섭취가 변할 양속을 해 놓았습니다.

10. 저녁을 벌써 만들었습니까?
    예, 저녁을 벌써 만들어 놓았습니다.

Did you wash dishes?
Yes, I've got the dishes all washed (and put away).

Have you reserved theatre ticket?
Yes, I've got the theatre tickets reserved.

Did you leave any food?
Yes, I have left some food (in case).

Did you make an appointment to meet Mr. Park?
Yes, I've got an appointment all set to meet Mr. Park.

Have you already made supper?
Yes, I've got supper already made.

Supplementary Dialogue for Comprehension

주주주 사항: 어서 오십시오. 휴박수를 남겨서시겠습니까?

객손: 예. 500원 어지 급식 주세요. 그리고 보카 요일을 날을
    때가 된 것 같은데 좀 바주세요.

주주주 사항: 예. 오일이 부족한데요. 한 김식 남겨어보겠습니다.

객손: 그럼, 제일 좋은 요일이 한 김식 남겨주세요. 그리고
    바이아에 바람이 세는 것 같은데 구멍이 없는지 좀
    바주시겠어요?

주주주 사항: 예. 바드미지를요. 구멍은 안 나는데 다란 바람이 좀
    쌓여요. 제가 바람을 넣어드리지요.

객손: 고맙습니다. 모두 얼마나요?
주유소 사장: 최발유가 500원, 오일이 250원 모두 750원입니다.

주유소 사장: 여기 750원 있어요.

주유소 사장: 고맙습니다. 또 오심시오.

Narrative for Comprehension and Reading

서울에는 미국만큼 주유소가 많지는 않지만 여러 곳에 있슴니다. 미국 주유소는 매개 자동차도 고양이 나쁜 고양이. 그러나 대부분 한국 주유소에서는 친절을 짝지 않고 최발유만 합니다. 자동차가 고양이 나쁜 자동차 고양이는 공중에 가야 합니다. 한국에서는 자동차 많이 너무 비싸기에 때문에 보통 사람들은 자동차를 가질 수 없슴니다. 부자들만 자동차를 사는 것 같습니다. 그러나 자차 많은 사람들 앞으로 한국에도 자동차가 싸저서 누구나 싸게 자동차를 살 수 있게 되기에 밝습니다.
UNIT 30 KOREAN BASIC COURSE

EXERCISES

A. Drive your car to a Korean gas station (if there is no Korean gas station near you, your instructor will play the role of a service station attendant). Ask the attendant:

1. to fill up the tank.
2. to check the battery and oil.
3. if the oil is leaking.
4. if you need to change the oil filter.
5. if he can check it if you bring the car tomorrow morning.
6. if he can check if there is a flat tire.
7. if the engine sounds strange.
8. if he can fix the leak in the radiator.

B. Tell your instructor who plays the service station attendant:

1. it hasn't been long since you put oil in.
2. that you have noticed that the bottom of the car was leaking.
3. that you had a flat tire on the highway yesterday.
4. that you used the spare and you have to replace it.
5. that you have one used tire in the car trunk but it has a hole in it.
6. that you wish to buy a durable brand new tire at a reasonable price if possible.

C. Tell your classmate:

1. that you have to change planes in Tokyo to go to Seoul (or America).
2. that you feel wonderful, now that you've finished up all the work.
3. that you finished up last night's left-overs this morning.
4. that you studied some German but you have completely forgotten it now.
5. that Dr. Chung's personality is really strange.
6. that the bottle is filled up with water.
7. that the important secret has been leaked.
8. that the engine seems to be leaking but you have not noticed it.
9. that you have finally got rid of the old car.
10. that Miss Kim finally ended up marrying an old man.
UNIT 31. Haircut

BASIC DIALOGUE

저숙

머리가 길었습니다.

이발소

이발소

1. 길 선생님, 나의 머리가 길었습니다. 이 부분에

이발소 없을까요?

다음 공포

공중 목욕탕

가이 붓어 있습니까.

2. 이 다음 오른쪽 공중 목욕탕에 있는 건물에 공중

목욕탕과 이발소가 같이 붓어 있습니다.

여거

여거 때에

지금 같은 여거 때에

3. 지금 같은 여거 때에 같이 이발소 친

하고 갈까요?

그 동안

목욕을 할래요.

목욕을 할래요.

저숙

hair has grown

to have a hair cut

barbershop

I wonder if there's a barbershop around here, Mr. Kim. My hair has grown quite a lot.

저숙

next corner

public bath

they are attached together

There are a public bath and a barbershop together in the same building on the next right corner.

저숙

spare time

during the spare time

the spare time like this;

'As the same time as this'

Wouldn't you like to have a haircut in the spare time like this?

저숙

in the meantime; meanwhile

I intend to take a bath

as I intend to take a bath
UNIT 31
KOREAN BASIC COURSE

4. 그림, 선생은 이발하시지요. 나는 그 동안 목욕을 했어요.
Well, you go (ahead) have a haircut; I’ll take a bath in the meantime, then.
in fact; as a matter of fact
I intended to take a bath

As a matter of fact, I wanted to take a bath.

답순

6. 참, 그 이발소에서 머리카락 잘 깔끔하시겠어요?
Oh, did they give you a good haircut at that barbershop? ('Oh, did you see [them] cutting hair well?)

7. 예, 그라리면 깔끔합니다.
Yes, they were doing all right.

(이발소에서)
(at the barbershop)

이발사
turn

[he] cuts hair

차배

(머리카락) 깔끔합니다

8. 자, 선생의 차배입니다. 이리도 남으시지요.
Now, this is your turn, sir. Please sit here.

9. 어떻게 감아 드릴까요?
How would you like to cut your hair?

접순

그대로

앞과 뒤의 머리

10. 앞의 머리는 그대로 두고, 옆과 뒤의 머리만 감아 주십시오.
Leave the front hair as it is, and trim the side and back just a little.

as it is

hair on the side and back
11. 면도는 왼 뒷 양쪽 다 아시지요?

You shave both sides, front and back, don't you?

12. 그림, 코 (입의) 수염 남겨 두고.

Well, please shave both sides leaving the mustache as before.

13. 머리는 안 깨끗이 세우지요? 머리 묶어도

Wouldn't you like to wash your hair?

We charge you the same. ('There's no difference in price.')

14. 시가요 없어. 머리 길은 것은 그린두 깨웁니다.

No thanks. I'll not wash my hair today because I don't have time. (Please do me a good job next time.)

15. 그럼고, 머리 기름은 너무 밀이 비포지 마십시오. And, don't use too much hair tonic on my hair.
Additional Vocabulary and Phrases

A.  

1. 머리를 컷았습니다.  
   [I] had my hair cut.
2. (물건) 가을 케이Ъ었습니다.  
   [I]’ve cut the price.
3. 선필을 깊었습니다.  
   [I]’ve sharpened the pencil.
4. 나무를 깊었습니다.  
   [I]’ve cut wood.
5. 손톱을 깊었습니다.  
   [I]’ve cut my finger nails.
6. 발톱을 깊었습니다.  
   [I]’ve cut my toe nails.
7. 예산을 깊었습니다.  
   [They]’ve cut the budget.
8. 수염을 깊었습니다.  
   [I]’ve cut my beard.

B.  

1. 고기를 절아봤습니다.  
   [I]’ve sliced meat.
2. 나무를 절아봤습니다.  
   [I]’ve cut logs
   trees
3. (나무) 판자철 절아봤습니다.  
   [I]’ve sawed the board.
4. 겨울을 절아봤습니다.  
   [I]’ve cut strings.
5. 종이를 절아봤습니다.  
   [I]’ve cut paper.
6. 가죽을 절아봤습니다.  
   [I]’ve cut leather.
7. 머리로 절아봤습니다.  
   [I]’ve cut my hair.

C.  

1. 신을 켜었습니다.  
   [I]’ve cut the thread.
2. 줄을 깬었습니다.  
   [I]’ve cut the rope.
### KOREAN BASIC COURSE

#### UNIT 31

| 3. 관계를 끊었습니다. | (I've) severed relations. |
| 4. 우정을 끊었습니다. | (I've) cut off friendship. |
| 5. 국교를 끊었습니다. | (They)'ve severed diplomatic relations. |
| 6. 외교 관계를 끊었습니다. | (They)'ve severed diplomatic relations. |

### B. 범다 ~ 빼다

| 1. 나무를 벗습니다. | (I've) chopped down the tree. |
| 2. 풀을 벗습니다. | (I've) cut down the grass. |
| 4. 피부를 뽑 빼었습니다. | (I've) cut my skin slightly. |

### E. 공중

| 1. 공중 목욕탕 | public bath |
| 2. 공중 변소 | public toilet |
| 3. 공중 전화 | public telephone |
| 4. 공중 이발소 | public barbershop (i.e. with unrestricted clientele) |
| 5. 공중 위생 | public sanitation |
| 6. 공중 잠자리 | public order |
| 7. 공중 도서 | public spirit; good citizenship |

### F. 공립

| 1. 공립 학교 | public school |
| 2. 공립 극장 | public theatre (not privately owned) |
| 3. 공립 병원 | public hospital (government owned) |
| 4. 공립 도서관 | public library |
| 
| --- |
| **G. 사립** private; owned by an individual in contrast to 공립 public |
| 1. 사립 학교 | private school |
| 2. 사립 병원 | private hospital |
| 3. 사립 극장 | commercial theatre |
| 4. 사립 도서관 | private lending library |
NOTES ON THE BASIC DIALOGUE

(Numbers correspond to the sentence numbers.)

1. "to grow" is an intransitive action verb which normally occurs in a past tense form to mean '(hair, grass, lawn, etc.) has grown'.

이방송(가) 싸운 길가요? 'I wonder if there isn't a barbershop.' is used to ask the addressee's opinion or knowledge if he knows or thinks there is a barbershop.

2. 'corner' refers to only a street or hallway corner; 'a corner of a room' is called 구석.

모두 'to stick (to)', 'to adhere (to)', is an intransitive action verb. The phrase 모두 있다 occurs when something is attached to something as the state of being.

공중 'public' occurs with only certain nouns and makes up noun phrases (See Additional Vocabulary).

3. 지금 같은 여가 ('spare time like this') is the contraction of 지금과 같은 여가 (See Grammar Notes 2).

이방송 하고 갑시리오? 'Shall we have a haircut before going?' literally means 'Shall we have a haircut and go?'.

5. 실론 is the shortened form of 사실론 'as a matter of fact', 'in fact'.

6. 머리들 잘 절리셨어? 'Did they give you a good haircut?' literally means something like ('Did you see [them] cutting hair well?') (See Grammar Note 1).

8. 이이(로) 'this way', 저기(로) 'that way', 그기(로) 'that way' are adverbials. 차례 'turn' is a noun; it occurs normally after possessive expression: 나의 (or 내) 차례 'my turn', 그의 차례 'his turn', 누구의 차례인가요? 'Whose turn is it?', etc.
11. 양면 양면 'both sides' is a derivational noun prefix which denotes 'both-'.
Some of the common words which are in 양면 are 양면 'both sides (of organizations, negotiating parties)', 양자 'both persons', 양변 'both banks (of a river)'.

12. 나가다 'to leave (something)' is a transitive action verb; 나가 두다 'to leave (something behind)' is also a transitive action verb phrase.

GRAMMAR NOTES

1. - 중심다 and - 중심다?

The sentence final verb endings - 중심다 and - 중심다? (in which - 중심 is added to a vowel verb stem and - 중심 to a consonant stem) occur only as formal polite speech final forms: - 중심다 as statement and - 중심다? as question. A sentence ending in - 중심다 is a statement in which the speaker denotes what he saw or witnessed in the past from a retrospective point of view, and is often translated as 'I saw [him] doing/being something', 'I witnessed [something] was/doing such-and-such'; - 중심다? is translated as 'Did you see [someone] doing something?' or 'Did you see [someone/something] in such-and-such state?'.

2. N1 (좌/좌) 같은 N2 'N2 like N1', ('N2 the same as N1')

N1 같은 N2 is the shortened construction of N1 좌/좌 같은 N2 'N2 which is the same as N1'. The particle 좌/좌 after the N1 may be dropped in normal rapid speech.
The verb ending -고저 and its variant -고자 which is added to an action verb stem occurs in the following ways:

(a) -고저 하다

The construction the -고저 form + 하다 occurs exactly like -익고 하다 (Unit 9) to denote intention for future action by the subject or topic. The tenses and/or speech levels for the whole construction are generated in the verb 하다.

나는 목욕을 하고저 했습니다.  'I intended to take a bath.'

선생님 회고자 하지요?  'Do you intend (or want) to become a diplomat?'

Compare the -고저 하다 with -을 먹어하다 (Unit 26) and -을 가다 하다 (Unit 7), all of which are more or less similar in meaning in terms of the intention of the subject or topic for a future action, except that the pattern -을 먹어하다 and -을 가하다 하다 occur only when the subject or topic is either the speaker or addressee.

(b) -고저 + other than 하다

-고저, which may be followed by a pause before an inflected expression of other than 하다, occurs to mean 'in order to do...', 'with an intention of doing...'.

'He is said to have spent a lot of money to become a Senator.'
UNIT 31
KOREAN BASIC COURSE

DRILLS

1. Substitution Drill

1. 머리가 길었습니다.
   My hair has grown.

2. 수염이 길었습니다.
   My beard has grown.

3. 손톱이 길었습니다.
   My finger-nails have grown.

4. 발톱이 길었습니다.
   My toenails have grown.

5. 양의 털이 길었습니다.
   The sheep's hair has grown.

6. 눈썹이 길었습니다.
   My eyebrows have grown.

7. 층의 끝이 길었습니다.
   My eyelashes have grown.

2. Substitution Drill

1. 머리를 깎았습니다.
   [I had my hair cut. ('I've cut my hair.')]

2. 풀을 깎았습니다.
   [I have cut the grass.]

3. 갓을 깎았습니다.
   [I have sharpened the pencil.]

4. 선반을 깎았습니다.
   [I have cut the price.]

5. 손톱을 깎았습니다.
   [I have cut my finger-nails.]

6. 했을을 깎았습니다.
   [I have sheared the sheep ('cut the wool').]
7. 소열을 깎았습니다.  
[I] have shaved (beard).

8. 돌을 깎았습니다.  
[I] have cut the stone (with a chisel).

9. 다이아몬드를 깎았습니다.  
[I] have cut the diamond.

3. Substitution Drill

1. 저는 오늘 빛은 날씨를 좋아합니다.  
I like weather like that of today.

2. 저는 거선생과 같은 사람을 좋아합니다.  
I like a person like Mr. Kim.

3. 저는 쉬림온과 같은 도시를 좋아합니다.  
I like a city like Washington.

4. 저는 그것과 같은 모음을 좋아합니다.  
I like a shape like that.

5. 저는 그 분과 같은 성격을 좋아합니다.  
I like a personality like his.

6. 저는 그 옷과 같은 색을 좋아합니다.  
I like a color like the one in that dress.

7. 저는 그 여자와 같은 체형을 좋아합니다.  
I like a figure like hers.

4. Transformation-Response Drill (based on Grammar Note 3)

선생: 저는 소열을 기르고 싶습니다.  
I'm going to grow a beard.

학생: 저도 소열을 기르고자 해요.  
I too intend to grow a beard, too.

1. 저는 다음엔 체온 밖을 벗으려고 합니다.  
Next time I'm going to study an easier language.

저도 다음엔 체온 밖을 벗으려고 해요.  
I too intend to study an easier language next time.
UNIT 31
KOREAN BASIC COURSE

2. 저는 여행가 있으니 그 영화를 보고 싶습니다.
저도 여행가 있으니 그 영화를 보고 싶어요.

3. 저는 떠나봐야겠습니까. 이 여행을 추천해 주시겠어요.
저도 떠나봐야겠습니까. 이 여행을 추천해 주세요.

4. 저는 떠나봐야 할 안전한 방에 들려고 합니다.
저도 떠나봐야 할 안전한 방에 들려고 해요.

5. 저는 돈이 부족할 때 여행을 울리하고 있습니다.
저도 돈이 부족할 때 여행을 울리하고 해요.

6. 저는 십년 후에 외국의 삶을 그린다고 합니다.
저도 십년 후에 외국의 삶을 그린다고 해요.

7. 저는 아이들에게 재산을 남기려고 합니다.
저도 아이들에게 재산을 남기고자 해요.

8. 저는 다른 여자와 결혼하려고 있습니다.
저도 다른 여자와 결혼하고자 해요.

9. 저는 집을 짓지 않으려고 합니다.
저도 집을 짓지 않으러고 해요.

10. 저는 비싼 자동차를 사지 않으려고 합니다.
저도 비싼 자동차를 사지 않으러고 해요.

5. Response Drill (based on Grammar Note 3)

선생: 한국에 가고 싶어요?
학생: 아니요, 한국에 가고 싶지 않습니다.

선생: If I have some spare time I'm going to see that movie.
학생: I'm going to invite Mr. Lee, if possible.

선생: I'm going to stay in a Korean style room, if possible.
학생: I'm going to see the world when I have enough money.

선생: I'm going to quit the foreign service ten years from now.
학생: I'm going to stay in a Korean style room, if possible.

선생: I'm going to leave a fortune to the children.
학생: I was going to marry another girl.

선생: I was not going to sell my house.
학생: I was not going to buy an expensive car.

Are you going to go to Korea?
Yes, I intend to go to Korea.
1. 미치нал 기르고 싶어요?
   예, 미치нал 기르고 싶습니다.

2. 다음 번에 구타바 여행을 할래요?
   예, 다음 번에 구타바 여행을 하지 않겠습니다.

3. 날이 춥으면 봉은 깔끔하고 해요?
   예, 날이 춥으면 봉은 깔끔하고 싶습니다.

4. 직장을 옮기고 싶어요?
   예, 직장을 옮기고 싶습니다.

5. 금 선생께 그 일을 부탁하고 해요?
   예, 금 선생께 그 일을 부탁하고 싶습니다.

6. 친구에게 셀프 선물을 보내고 싶어요?
   예, 친구에게 셀프 선물을 보내고 싶습니다.

7. 여름에 바닷가에 가고 싶어요?
   예, 여름에 바닷가에 가고 싶습니다.

8. 밥 선생에게 질문하고 싶어요?
   예, 밥 선생에게 질문하고 싶습니다.

9. 주차장에 차를 세우고 싶어요?
   예, 주차장에 차를 세우고 싶습니다.

10. 운 동장성이의 전화 번호를 적어두고 싶어요?
    예, 운 동장성이의 전화 번호를 적어두고 싶어요.

Are you going to grow your hair?
Yes, I intend to grow my hair.

Are you going to travel to Europe next time?
Yes, I intend to travel to Europe next time.

Are you going to cut the grass if the weather is nice?
Yes, I intend to cut the grass if the weather is nice.

Are you going to change your job?
Yes, I intend to change my job.

Are you going to ask Mr. Kim to do that work?
Yes, I intend to ask Mr. Kim to do that work.

Are you going to send a birthday present to your friend?
Yes, I intend to send a birthday present to my friend.

Are you going to go to the beach in the summer?
Yes, I intend to go to the beach in the summer.

Are you going to ask Mr. Park a question?
Yes, I intend to ask Mr. Park a question.

Are you going to park the car in the parking lot?
Yes, I intend to park the car in the parking lot.

Are you going to write down President (of a university) Yoon's telephone number?
Yes, I intend to jot down President Yoon's telephone number.
6. Response Drill (based on Grammar Note 3)

선생: 날씨를 기르시겠어요? (Are you going to grow a tree?)

학생: 네, 날씨를 기르고 싶어요.

1. 국방부에 들었어요? (Are you going to stop by the Pentagon?)

학생: 네, 국방부에 들고 갈 거예요.

2. 이 주말에 납서를 쓰시겠어요? (Are you going to go fishing this weekend?)

학생: 네, 이 주말에 납서를 쓸 거예요.

3. 민선 자동차 사시겠어요? (Are you going to buy any kind of car?)

학생: 네, 민선 자동차 사고 싶어요.

4. 담배를 안 피우시겠어요? (You're not going to smoke?)

학생: 아니요, 담배를 안 피우고 싶어요.

5. 한국 음식을 배우시겠어요? (Are you going to learn Korean customs?)

학생: 네, 한국 음식을 배우고 싶어요.

6. 점심 먹은 후에 산보할 거겠어요? (Are you going to take a walk after lunch?)

학생: 네, 점심 먹은 후에 산보하고 싶어요.

7. 딸씨가 자꾸 일들 끝내시겠어요? (Are you going to finish the work by 5 o'clock?)

학생: 네, 딸씨가 자꾸 일들을 끝내고 싶어요.

8. 내년에 한국 말 공부를 귀중히 해서겠어요? (Are you going to stop studying Korean next year?)

학생: 네, 내년에 한국 말 공부를 귀중히 해서 싶어요.

9. 음악을 들으시겠어요? (Are you going to listen to music?)

학생: 네, 음악을 듣고 싶어요.

10. 혼자 살아겠어요? (Are you going to live alone?)

학생: 네, 혼자 살아고 싶어요.

Yes, I'm going (or intend) to grow a tree.

Yes, I'm going to stop by the Pentagon.

Yes, I'm going to go fishing this weekend.

Yes, I'm going to buy any kind of car.

No, I'm not going to smoke.

Yes, I'm going to learn Korean customs.

Yes, I'm going to take a walk after lunch.

Yes, I'm going to finish the work by 5 o'clock.

Yes, I'm going to stop studying Korean next year.

Yes, I'm going to listen to music.

Yes, I'm going to live alone.
7. Response Drill (based on Grammar Note 1)

선생: 그 곳의 경치가 아름답습니까?

학생: 네, 아름답습니다.

1. 그 시험이 어렵습니까?

학생: 네, 어렵습니다.

2. 그 음식 맛이 좋습니까?

학생: 네, 좋습니다.

3. 그 식당 음식이 맛있습니다.

학생: 네, 맛있습니다.

4. 불고기가 맛이 있습니까?

학생: 네, 맛이 있습니다.

5. 그 영화가 재미 있습니까?

학생: 네, 재미 있습니다.

6. 그 학생이 똑똑합니까?

학생: 네, 똑똑합니다.

7. 그 공중 목욕탕이 깔끔합니까?

학생: 네, 깔끔합니다.

8. 그분 병세가 심합니까?

학생: 네, 심합니다.

9. 위험한의 역할이 잘합니까?

학생: 네, 잘합니다.

Was the scenery there beautiful?
Yes, it was beautiful.

Did you find the exam difficult?
Yes, it was difficult.

Was the taste of the food excellent?
Yes, it was excellent.

Was the food in that restaurant all right?
Yes, I found it all right.

Was Pulkoki tasty?
Yes, it was tasty.

Was that movie interesting?
Yes, it was interesting.

Was that student bright?
Yes, he was bright.

Was that public bath clean?
Yes, it was clean.

Was his disease serious?
Yes, it was serious.

Was the summer in Washington humid?
Yes, it was humid.

8. Response Drill (based on Grammar Note 1)

선생: 그 아이가 공부합니까?

학생: 네, 공부합닙니다.

Did you see the child studying?
Yes, I saw him studying.
UNIT 31

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

1. 그 이방소에서 머ikit를 깨어 줄디까?
   - 깨어 줄디다.

2. 그 모임에서 부탁한 메시가 한국 말을 말하시는가?
   - 말하시는다.

3. 그분이 한자를 잘 쓰십니까?
   - 잘 쓰십니다.

4. 그분이 아이들을 사랑합니까?
   - 사랑합니까.

5. 기차가 제 시간에 운행합니까?
   - 제 시간에 운행합니다.

6. 그 이방소에서 머ikit를 잘 깨우실きっかけ?
   - 잘 깨우실것이다.

7. 그 국회의원이 연설을 잘 하십니까?
   - 잘 하십시오.

8. 길 선생의 학생을 잘 지킴니까?
   - 잘 지킴니다.

9. 그 미국 사람들이 풀코키 좋아 합니까?
   - 좋아 합니다.

10. 그 차가 잘 달립니까?
    - 잘 달립니다.

9. Combination Drill

선생: 오늘은 시간이 없습니다. 그 때문에 머ikit 금는 것은 그만두겠습니다.

학생: 오늘은 시간이 없어서 머ikit 금는 것은 그만두겠습니다.

Did they wash your hair at that barbershop?
Yes, they washed my hair.

Did you see Ambassador Brown speaking Korean at the party?
Yes, I saw him speaking [Korean].

Did you see him writing Chinese characters well?
Yes, I saw him writing them well.

Did you see whether he loves his children?
Yes, I saw that he loves his children.

Did you see whether the trains were running on schedule?
Yes, I saw that they were running on time.

Did you find that they gave a good haircut at that barbershop?
Yes, they gave me a good haircut.

Did that National Assembly member make a good speech?
Yes, he spoke well.

Have you found that Mr. Kim keeps appointments well?
Yes, I found that he does.

Did you see whether those Americans liked Pulkoki?
Yes, they liked it.

Did the car run well (when you saw it)?
Yes, the car ran well (when I saw it).

I don't have time today. Therefore, I'll not wash my hair.

I don't have time today, so I'll not wash my hair.
1. 몸이 아닙니다.그래서 학교에 갈 수 없어요.
I'm sick. Therefore, I cannot go to school.

2. 한국 맛이 어ಠ습니다.그래서 잘 할 수 없어요.
Korean is difficult. Therefore, I cannot speak it well.

3. 저는 돈이 필요합니다.그래서 일을 해요.
I need money. Therefore, I work.

4. 오늘은 바빠요.그래서 연화 구경 할 수 없어요.
I'm busy today. Therefore, I cannot go to the movies.

5. 자동차가 고장이 됐습니다.그래서 쓸 수 없어요.
I don't have a driver's license. Therefore, I cannot drive.

6. 운전 면허가 없어요.그래서 운전할 수 없어요.
I don't have a driver's license, so I cannot drive.

7. 면도 깨어 있었습니다.그래서 면도할 수 없어요.
I don't have a razor. Therefore, I cannot shave.

8. 샌프란시스코는 일기가 좋습니다.그래서 살기가 좋습니다.
San Francisco has a nice climate, so it's nice to live [there].

9. 열쇠를 잃어 버렸습니다.그래서 실물을 맞 수가 없어요.
I've lost my key, so I cannot open the drawer.

10. 자동차 가 주세요.그래서 여택 사람이 할 수 없어요.
The car is small, so many people cannot ride in it.
10. Response Drill

생성: 왜 머리를 안 감撤销니가? /시간이 없습니다/
화생: 시간이 없어서 머리를 안 감습니다.

1. 왜 뒤지 고기를 좋아하니까? /살이 연합니까/
    살이 연해서 뒤지 고기를 좋아합니다.

2. 왜 외교관이 되었습니까? /어깨가 아申し込み다/
    어깨가 아서 외교관이 되었습니다.

3. 왜 한국 빵이 그렇게 어렴풋습니까? /분법이 복잡하십시오/
    분법이 복잡해서 한국 빵이 그렇게 어렴풋습니다.

4. 왜 동생이 아직 음식 향지 없었습니까? /나이가 아직 어렴풋습니까/
    나이가 아직 어서 아직 음식 향지 없었습니다.

5. 왜 이 선셋이 오늘 오지 않았습니까? /봄이 놓습니다/
    봄이 너무 이 선셋이 오늘 오지 않았습니다.

6. 왜 범죄자에 갔습니까? /아무도 이
    않었습니다/
    아무도 이 범죄자에 갔었습니다.

7. 왜 부인과 다투었습니까? /돈을 너무 많이 사셨습니다/
    돈을 너무 많이 사서 집 사무가 떨었습니다.

8. 왜 날마다 수영합니까? /건강에 좋다고 합니다/
    건강에 좋다고 해서 날마다 수영합니다.

Why don't you wash your hair? [I don't have time.]
I won't wash my hair because I don't have time. OR I don't have time, so I won't wash my hair.

Why do you like pork? [The meat is tender.]
I like pork because the meat is tender.

Why did you join the foreign service? [I wanted to travel.]
I joined the foreign service because I wanted to travel.

Why is Korean so difficult? [The grammar is complicated.]
Korean is so difficult because the grammar is complicated.

Why hasn't your younger brother gotten married yet? [He is still young.]
He hasn't gotten married yet because he's still young.

Why hasn't Mr. Lee come today? [He got sick.]
Mr. Lee hasn't come today because he got sick.

Why did you go to the department store? [I needed a suit.]
I went to the department store because I needed a suit.

Why did you have a quarrel with your wife? [She spent too much money.]
I had a quarrel with my wife because she spent too much money.

Why do you swim every day? [They say it's good for my health.]
I swim every day because they say it's good for my health.
9. 왜 국에 소금을 넣니가? [국이 너무 심.]

Why do you use salt in the soup? [The soup is too bland.]

10. 왜 그분은 사회 경험이 부족합니까? [아직 젊습니다.]

Why doesn't he have enough social experience? [He is still young.]
이발사: 네. 알겠어요. 렌트는 어떻게 할까요?

집: 왼 뒤 합쪽 다 해주세요.

이발사: 저, 다 깐혔습니다. 저쪽에는 머리가 길고 오세요.

( 좀 후에)

집: 참, 머리 끝은 너무 많이 자르지 마세요.

이발사: 네, 알겠습니다. 저, 다 왔었습니다. 기분을 보십시오.

집: 소고 마셨습니다.

이발사: 인생이 가십시요. 또 오십시요.

---

Narrative for Comprehension and Reading

한국 이발사는 미국 이발소보다 서비스가 좋습니다. 머리카락 잘 깐다는 이야기는 많은 손님들이 맛보시어 손님 들이 저를 꺼려하지 않으나요. 한국 이발소에서는 머리카락 잘 깐다고 안고 안 되고 맘에 안 들지 않으나. 또 머리카락 깐 후에 기름도 많이 주고 몸매도 잘해준 것이 맘에 들지 않으나. 그래서 미국 이발소보다 시간이 오래 걸리지만 이발하는 동안 잘 싶을 수 있습니다. 그리고 또 이발소도 서비스가 한국 남자 들은 미국 남자 들보다 이발을 자주 만납니다. 그리고 한국에서는 이발사에게 믿을 수 있는 것들이나. 모든 서비스가 다 이발소에 포함되어 있습니다.

244
EXERCISES

A. You are at the barbershop; tell the barber:

1. to trim the side and back just a little.
2. to give you a shave and trim the back (with a razor).
3. to leave your mustache as it is.
4. to give you a massage.
5. to cut your finger nails short.
6. to wash your hair but not to use too much hair tonic.

B. Make up five short dialogues using different nominals for each of the following four verbs.

1. 빗다 'to cut'
2. 씨앗다 'to cut', 'to slice', 'to saw'
3. 떼다 'to cut', 'to cut off', 'to severe'
4. 벗다 'to cut', 'cut down', 'to chop down'

C. Match one or more of the three words on the left column with the words on the right column and make up nominal phrases in short statement sentences:

1. 공중 'public'
   1. 공중'
   2. 공중'
   3. 공중'

2. 공립 'public'
   1. 공립'
   2. 공립'
   3. 공립'

3. 사립 'private'
   1. 사립'
   2. 사립'
   3. 사립'

   'bath'
   'toilet'
   'telephone'
   'barbershop'
   'school'
   'theatre'
   'hospital'
   'library'
   'sanitation'
   'order'
   'transportation'
UNIT 32. Visiting the Patient at the Hospital

BASIC DIALOGUE

PAGE 246

Mrs., your wife (honored) / Mrs. Lee (honored) according to Mrs. ___ traffic accident [he]'s injured [he]'s injured on his arm

According to Mrs. Lee, he hurt his arm slightly in a traffic accident.

Oh, no. That's too bad. Did she say he hurt himself badly?
She said that it's not serious but he may have to stay in the hospital for two or three days.

I'll look [him] up; I'll pay a visit.

Well, I think I should pay a visit, then.

I was thinking of paying him a visit at the hospital this afternoon, too.

Why don't you go with me after work, then?

O.K. (Let's do that.)
NOTES ON THE BASIC DIALOGUE

(Numbers correspond to the sentence numbers.)

1. "

2. "

3. "

4. "
KOREAN BASIC COURSE

UNIT 32

두려워하지 마십시오.

[Your] worry is too excessive.

손해가 너무 심합니다.

'The loss is too severe.'

다시看清요? is the contraction of 다시看清다고 해요? 'Does [she] say that [he] got hurt [himself].'

5. 맹각하다 is a description verb which occurs for a small class of nominals and is translated as 'to be really something', 'to be serious'. Examples are provided in the drills.

절망 is a free noun meaning 'shape', 'appearance', 'look'. 절망이 없다 and 절망이 없다 are translated as 'looks good' and 'does not look good' respectively. A modifier word + 절망 + 이다 occurs as the substitute of a modifier word + 이다 + 절망다 (See Grammar Notes 2).

6. 생각 없이 생각중이다 'to be thinking of visiting' is the combined extended construction of 생각 없이 (생각)하다, which is the substitute of 생각 없이 (생각)하다 plus 생각중이다 ('to be in the midst of thinking) (See Grammar Notes 3).

GRAMMAR NOTES

1. Derivational Causative and Intransitive Verbs

We learned the construction -게 하- 'to have/let/make someone do...' in Unit 16 (Grammar Notes 3 (b)) in which the -게 form is always a transitive action verb.

There is a small class of verbs in Korean which occurs in causative meaning. Any such verb is called a Causative Verb. A causative verb is always transitive because it takes an object. Note that causative verbs are a subclass of transitive action verbs. Causative verb stems are formed based mostly on a small class of transitive action verbs, but a few are based on intransitive action verbs, by adding a derivational verb suffix to the stems. A suffix which is added to an action verb stem to produce a causative verb is called a Causative Verb Suffix. Observe the following:

249
UNIT 32
KOREAN BASIC COURSE

(a)

metis- 'to eat'
meti- 'to have someone eat...'
meti- 'to feed (baby)"

bun- 'to look at'
buni- 'to have someone look at'
buni- 'to show'

(b)

erin- 'to dress'
eri- 'to have someone dress'
eri- 'to dress someone'

lok- 'to sit (down)'
lok- 'to have someone sit (down)'

(c)

erin- 'to embrace'
erin- 'to have someone embrace'

(d)

erin- 'to know'
erin- 'to have someone know'
erin- 'to notify'

sal- 'to live'
sal- 'to let someone live (or survive)'
sal- 'to rescue'

There is another small class of verbs which are formed based on transitive action verbs similarly to causative verbs but are different only in that they occur always as intransitive verbs. This class of verbs is called Derivational Intransitive Verbs. Some of this class of verbs have identical shapes as derivational causative verbs but some are slightly different. Some transitive action verbs produce both derivational transitive causative verbs and derivational intransitive verbs, but some produce only causative verbs and others intransitive verbs. This class of verbs has been called to be in Passive Voice for their active counterparts and the derivational verb suffix has been called Passive Voice Suffix. For our purpose, however, we ignore at this point any linguistic discussion as to whether or not there are active and passive voice in Korean. Rather, it is suggested that you learn every derivational causative or intransitive verb as a separate lexical item instead of attempting to form one by analogy based on a randomly selected verb stem. Observe the following examples:
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Transitive Verb</th>
<th>D. Causative Verb</th>
<th>D. Intransitive Verb</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(a)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'to eat'</td>
<td>'to have someone eat'</td>
<td>'to be eaten'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'to die'</td>
<td>'to kill'</td>
<td>'to have someone die'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'to dress'</td>
<td>'to have someone dress'</td>
<td>'to dress (someone)'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'to catch'</td>
<td></td>
<td>'to be caught'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'to sit (down)'</td>
<td>'to have someone sit (down)'</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'to put someone on [her] back'</td>
<td>'to have someone to be on someone's back'</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'to embrace'</td>
<td>'to have someone embrace'</td>
<td>'to be embraced'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(d)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'to listen to'</td>
<td>'to have someone hear'</td>
<td>'to be audible'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'to take a turn'</td>
<td>'to have something go around'</td>
<td>'to be heard'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'to know'</td>
<td>'to have someone know'</td>
<td>'to be heard'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'to be aware of'</td>
<td>'to notify'</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'to live'</td>
<td>'to have someone live (survive)'</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'to rescue (someone)'</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'to play'</td>
<td>'to have someone play'</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'to do nothing'</td>
<td>'to have someone do nothing'</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'to tease'</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
2. 

 Opposition (i.e. the present noun modifier word - 느 / 느 + the noun 느 / 느 + copula expression) occurs as a substitute of the pattern - 느 / 느 + 것 같다 (Unit 18). In either of the above two constructions, the noun modifier word can also be either a prospective form - 느 / 느 for the future or a retrospective past form -(으/었) / / for the past respectively. For an action verb -(으/였) / / may be replaced by the past modifier ending - 느 / 느. The tenses and/or levels of speech for the whole construction in case of - 느 / 느 / 느 are generated in the copula expression. Compare the following examples:

(1)

a. **비가 오는 것을 깨끗입니다.**
   비가 오는 것을 깨끗입니다.
   "It seems to be raining."
   ("It seems that it's raining.")

b. **비가 온 것을 깨끗입니다.**
   비가 온 것을 깨끗입니다.
   "It looks like rain."
   ("It seems that it will rain.")

c. **비가 왔던 것을 깨끗입니다.**
   비가 왔던 것을 깨끗합니다.
   "I seems that it has rained."

(2)

a. **그 여자가 예쁜 것을 깨끗입니다.**
   그 여자가 예쁜 것을 깨끗합니다.
   "She seems to be pretty."

b. **그 여자가 예뻤던 것을 깨끗입니다.**
   그 여자가 예뻤던 것을 깨끗합니다.
   "It seems that she will be pretty."

c. **그 여자가 예뻤던 것을 깨끗입니다.**
   그 여자가 예뻤던 것을 깨끗합니다.
   "It seems that she was pretty."

3. 

- is a derivational noun suffix which is added to a small class of nouns to make other class of nouns which occur typically before a copula expression, and it denotes an action being in progress. A derivational noun ending in - + the copula 느 means 'something is in progress or in the midst of a
certain action'.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Noun</th>
<th>D.Noun</th>
<th>Copula expression</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>'telephone'</td>
<td>전화중</td>
<td>'[he]'s on the phone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'speech'</td>
<td>말씀중</td>
<td>'[he]'s talking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'sport'</td>
<td>운동중</td>
<td>'[he]'s taking exercise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'studying'</td>
<td>공부중</td>
<td>'[he]'s studying'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'thought'</td>
<td>생각중</td>
<td>'[he]'s thinking'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'teaching class'</td>
<td>수업중</td>
<td>'[he]'s in class (teaching)'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'preparation'</td>
<td>준비중</td>
<td>'[he]'s preparing'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'conference'</td>
<td>회의중</td>
<td>'[he]'s in conference'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'training'</td>
<td>훈련중</td>
<td>'[he]'s taking training'</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note that the form of an action verb + 중이다 which literally means '[he]'s in middle of doing something' occurs in the same meaning as the above 중 copula expressions. Observe the following.

전화중이다 = 전화하는 중이다 'He's on the phone.'

말씀중이다 = 말씀하는 중이다 'He's talking.'

운동중이다 = 운동하는 중이다 'He's taking exercise.'
1. Transformation Drill

[She] says that [he] hurt [his] arm in a traffic accident.
It's said that [he] hurt [his] arm in a traffic accident.

[They] say that Mrs. Park is ill.
It's said that Mrs. Park is ill.

[They] say that his sickness is not very serious.
It's said that his sickness is not very serious.

[They] say that the President will visit Southeast Asia.
It's said that the President will visit Southeast Asia.

Mr. Son says that he quits at 6 and goes home.
It's said that Mr. Son quits at 6 and goes home.

My wife says that she will pay a visit to your wife.
My wife says she will pay a visit to your wife.

[They] say that there is an accident in the vicinity of the school.
It's said that there is an accident in the vicinity of the school.

[They] say that they will eliminate Chinese characters.
It's said that they will eliminate Chinese characters.

[They] say that it looks like snow.
It's said that it looks like snow.

[They] say that he was discharged from the hospital yesterday.
It's said that he was discharged from the hospital yesterday.

[They] say that his personality (or character) is really something.
It's said that his personality is really something.
2. Response Drill

Do [they] say that Mr. Kim is ill?
Yes, [they] say (or it's said) that Mr. Kim is ill.

Does [he] say that [he]'ll visit [me] at [my] office?
Yes, [he] says that [he]'ll visit [you] at [your] office.

Do they say that it appears that he has to be in the hospital many days?
Yes, they say it appears that he has to be in the hospital many days.

Do they say that there's a traffic jam downtown?
Yes, they say that there's a traffic jam downtown.

Do they say that the 9 a.m. train has already left?
Yes, they say that the 9 a.m. train has already left.

Does she say that she will look you up?
Yes, she says she'll look me up.

Do they say that Mr. Park will commute to work by automobile?
Yes, they say that Mr. Park will commute to work by automobile.

3. Transformation Drill

Do [they] say that Mr. Kim hurt himself badly? (or Is it said that Mr. Kim hurt himself badly?)

Does Mr. Song say that he is ill?

Does he say when he's moving (his house)?
3. Do they say that Mr. Kim's parents are old?
   Do they say that Mr. Kim's parents are old?

4. Do they say what illness caused the Minister (of the Government) be hospitalized?
   Do they say what illness caused the Minister (of the Government) be hospitalized?

5. Does the weather forecast say it'll snow tomorrow?
   Does the weather forecast say it'll snow tomorrow?

6. Do they say that the Ambassador's wife cooks well?
   Do they say that the Ambassador's wife cooks well?

4. Response Drill

선생: 왜냐가 벌났나?
학생: 예, 왜냐가 벌어요.

1. 그 식당의 음식이 간절타니가?
   예, 그 식당의 음식이 간절타요.

2. 취식동의 교통이 빠르다고 닦았나?
   예, 취식동의 교통이 빠르다고 닦았어요.

3. 그 백화점에 화재가 낳았나?
   예, 그 백화점에 화재가 낳았어요.

4. 닭배가 몸에 나쁘다고 닦았나?
   예, 닭배가 몸에 나쁘다고 닦았어요.

5. 불탄서 말 베유가 간절타니가?
   예, 불탄서 말 베유가 간절타요.

6. 징 신선은 역행 준비가 되어있니가?
   예, 징 신선은 역행 준비가 되어있어요.
KOREAN BASIC COURSE
UNIT 32

5. Substitution Drill

1. 그는 팔을 다쳤어요.
   They say he hurt his arm.

2. 그는 다리를 다쳤어요.
   They say he hurt his leg.

3. 그는 이마를 다쳤어요.
   They say he hurt his forehead.

4. 그는 등을 다쳤어요.
   They say he hurt his back.

5. 그는 무릎을 다쳤어요.
   They say he hurt his knee.

6. 그는 눈을 다쳤어요.
   They say he hurt his eye.

7. 그는 머리를 다쳤어요.
   They say he hurt his head.

6. Substitution Drill

1. 교통 사고가 납니다.
   They say there's a traffic accident.

2. 자동차 사고가 납니다.
   They say there's an automobile accident.

3. 비행기 사고가 납니다.
   They say there's an airplane accident.

4. 기차 사고가 납니다.
   They say there's a train accident.

5. 해상 사고가 납니다.
   They say there's a maritime accident.

6. 충돌 사고가 납니다.
   They say there's a collision.

7. 화재가 납니다.
   They say there's a fire.
8. They say there's a fire.


7. Substitution Drill

1. That's really something.

2. The wind is really something.

3. The weather is really something.

4. He is really something.

5. His personality is really something.

6. I have a big worry.

7. It's awfully cold. ('Coldness is really something.')

8. It's awfully hot.

9. The drought is really severe.

10. The flood is really something.

8. Transformation Drill (based on Grammar Note 2)

선생: 비가 오는 것 같습니다.  It seems to be raining. ('It looks like that it is raining.')

학생: 비가 오는 표창입니다.  It seems to be raining. ('It appears to be raining.')
Korean seems to be difficult to the Americans.

Mr. Kim seems to be very sick.

He seems to have hurt himself severely.

It seems that Mr. (Section Chief) Kim goes to work at nine.

It seems that Mr. (Bureau Chief) Kim's personality is really something.

It seems that the President will visit Southeast Asia next year.

It seems that Minister Kim commutes by car.

It seems that Mrs. Song (honored) is intelligent.

It seems that it will be cold from tomorrow.

It seems that it snows a lot in winter in Korea.

9. Transformation Drill (based on Grammar Note 3)

I'm just thinking of visiting Mr. Kim.

I'm thinking of visiting Mr. Kim. ('I'm in the midst of thinking of visiting Mr. Kim.')
UNIT 32

1. 어디에서 점심을 먹을 가 하고 있습니까.
   I'm just thinking of having lunch at some place.

2. 사진을 샀 가 하고 있습니까.
   I'm thinking of buying a dictionary.

3. 다음 달에 후가.chomp 받을 가 하고 있습니까.
   I'm thinking of taking a vacation next month.

4. 선물에 부모님을 찾아 볼 가 하고 있습니까.
   I'm thinking of visiting my parents during the Christmas season.

5. 다음 달에 부모님을 찾아 볼 가 하고 있습니까.
   I'm thinking of leaving next month.

6. 저를 집장을 육길 가 하고 있습니까.
   I'm thinking of changing my job.

7. 이번 주말에 수영장 가 하고 있습니까.
   I'm thinking of going swimming this weekend.

10. Response-Transformation Drill (based on Grammar Note 3)

선생: 밥 선생이 지금 수업하고 있습니까?

학생: 아니, 밥 선생이 지금 수업중입니다.

1. 친 선생 사무실은 병원에 입원하고 있습니까?
   예, 친 선생 사무실은 병원에 입원중입니다.

2. 부인이 저녁을 준비하고 있습니까?
   예, 제 아내가 저녁을 준비중입니다.

3. 국무 위문이 회의하고 있습니까?
   예, 국무 위문이 회의중입니다.

Is Mr. Park teaching (in class) now?

Yes, Mr. Park is in class (teaching) now.

Is Mrs. Kim (honored) (being) in the hospital now?

Yes, Mrs. Kim is in the hospital now.

Is your wife preparing supper now?

Yes, my wife is preparing supper now.

Are the cabinet members having a conference?

Yes, the cabinet members are in a conference.
4. Are the soldiers being trained?
   Yes, the soldiers are in the training.

5. Are you worrying about what kind of present you will buy?
   Yes, I'm worrying about what kind of present I'll buy.

6. Are you on the phone talking with Mr. Kim?
   Yes, I'm on the phone talking with Mr. Kim.

7. Is he campaigning for the election in the country?
   Yes, he is campaigning for the election in the country.

8. Is the Minister talking with the Vice-Minister?
   Yes, the Minister is talking with the Vice-Minister.

11. Response Drill (based on Grammar Note 3)

   선생: 선생은 다음 달에 떠나𬘬니까?
   학생: 아니, 다음 달에 떠날 거가 생각중입니다.

   1. 접심은 한식을 집에서 식사하시는니까?
      예, 접심은 한식을 떠음 \( g \) 가 생각중입니다.

   2. 주말에 친구들 초대하십니까?
      예, 주말에 친구들 초대할 \( g \) 가 생각중입니다.

   3. 새 해에 부모님을 찾아 \( g \) 빗가 생각중입니다.

   4. 오늘 저녁에 한국 영화를 보십니까?
      예, 오늘 저녁에 한국 영화를 볼 \( g \) 가 생각중입니다.
5. 어제부터 지하철로 출근하십니까? 
예, 어제부터 지하철로 출근할 거 같아 생각해요.

6. 내년부터는 집사람해 보십니까? 
예, 내년부터는 집사람해 볼 거 같아 생각해요.

7. 요즘에 이발하십니까? 
예, 요즘에 이발한 거 같아 생각해요.

8. 주말에 집에서 쉬십니까? 
예, 주말에 집에서 쉬는 거 같아 생각해요.

9. 연설하는 훈련을 받으십니까? 
예, 연설하는 훈련을 받은 거 같아 생각해요.

10. 토요일에 시장보다 가봅니까? 
예, 토요일에 시장보다 갈 거 같아 생각해요.

12. Expansion Drill

선생: 내일 비가 옵니다. [일기 예보] 
학생: 일기 예보에 의하면 내일 비가 올 것 같아요.

1. 김 과장이 입원해요. [사모님 말] 
사모님 말에 의하면 김 과장이 입원해요.

2. 그분의 병이 심하요. [의사의 말] 
의사의 말에 의하면 그분의 병이 심하기에요.

3. 한국 말이 어렵네요. [학생들의 말] 
학생들의 말에 의하면 한국 말이 어렵네요.

It] says it will rain tomorrow. [weather forecast] 
According to the weather forecast, it says it will rain tomorrow.

Mr. (Department Chief) Kim is said to be hospitalized. [Mrs. Kim] 
According to Mrs. Kim, Chairman Kim is said to be in the hospital.

His illness is said to be serious. [doctor] 
According to the doctor, his illness is said to be serious.

Korean is said to be difficult. [students] 
According to the students, Korean is said to be difficult.
4. 한국의 추위가 매우합니다. /KOREAN-
한국 사람의 말에 의하면 한국의 추위가 매우합니다.

5. 과장이 최고층이입니다. /비서의 말/
비서의 말에 의하면 과장이 최고층입니다.

6. 지하철이 배투고 빠르합니다. /사람들의 말/
사람들의 말에 의하면 지하철이 배투고 빠르습니다.

7. 공무원 월급이 오른답니다. /신문 보도/
신문 보도에 의하면 공무원 월급이 오른답니다.

8. 불교가 많이 있습니다. /예림 선생의 말/
예림 선생의 말에 의하면 불교가 많이 있습니다.

9. 밤제가 건강에 나쁘답니다. /의사의 말/
의사의 말에 의하면 밤제가 건강에 나쁘답니다.

10. 머기가 아프면 아스피린이 좋습니다. /김 선생의 경험/
김 선생의 경험에 의하면 머기가 아프면 아스피린이 좋습니다.

13. Completion Exercise

선생: 일기 예보에 의하면...

학생: 일기 예보에 의하면 오늘 비가 오네요.
14. Response-Transformation Drill

선생: 과장님이 십각하게 다치셨네요?

학생: 네, 과장님은 정말 십각하게 다치셨다고 하네요.

1. 과장님은 회복 완료했어요?
   네, 과장님은 회복이 완료되었단테요.

2. 그분이 반도 회사에 근무중 이래요?
   네, 그분이 반도 회사에 근무중 이 있다고 해요.

3. 한국 말이 그렇게 어렵까요?
   네, 한국 말이 그렇게 어렵다고 해요.

4. 그 영화가 좋네요?
   네, 그 영화가 좋다고 해요.

5. 그 학생이 교수님 만나 보게 해요?
   네, 그 학생이 교수님 만나 보게라고 해요.

According to the doctor...

According to my experience...

According to newspaper reports...

According to diplomats...

According to the secretary of the company president...

According to a policeman...

According to my school teachers...

According to Korean customs...

Do they say that Mr. Chairman (of the department) hurt himself badly?

Yes, they say he hurt badly.

Do they say that Mr. Chairman was discharged from the hospital?

Yes, they say Mr. Chairman has gone home from the hospital.

Does [he] say that he is being employed by the Bando Company?

Yes, [he] says that he is being employed by the Bando Company.

Do they say that Korean is so difficult?

Yes, they say Korean is so difficult.

Do they say that movie is good?

Yes, they say that movie is good.

Does the student say that he will try to see the professor?

Yes, the student says he will try to see the professor.
Supplementary Dialogue for Comprehension

정: 그 과자님이 범죄에 입تون했다는 소식을 들었어요?

성: 아니요, 어디가 전화요 신가요?

정: 소문에 의하면 자동차 사고가 있었다는군요.

성: 심하게 다치셨어요?

정: 그동안 다가오는 양도 뺨질 입تون해야 하는 모양이닙니다.

성: 그럼, 산채 빛나는 범죄. 어느 범죄에 입تون하셨는지 아십니까?

정: 아니, 서울 범죄 범죄이다라고 들었습니다.
성: 오늘 회고 부에 같이 찾아 빌까요?

정: 예, 그렇게 합니다.

Narrative for Comprehension and Reading

반토 의사의 길 과장이 교통 사고로 병원에 입원했습니다. 타지들 중
다쳤지만 그의 심각하지 않습니다. 그러나 이 상황 병원에 있어야 한다고
의사가 말했습니다. 반토 의사 직원들이 모두 협력하지만 지금은
길 과장이 많이 나았습니다. 이제 앞으로는 직원들이 병원으로 길 과장을
방문했습니다. 의사의 말에 의하면 길 과장은 다음 협률 일부 의사에
출근할 수 있습니다.

EXERCISES

A. Make up at least 3 short dialogues for each of the following patterns or
expressions so that the second party would include them in his responses:

1. 같이 찾아 와요
2. -에 월 아요다
3. -고자 했어요
4. -고자...
5. (=사실은
6. -을/을에요
7. N1 (과/와) 결은 N2
8. 길었어요
9. 결لحق니다
10. N에 의하면
11. 심각해
12. -은/은 포양이야
13. -을/을 가 생각중이야
14. -(나)는/한 날 남지 않아
15. -(나)는/한 날 남지 않아
16. -대요
B. Tell your coworker:

1. that you heard that Mr. Lee is hospitalized.
2. that according to the newspaper there was a big traffic accident.
3. that Mrs. Lee's character is really something.
4. that Mr. Lee hurt himself badly.
5. that you will have to pay a visit after work.
6. that you are thinking of calling your parents tonight.
7. that you are taking language training.
8. that your boss is on the phone.
9. that they say it appears that your wife has to be in the hospital for a few days.
10. that Mr. Park is in a conference.
UNIT 33. Visiting the Patient at the Hospital (Continued)

BASIC DIALOGUE

(Mr. Chung and Mr. Song enter the ward following the nurse)

이 가정

마돈

 haciendo

1. 아이구, 마다 운 일이 심니까?

Well! What are you doing here? ('Gee, what's up, you all?')

전 인보

How are you feeling, Mr. Lee?

성 일설

I was surprised

I was surprised to hear the news ('I heard the news and was surprised!')

We were surprised to hear that you were hospitalized.

이 가정

تكل 때 부신 뒤 번에

I'm much better, thank you. By the way, how did you know I...

전 인보

We heard it from your wife this morning over the telephone. It was a traffic accident, wasn't it?
I'm ashamed

[she]'s shy; [she]'s bashful

driver of) the other car
carelessness
collision

[I] collided

(I'm embarrassed.) The other driver
wasn't paying attention and hit my car.

loss; damage

a damage was done ('[he] has
worn a loss')

[it] gave a loss; [it] caused
a loss

So, a little damage was done to my car.

steering wheel (driving handle)

[it]'s not serious

I hurt my arm on the steering wheel but
it isn't serious.

(big trouble)

(there almost was a big
accident)

(There almost was a big trouble, wasn't
it?) Were the other people in the car
all right?

fortunately

forehead

[he] hurt only a little
KOREAN BASIC COURSE

10.

degree (figuratively used)

Fortunately, there were no other passengers in the car. The driver of the other car hurt his forehead just a little, but he did not have to be hospitalized.

Additional Vocabulary and Phrases for Health and Sickness

A. (Medical) Doctors and Specialists

1. 네과 의사 doctor of internal medicine
2. 외과 의사 surgeon
3. 치과 의사 dentist
4. 산과 의사 ophthalmologist; eye specialist
5. 소아과 의사 pediatrist; child specialist
6. 신부인과 의사 gynaecologist
7. 피부과 의사 skin specialist
8. 이비인후과 의사 eye, ear and nose specialist
9. 정형 외과 의사 plastic surgery specialist
10. 여의사 woman (who is a) doctor
11. 간호사 nurse
B. Diseases and Symptoms

1. 암: cancer
2. 전염병: epidemics
3. 폐렴: pneumonia
4. 폐렴: T.B.
5. 염증: appendicitis
6. 외상병: gastroenteric disorder; stomach diseases
7. 피부 병: skin disease
8. 신경병: neuralgia; rheumatism
9. 눈마비: pleurisy
10. 신장병: kidney disease
11. 안호병: nose and throat infection
12. 염증: infection
13. 심장병: heart disease

C. Medical Expressions

恢复
恢复합니다
恢复합니다
나했습니다
1. 발병히 회복하시기 바랍니다.
   I hope you’ll recover soon.
2. 발병히 회복하시기 바랍니다.
   I hope you’ll get well soon.
3. 발병히 낫기 바랍니다.
   I hope you’ll get better soon.
The visiting hours are short.

(media) treatment

[he]'s being treated

[he]'s receiving treatment

Please take good care of yourself (to the patient).

I'm receiving medical treatment.

prevention

injection; shot

[he] gets a shot

I had a shot.

diagnosis

[he] gets diagnosis

I received a diagnosis from the doctor.

operation

[he] has an operation

He had an eye operation.

The result of the operation is good.

condition of sickness

Is it serious? ('Is the condition serious?')

[he] lies down

Please lie down on the bed.

a cold

influenza
13. [he]'s caught in sickness

He caught a cold.

He's caught influenza.

He's sick. or He got sick.

He got sick.

[he]'s running a fever.

He coughs.

He coughs.

[He]'s ill.

[He]'s healthy

[he]'s weak

[he]'s weak

The child is healthy.

The child is sickly.

D. 운동

1. 저는 매일 운동을 합니다.

I exercise everyday.

I play soccer everyday.

I play tennis everyday.

I play basketball everyday.

I play baseball everyday.
6. 저는 매일 배구를 합니다. 
   I play volleyball everyday.
7. 저는 매일 탁구를 합니다. 
   I play table tennis everyday.
8. 저는 매일 농구를 합니다. 
   I play football everyday.
9. 저는 매일 골프를 합니다. 
   I play golf everyday.
10. 저는 매일 스케이팅을 합니다. 
    I skate everyday.
11. 저는 매일 수영을 합니다. 
    I swim everyday.
12. 저는 매일 배신을 합니다. 
    I box everyday.
13. 저는 매일 낚시를 합니다. 
    I do fishing everyday.

설니마
14. 저는 매일 탁구를 합니다. 
    [he] hits I play pinpong everyday.
15. 저는 매일 첨구를 합니다. 
    I play tennis everyday.
16. 저는 매일 골프를 합니다. 
    I play golf everyday.
17. 저는 매일 피아노를 합니다. 
    I play piano everyday.
18. 저는 매일 타이타를 합니다. 
    I type everyday.

말니마
19. 저는 매일 스케이트를 합니다. 
    [he] rides I skate everyday.
20. 저는 매일 스키를 합니다. 
    I ski everyday.
21. 저는 매일 모바일을 합니다. 
    I ride sled everyday.
22. 저는 매일 보트를 합니다. 
    I go boating everyday.
NOTES ON THE BASIC DIALOGUE

(Numbers correspond to the sentence numbers.)

1. (아이구,) 웨 일이심니까? ('Oh, gee, what's up?') is often used as a kind of informal greeting when you run into someone familiar to you unexpectedly.

3. The pattern -고 놀라서 싶다 ('... and I was surprised.') is a fixed expression just like the English equivalent 'I was surprised to (hear, see, know, etc.).

4. 혼히 배주신 덧붙이에 ('at the favor of your worrying for me') is an idiomatic adverbial phrase before a final sentence such as 'I'm doing fine.', 'I'm very well.', etc. and occurs as a response to someone's question.

나는 'to be better' is the irregular one-word synonym of 더 좋다. It is also used in the meaning of 'to feel better'.

5. 교통 사고가 있었습니다?' is the contraction of 교통 사고가 있었단고 하지요? ('They say there was a traffic accident, is that right?'). Thus, the sentence final form -다고요? occurs for confirmation on what the speaker knows about and is translated as '..., is that true?'.

6. 부끄럽습니다 'I feel ashamed.' or 'I am embarrassed' and 부끄러워 하지요? 'Do you feel ashamed?' are used only for the speaker and addressee respectively. For other than the speaker and addressee 부끄러워 하지 is used to mean 'to be shy', 'to be bashful' of which a synonymous verb phrase is 손길이 하지.

우리 딸은 뭐 부끄러워 하지 않나요. 'My daughter is quite shy.'

여기에서 부끄러워 하지 마십시오. 'Don't be bashful here!'

7. Two idiomatic expressions 손해를 입다 ('to wear a loss') and 손해를 보다 ('to see a loss') are synonymous and are normally translated as 'to have a loss'. 손해입에다 ('to have [someone] wear a loss') is translated as 'to give a loss', 'to cause damage'.

275
10. -었/을 뻔 것이다 'only (or just) is/does' (See Grammar Note 2).
-었/을 뻔 것이다 'almost did...' (See Grammar Note 1).

GRAMMAR NOTES

1. -었/을 뻔 것이다 'almost did...

The pattern -었/을 뻔 것이다 (i.e. the prospective form -었/을 뻔 + dependent noun 뻔 + 하다 in a past tense) occurs to denote the subject or topic of the sentence 'almost did something', 'almost was in such-and-such state'. The verb in the -었/을 form is usually an action verb.

Vice-President Humphrey almost became President.

If Consul Kim hadn't called me, I could have almost forgotten the appointment.

I almost had a traffic accident this morning.

2. -었/을 뻔 것이다 'only is/does...', 'only thing [one does] is such-and-such'

The pattern -었/을 뻔 것이다 (i.e. the prospective form -었/을 뻔 + dependent noun 뻔 + the copula 것이다) denotes that the subject or topic of the clause ending in -었/을 뻔 것이다 only is/does such-and-such or only thing [he] does/is is such-and-such but not more than or nothing else beyond the action or description of the verb in the -었/을 form, which may be either an action verb or a description verb. Note, however, that the pattern -었/을 뻔 것이다 means 'only thing [someone] did was such-and-such', and that the pattern -었/을 뻔 것이다 means 'only was (or was doing) such-and-such'.

Observe the following:

(a)

나는 그의 얼굴을 좀 알 뻔 입니다. 'I know his face only just a little.'

날마다 공부에 다닙 뻔 이래요. 'Every day the only thing I do is to go to school.'

276
The only thing about Korean is that it's difficult.

No matter how much [I] sleep, I just go on being sleepy.

I met her once, that's all.

The only thing I bought was this expensive book, that's all.

I was only in love with her; we did not quite go as far as marriage.

General Choi said nothing else except only that.

Even though I was next to her, the only people she talked with were other men.

So, I felt just a little bid bad.

The only thing he does is eating.

The child cries all the time.

('The only thing the child does is crying.')

Don't just buy books.

The noun 정도 'degree', 'standard', is used figuratively. 어노 정도(로) is a phrase used as an adverbial, meaning 'to some extent', 'in some degree'.
The pattern -았/었 정도이다 means 'to be as ~ as', 'to the extent of doing something', and the pattern -았/었 정도는/가 아니라 'to be not as ~ as', 'not to the extent of doing something' is the negative expression of -았/었 정도이다.

그의 병세는 입원할 정도입니까? 'Is his (sick) condition so serious as to be hospitalized?'

사랑을 하지 않아 아직 결혼할 정도는 아닙니다. 'I love [her] but not yet to the extent of marrying [her].'

봉급이 많지는 않아도, 그것으로 우리 가족이 살 정도입니다. 'Even though [my] pay is not very much, it's sufficient for my family to live on.'

Note that -았/었 정도로 which may be followed by a pause before another inflected expression occurs as an adverbial clause and is again translated as 'to the extent of doing...', 'to the extent that [one does something].'

내가 결혼하고 싶을 정도로 좋아 하는 여자는 아닙니다. 'She is not a woman whom I like well enough that I want to marry her.'

배가 부를 정도로 그것을 먹고 싶지 않아요. 'I don't want to eat it so much of that as to get full.'
1. Substitution Drill

1. I was surprised to hear that our Department Chief was hospitalized.

2. I was surprised to hear that Mr. Kim passed away.

3. I was surprised to hear that Mr. James had become a charge d'affaires (Minister).

4. I was surprised to read that there was a fire in the vicinity of my parents' home.

5. I was surprised to hear that World War II was over.

6. I was surprised to receive a long distance call from my friend.

7. I was surprised when I saw his facial appearance.

8. I was surprised when I listened to the broadcast that many people had died in a traffic accident.

9. I was surprised when I read in an article that cancer could be cured.

10. I was surprised to hear the news that the child had died of flu.
UNIT 33

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

2. Transformation Drill

I heard that our Department Chief was in the hospital.
I was surprised to hear that our Department Chief was in the hospital.
I heard that the Ambassador was sick.
I was surprised to hear that the Ambassador was ill.
I heard that Mr. Kim hurt himself in an auto accident.
I was surprised to hear that Mr. Kim hurt himself in an auto accident.
I heard that he got sick.
I was surprised to hear that he got sick.
I read an article which said that the President had an eye operation.
I was surprised to read an article which said that the President had an eye operation.
I hear that things are expensive in Seoul.
I was surprised to hear that things are expensive in Seoul.
I read an article which said that the Government had reduced the budget.
I was surprised to read an article which said that the Government had reduced the budget.
I heard that he got sick.
I was surprised to hear that he got sick.
I heard that she is marrying an old ('aged') man.
I was surprised to hear that she is marrying an old man.
9. 감에서 엽날 친구를 만났습니다.
감에서 엽날 친구를 보고 놀랐습니다.

10. 제임스 선생이 한국 말하는 것을 들었습니다.
제임스 선생이 한국 말하는 것을 듣고 놀랐습니다.

3. Substitution Drill

1. 엽력해 주신 독분에 많이 납졌습니다.
I'm much better, thank you.

2. 엽력해 주신 독분에 일이 잘 됐습니다.
Things went well, thank you.

3. 엽력해 주신 독분에 시험에 합격했습니다.
[I] passed the exam, thank you.

4. 엽력해 주신 독분에 무사히 도착했습니다.
[I] have arrived safely, thank you.

5. 엽력해 주신 독분에 성공했습니다.
[I] have been successful, thank you.

6. 엽력해 주신 독분에 벌써 회복했습니다.
[I] have recovered quickly, thank you.

7. 엽력해 주신 독분에 감기기 다 나왔습니다.
[I] have gotten rid of the cold completely, thank you. ('The cold has been all cured.')

4. Transformation Drill

선생: 교통 사고가 있었습니다고 하지요?
I hear that there was a traffic accident. Is that right?

학생: 교통 사고가 있었습니다고 하지요?

1. 한국의 겨울이 춥다고 하지요?
I hear that Korea's winter is cold. Is that right?

학생: 한국의 겨울이 춥다고 하지요?
2. I hear that Mrs. Park (honored) has caught a cold. Is that right?

3. I hear that he has to have an operation. Is that right?

4. I hear that [we] get flu injections tomorrow. Is that right?

5. I hear that Chairman Kim died of heart disease. Is that right?

6. I hear that your daughter is in bed with the flu. Is that right?

7. I hear that if you exercise every day you will become healthy. Is that right?

8. I hear that Dr. Kim is an expert in stomach diseases. Is that right?

9. I hear that he has a cold with fever and a cough. Is that right?

10. I hear that cancer is hard to cure. Is that right?

5. Response-Expansion Drill (based on Grammar Note 1)

선생: 어제 사고가 난어요?

학생: 아니오, 사고는 안 있었지만 거의 날 범했습니다.

Was there an accident yesterday?

No, there was no accident but there almost was one.
1. 아침에 버스를 놓쳤어요?
아니요, 버스를 놓치지는 않았지만 거의
놓침 벌 했습니다.

2. 버스와 승용차가 충돌했어요?
아니요, 충돌하지는 않았지만 거의 충돌할
뻔 했습니다.

3. 그는 자동차 사고를 뛰어요?
아니요, 사고를 내지는 않았지만 거의
ㄴ날 벌 했습니다.

4. 어제 학교에 늦었어요?
아니요, 늦지지 않았지만 거의 늦을
뻔 했습니다.

5. 그 건물에 화재가 난어요?
아니요, 화재가 난지는 않았지만 거의
ㄴ날 벌 했습니다.

6. 그 두 나라 사이에 전쟁이 일어났어요?
아니요, 전쟁이 일어난지는 않았지만
 거의 일어 낼 뻔 했습니다.

6. Response-Transformation Drill (based on Grammar Note 2)

선생: 손만 망치었어요?

1. 아이가 아니면 있어요?

학생: 아니, 아이가 아니면 있을 뻔입니다.

2. 선생은 학교에서 일어나 가르쳐요?

학생: 아니, 저는 일어나 가르들이 뻔입니다.

Did you miss the bus in the morning?
No, I didn't miss the bus but I almost
missed it.

Did the bus collide with the passenger
car?
No, it didn't collide but it almost did.

Did he cause an automobile accident?
No, he didn't cause an accident but
he almost did.

Were you late for school yesterday?
No, I was not late but I almost was.

Was there a fire in that building?
No, there wasn't a fire but there
almost was one.

Did a war occur between those two
countries?
No, there was no war but one almost
broke out.

Did you hurt only your hand?
Yes, I hurt only my hand.

Do you have only one child?
Yes, I have only one child.

Do you teach only English?
Yes, I'm teaching only English.
UNIT 33

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

3. 아이가 소고기만 좋아요?
   예, 아이가 소고기만 좋아합니다.
   Does your child like only beef?
   Yes, my child likes only beef.

4. 그분의 생각을 들었어요?
   예, 그분의 생각을 들었습니다.
   Did you hear just his name?
   Yes, I heard only his name.

5. 대통령 비서만 만나 쌓어요?
   예, 대통령 비서만 만났습니다.
   Did you see only the President's secretary?
   Yes, I met only the President's secretary.

6. 선생은 한글만 읽을 수 있어요?
   예, 선생은 한글만 읽을 수 있습니다.
   Can you read only Hankil?
   Yes, I can read only Hankil.

7. 그분은 소학교만 나왔어요?
   예, 그분은 소학교만 나왔습니다.
   Did he finish only grade school?
   Yes, he finished only grade school.

7. Response Drill (based on Grammar Note 3)

선생: 엽원해야 합니와?
위생: 아니요, 엽원할 정도는 아닙니다.

1. 자투 배(서) 축 깨운가?
   아니요, 자투 배(서) 축을 했도 안됩니다.
   Are you bored to death?
   No, I'm not so bored I could die.

2. 수술 해야 합니와?
   아니요, 수술할 정도는 아닙니다.
   Do you have to have an operation?
   No, I'm not so sick as to need an operation.

3. 병원에 가야 합니와?
   아니요, 병원에 가야 할 정도는 아닙니다.
   Do you have to go to the hospital?
   No, I'm not so sick as to have to go to the hospital.

4. 집에서 누워 있어야 합니와?
   아니요, 집에서 누워 있어야 할 정도는 아닙니다.
   Do you have to be in bed at home?
   No, I'm not so sick as to have to stay at home.
5. 외침이 성공이라고 할 수 있을지라?
   아니오, 외침이 성공이라고 할 수 있을 정도는 아닙니다.

6. 주사주 맞아야 할까요?
   아니오, 주사주 맞을 정도는 아닙니다.

8. Response Drill

선생: 한국 말을 아세요?
학생: 아니, 어느 정도 하지만요.

1. 그 일이 어렵지요?
   아니, 어느 정도 어렵지요.

2. 그 신문 기사를 믿으세요?
   아니, 어느 정도 믿지요.

3. 그분의 말씀이 사실이라고 생각해요?
   아니, 어느 정도 사실이라고 생각하지요.

4. 서울 시내에 도둑 사건이 많아요?
   아니, 어느 정도 도둑 사건이 많지요.

5. 여자 친구에게 자주 봉지하세요?
   아니, 어느 정도 자주 봉지하지요.

6. 시내 교통이 번잡해서 운전하기가 곤란해요?
   아니, 어느 정도 운전하기가 곤란하지요.

Can you say the talks are successful?
No, the talks cannot be said to be as successful as they should be.

Do you have to get a shot?
No, I'm not as sick as to have to get a shot.

Do you speak Korean?
Yes, I do to some extent ('in some degree').

Is that job difficult?
Yes, it's somewhat difficult.

Do you believe that newspaper article?
Yes, I believe it to a degree.

Do you think what he says is true?
Yes, I think what he says is right to some extent.

Are there many robbery incidents in downtown Seoul?
Yes, there are quite a few.

Do you often write to your girl friend?
Yes, I write her quite often.

Is it difficult to drive because of the traffic jams downtown?
Yes, it's somewhat difficult to drive.
Supplementary Dialogue for Comprehension

성자: 바쁘신데 어떻게 오셨을지가?

문부관: 일찍이가든 삽심을 드고 늦었습니다. 그래, 기분은 출
어땠습니까?

성자: 이제는 많이 좋아졌습니다. 손석도 잘 뒤고 운동도 좀
할 수 있게 되었습니다.

문부관: 의사의 말이 숙소 결과가 좋다고요.

성자: 에, 여기서 일기 밖에 주신 뒷부 등 수술이 잘 되었습니다.
그런데 의사에는 별일 없습니까?

문부관: 에, 의사님은 일기 마시고 몸 막으나 잘 하십시오.

성자: 고맙습니다. 의사의 말에 의하면 도매는 되원할 수 있다는군요.
아마 긍정은 의사에 충근할 수 있겠지요.

문부관: 그림, 밥이 들어가기 바빠냐 오늘은 이간 가 보겠습니다.
몸 조미 잘 하십시오.

성자: 바쁘신데 이렇게 찾아 주셔서 고맙습니다. 인상이 가셔요.

Narrative for Comprehension and Reading

길 과장님이 교통 사고로 병원에 입원했습니다. 저쪽 차의 손건수 가
승을 마시고 부주의하게 운전해서 길 과장 차와 충돌했습니다. 마침희
길 과장은 많이 다치지 않았지만 자신차는 손해를 많이 입었습니다.
의사가 진찰을 한 후에 수술을 해야 한다고 말했습니다. 막하던 수술이
아니어도 수술이 빨리 달랐습니다. 저쪽 운전수도 짜증 좀 당하지만
입원할 필요는 아니었습니다.
EXERCISES

A. Make up short dialogues so that each of the following patterns is used three times:

1. -(으)로 왔습니다  
2. -(으)로 빨래셨습니다  
3. -(으)로 빌었습니다  
4. -(으)로 합니까  
5. -(으)로 정도는 아닙니다  
6. -(으)로 정도입니다  
7. -(으)로 정도입니다  
8. -(으)로 정도입니다  
9. -(으)로 정도입니다  
10. -(으)로 정도입니다

B. You came to see Dr. Yoon at the City Medical Center. Tell the nurse:

1. that you hurt your hand when your car collided with another car.  
2. that a little damage was done to your car but it was not serious.  
3. that you caught a cold last weekend.  
4. that you had a shot and you feel better.  
5. that you're still receiving medical treatment and that you have been (lied down) in bed until now.  
6. that you have a temperature and constantly cough.  
7. that your wife is healthy but you are sickly.  
8. that your sister had an eye operation and she recovered quickly.
UNIT 34. Invitation

BASIC DIALOGUE

부모님
the coming weekend
any special plan

Do you have any special plans this weekend, Mr. Choe?

외인
[I] make a plan

No, I haven't any plans, yet. Why?

부모님
(special thing to do)

I wonder if you can come

If you don't have anything special to do, I wonder if you'd like to come to my house.

[I]'m close; [I]'m intimate

a close friend

my wife

Some of my close friends are coming, so my wife is going to prepare dinner. ('...she says she'll prepare dinner."

I hope [you] can come

I hope you can come, too, with your wife.
KOREAN BASIC COURSE

UNIT 34

제 인수

고마운 말씀

처가

처가 집

가고 없습니다

바야야

I'm grateful; (thankful words)

wife's family; wife's parents

wife's parents' home

[she]'s gone

only at night

6. 그저 잠에 꾸며 말씀드립니다. 그래도, 저는 어제 저녁에 가고 있지 않는데, 일요일 밥에야 줄어 들었습니다.

Well, that's very nice. But my wife has gone to her parents' and she won't be back until Sunday night. (‘...and it seems she will probably be coming back only on Sunday night.’)

부모스

부인이 없이

부인이 없이라도

7. 그럼, 부인이 없이라도 온가요?

Well, can you come alone (even without your wife), then?

8. 아마 여러 친구들을 만날 기회가 되겠네요.

You will meet some of my friends. I'm sure you'll enjoy it. (‗It will be a good chance to meet some of my friends.‘)

최 인수

9. 고맙습니다. 그럼에 하지요.

Thank you. I'll be there.

부모스

10. 그럼, 오는 토요일 저녁 6시점 요시요.

Well, I'll be expecting you at 6 in the evening, this coming Saturday, then. That's August 16th.

그날이 8월 16일입니다.

By the way, do you know my address?

11. 그럼에, 제 주소를 알지요?

sometime ago; once

exactly; for sure; certainly

remembrance; memorization
기억합니까
기억하고 있지 않습니다.

12. 선생님의 일레가 한번 말씀해 주셨지만 외실이 기억하고 있지 않습니다.

[1] remember; [I] memorize
[1] don't remember; [it]'s not in my memory
You told me once, but I can't remember it exactly.

부록

용산구
한남동

13. 주소는 (서울 특별시) 용산구 한남동 372의 10번지이고, 전화 번호는 734-3947입니다.

나중
이웃
이웃 사람
외도

14. 내가 나중에 우미 집 약의 약을 그막 드리지요.

노마리
마중 (나) 까니다

15. 그러니, 흔히 집 창기가 곤난하면 한남동 노마리에서 진짜해 주시면 (내가)

마중 나가겠습니다.

[1] go out to meet [you]

However, if you have trouble finding my house, give me a ring at the Hannam-Dong Circle. I'll come to meet you, then.

최 인수

지미
서랍 넣다

16. 제가 서울 밖의 지미는 서류트지만 한남동쪽 지미는 외숙 아니거나 집 화기 문제 없을 것입니다.

[1] I'm not good at
[1] I'm good at; [I]'m familiar with
I don't know my way around outside of Seoul, but I'm familiar with the Hannam-Dong area, so finding your house will be no problem.
1. Particle 염/이르다

Go back to Unit 18, Grammar Notes 5, and review particle 염/이르다.

2. Interrogative nominal expression + 가 + Negation 'is/does not... any...'

A negation preceded by an interrogative nominal expression + 가 means 'is/does not... any...', 'no... is/does'. Examples:

Nobody knows me.

I won't buy anything.

I don't want anything now.

Don't you want any book?

I don't love any girl.

I don't want to eat any food.

3. -(으)면 합니다

The pattern -(으)면 하십시오('If I did/was... it would be good.') previously occurred (Unit 10, Grammar Note 1) to express the speaker's wish or desire. The construction, the -(으)면 form which may or may not be in a past tense immediately followed by 하십시오 without a pause, also is used to express the speaker's wish or desire. Thus, -(으)면 하십시오 can be substituted by -(으)면 하십시오.

I'd like to have a cup of coffee.

I wish I had a cup of coffee.

I would like to see you tonight if you have time.
4. Particles and Particle 야/이야

In Unit 11, we noticed that the particle 야 occurs after an infinitive form. 야 is one of four particles in Korean which occur after a class of certain inflected forms. Three other such particles are 사 (Unit 14), 도 (Unit 10) and 에 (Sentence Particle, Unit 4). All of the four particles occur typically after infinitive forms of verbs but they also occur after certain other inflected forms of verbs. All other particles occur after nominals or after other particles which may form adverbials with the preceding nominals. Since most particles occur in post-positions after major form classes, namely nouns, they are often called POST-POSITIONS.

야/이야 is a two-shape particle which is added to a nominal or an adverbial: 야 occurs after a word which ends in a vowel; 이야 after a word which ends in a consonant. It is used in the following meanings:

(a) A Nominal + 야/이야 'as far as the Nominal is concerned', 'at least (as for) the Nominal'

외교관은 외국어 학나야 해야 되요. 'Diplomats must speak at least one foreign language.'

돈이야 있지도, 그것이 모든 것이 아니지요. 'He has some money at least, but that's not everything.'

봉급이야 그건 나쁘지 않아요. 'As far as the salary is concerned, it's not too bad.'

(b) An Adverbial + 야/이야 'only the Adverbial', 'at least the Adverbial', 'nothing but the Adverbial'

오늘 야 처음으로 그 사실을 알게 되었어요. 'I came to know that fact for the first time only today.'

한국 밖에 초급이야 학하지요. 그치나... 'I can speak Korean at least some, but...' 

그가 밤 일루시 집에 앉아 앉아요. 'He didn't come home until 12:10 in the midnight.'

돈으로 야 그것을 살 수 있겠지요? 'You can buy it at least with money, can't you?'

5. The Korean equivalents of 'without a Nominal' and 'without (or instead of) doing something'

292
(a) N 없이 'without N'

A Nominal + 없이 which may be followed by a pause before another inflected expression means 'without the Nominal' and is used as an adverbial.

돈 없이 어떻게 그 차를 사요? 'How can you buy that car without money?'

그저, 할 일 없이 앉여 있습니다. 'I'm just sitting without any work to do.'

(b) -지 않+ and -지 말+ 'without (or instead of) doing something'

The construction -지 않+ and -지 말+ which may be followed by a pause occur before another inflected expression. The -지 form of an action verb + 말 which literally means ('does not and...') before another inflected expression is translated as 'without doing...', 'instead of doing...', and is used in a statement or a question sentence; the -지 form of an action verb + 말 which literally means ('please do not and...') before another inflected expression occurs in the same meaning as -지 말+ in a propositative or an imperative sentence.

(a)

'I decided to study Korean without (or instead of) learning Chinese.'

'I want to be a scholar instead of becoming a politician.'

'You've come to work without having breakfast?'

'So, what did you do at night when you didn't sleep?'

(b)

'Let's see Korean movies today instead of (seeing) American movies.'

'Don't watch T.V. all the time; do some studying (to a child).'

'Try doing a good job without complaining.'
1. Substitution Drill

1. 부순 독일탄 계획이 타도 있습니까?
   Do you have any special plans?

2. 부순 독일탄 일이타도 있습니까?
   Do you have any special work?

3. 부순 독일탄 사의타도 있습니까?
   Do you have any special appointment?

4. 부순 독일탄 가미타도 있습니까?
   Is there any special party?

5. 부순 독일탄 좋은 일이타도 있습니까?
   Is there anything particularly nice?

6. 부순 독일탄 중대한 일이타도 있습니까?
   Do you have any particularly important business?

7. 부순 독일탄 볼 일이타도 있습니까?
   Do you have anything special to take care of?

2. Transformation Drill

선생: 네일 우리 집에 음 수 있습니까?
   Can you come to my house tomorrow?

학생: 네일 우리 집에 음 수 있음턴지요?
   I wonder if you can come to my house tomorrow.

1. 금 장군의 전화 번호를 기억할 수 있습니까?
   Can you remember General Kim's telephone number?

    금 장군의 전화 번호를 기억할 수 있음턴지요?
   I wonder if you can remember General Kim's telephone number.

2. 와트트 그림 읽 수 있습니까?
   Can you draw me a map?

    와트트 그림 읽 수 있음턴지요?
   I wonder if you can draw me a map.

3. 비행장으로 그룹 마중 나갈 수 있습니까?
   Can you go out to the airport to meet him?

    비행장으로 그룹 마중 나갈 수 있음턴지요?
   I wonder if you can go out to the airport to meet him.
4. 한국 사람과 친할 수 있습니까?
   한국 사람과 친할 수 있습니까?

5. 미리 계획을 세울 수 있습니까?
   미리 계획을 세울 수 있습니까?

6. 한국에서 자동차를 산 수 있습니까?
   한국에서 자동차를 산 수 있습니까?

7. 여섯달 공부하면 한국 말을 잘 할 수 있습니까?
   여섯달 공부하면 한국 말을 잘 할 수 있습니까?

8. 좀 늦게 가도 귀하 뜻을 듣 수 있습니까?
   좀 늦게 가도 귀하 뜻을 듣 수 있습니까?

Can you be friendly with Koreans?
I wonder if you can be friendly with Koreans.

Can you plan in advance?
I wonder if you can plan in advance.

Can you buy an automobile in Korea?
I wonder if you can buy an automobile in Korea.

Can you speak Korean well if you study it for six months?
I wonder if you can speak Korean well if you study it for six months.

Can you buy a (theatre) ticket even if you go a little late?
I wonder if you can buy a (theatre) ticket even if you go a little late.

3. Response-Transformation Drill (based on Grammar Note 2, Unit 27)

선택: 친구들이 집에 오겠습니까?

1. 한국에 가겠습니까?
   한국에 가서 도착할 예정이 있어요.

2. 한국 말을 배우겠습니까?
   한국말을 배우기로 했어요.

3. 서울에 도착하면 친구가 마중 나오겠습니까?
   서울에 도착하면 친구가 마중 나오기로 했어요.

4. 시내에서 25마일도 달리겠습니까?
   시내에서 25마일도 달리기로 했어요.

Will [your] friends come to [your] house?
Yes, [my] friends are supposed to come to my house. ('Yes, it has been decided that friends will come to [my] house.')

Will you go to Korea?
Yes, I'm supposed to go to Korea.

Will you study Korean?
Yes, I'm supposed to study Korean.

Will your friend come out to see you when your arriving Seoul?
Yes, my friend is supposed to come out to see me when I arrive in Seoul.

Will you drive at 25 MPH downtown?
Yes, I'm supposed to drive at 25 MPH downtown.
5. Will you move next month?
   Yes, it has been decided that I'll have to move next month.

6. Will you work in the Political Department?
   Yes, it has been decided that I will work in the Political Department.

7. Will the reporters meet the President at 2?
   Yes, the reporters are supposed to meet the President at 2.

4. Transformation Drill (based on Grammar Note 3)

 선생: 네, 내일에 이사 가기로 되어 있어요.
 학생: 네, 내일에 이사 가기로 되어 있어요.

1. I'd like to travel to Europe.
   I wish I could make a lot of money.

2. I would like you to draw me a map of your neighborhood.
   It will be nice when I catch on to the geography of Seoul.

3. It will be nice if I bought a new car.
   I'd like to buy a new car.

4. I wish I could speak Korean well.
   I wish I could get well acquainted with him.

5. [I wish I could make a lot of money.] (It will be nice if I bought a new car.)
7. 한국 말이 좀 쉬웠으면 좋겠네요.
   한국 말이 좀 쉬웠으면 안 됩니다.
   I wish Korean were a little easier.

8. 그분을 만날 기회가 있었으면 좋겠네요.
   그분을 만날 기회가 있었으면 안 됩니다.
   I wish I could have a chance to meet him.

5. Response Drill (based on Grammar Note 1)

선생: 그 영화를 보고 싶어요?

학생: 예, 그 영화를 보고 싶어요.

1. 김 선생을 초대하겠어요?
   예, 김 선생을 초대하겠습니다.

2. 생각 선생이 떠나겠어요?
   예, 생각 선생이 떠나겠어요.

3. 봉급이 올라졌으면 좋겠어요?
   예, 봉급이 올라갔으면 좋겠어요.

4. 사사고 좋은 자동차를 사겠어요?
   예, 사사고 좋은 자동차를 사겠어요.

5. 아이가 아프지 않았으면 좋겠어요?
   예, 아이가 아프지 않았으면 좋겠어요.

6. 이웃 사람들을 친해졌으면 좋겠어요?
   예, 이웃 사람들을 친해졌으면 좋겠어요.

7. 부인도 한국 말을 배우고 싶어 해요?
   예, 아내도 한국 말을 배우겠으면 해요.

Do you want to see that movie?
Yes, I'd like to see that movie.

Will you invite Mr. Kim?
Yes, I'd like to invite Mr. Kim.

Are you going to be an English teacher?
Yes, I'd like to become an English teacher.

Would you like for your pay to be raised?
Yes, I'd like my pay to go up.

Will you buy an inexpensive but nice car?
Yes, I'd like to buy an inexpensive but nice car.

Do you hope your child will not be sick?
Yes, I hope my child will not be sick.

Would you like to be well acquainted with your neighbors?
Yes, I'd like to be well acquainted with my neighbors.

Does your wife also want to study Korean?
Yes, my wife wishes to study Korean, too.
UNIT 34  KOREAN BASIC COURSE

6. Response Drill

선생: 돈을 다 써먹으셨습니까?
학생: 네, 돈을 다 써먹고 싶어요.

1. 오오테 막 пед으셨습니까?
   네, 오오테 막 빨고 싶어요.

2. 물건을 다 팔아버렸습니까?
   네, 물건을 다 팔고 싶어요.

3. 돈을 다 없이 버렸습니까?
   네, 돈을 다 없이 버리고 싶어요.

4. 오오테 잡지들을 다 버렸습니까?
   네, 오오테 잡지들을 다 버리고 싶어요.

5. 고기를 다 먹었습니까?
   네, 고기를 다 먹고 싶어요.

6. 남은 돈을 다 써서입니까?
   네, 남은 돈을 다 써서 버리고 싶어요.

---

Have you spent all your money?

Yes, I have spent all my money (and I'm broke).

Have you drunk all the milk?

Yes, I have drunk up all the milk.

Have you sold all the goods?

Yes, I have sold out all the goods.

Have you lost all your money?

Yes, I have lost all my money (and I don't have any).

Did you throw away all the old magazines?

Yes, I've discarded all the old magazines.

Did you eat all the meat?

Yes, I have eaten up all the meat.

Have you spent all the remaining money?

Yes, I have used up all the remaining money.

---

7. Response Drill (based on Grammar Note 4)

선생: 언제 한국 말공부가 끝났습니까? /표창/
학생: 할릴에야 끝났습니다.

1. 언제 날씨가 더워졌습니까? /표창/
   합심에야 더워집니다.

2. 언제 뜨겁게있겠습니까? /주말/
   주말에야 뜨겁게있습니다.

---

When will your Korean language study be over? [August]

It won't end until August. ('It will be over only in August.')

When will the weather become warm? [July]

It doesn't become warm until July.

When will you have some spare time? [weekend]

I won't have any spare time until the weekend.
3. 언제 한국 말을 잘 할 수 있겠습니까?
/일년 동안 배운 후에/
일년 동안 배운 후에 잘 할 수 있겠습니다.

4. 언제 서울 지역에 익숙해 지겠습니까?
/서울 동안 산 후에/
서울 동안 산 후에 익숙해 지겠습니다.

5. 언제 집을 사겠습니까?
/돈을 벌 후에/
돈을 벌 후에 사겠습니다.

6. 언제 한국에 가겠습니까?
/한국 말을 배운 후에/
한국 말을 배운 후에 가겠습니다.

7. 언제 자동차를 사겠습니까?
/자동차를 찾은 후에/자동차를 찾은 후에 사겠습니다.

8. 언제 집에 가겠습니까?
/수입이 끝난 후에/
수입이 끝난 후에 가겠습니다.

8. Response Drill

선생: 자동차 없이라도 지낼 수 있겠습니까?
학생: 아니요, 자동차 없이도 지낼 수 없어요.

학생: 자동차 없이도 지낼 수 있겠습니까?
선생: 아니요, 자동차 없이도 지낼 수 없어요.

1. 부인이 없이라도 혼자 오겠습니까?

선생: 애, 집 사물 없이도 혼자 가겠어요.
학생: 아니요, 집 사물 없이는 혼자 가지 않겠어요.

선생: Can you live (even) without an automobile?
학생: Yes, I can live (even) without an automobile.
선생: No, I cannot live without a car.

학생: Would you come alone (even) without your wife?
선생: Yes, I'll come alone (even) without my wife.
학생: No, I'll not come alone without my wife.
UNIT 34  
KOREAN BASIC COURSE

2. 미국에서 직장 없이也可 살 수 있습니까?
   예, 미국에서 직장 없이也可 살 수 있습니다.
   아니오, 미국에서 직장 없이는 살 수 없습니다.

3. 사랑 없이也可 결혼하기 어렵습니까?
   예, 사랑 없이也可 결혼하기 어렵습니다.
   아니오, 사랑 없이는 결혼하기 어렵지 않습니다.

4. 왜도 없이也可 집을 찾을 수 있습니까?
   예, 왜도 없이也可 집을 찾을 수 있습니다.
   아니오, 왜도 없이는 집을 찾을 수 없습니다.

5. 교통 교육 없이也可 좋은 일 자리를 얻을 수 있습니다.
   예, 교통 교육 없이也可 좋은 일 자리를 얻을 수 있습니다.
   아니오, 교통 교육 없이는 좋은 일 자리를 얻을 수 없습니다.

6. 주소 없이也可 집을 찾을 수 있습니까?
   예, 주소 없이也可 집을 찾을 수 있습니다.
   아니오, 주소 없이는 집을 찾을 수 없습니다.

9. Response Drill

생생: 그분을 만난 적이 있어요?
환생: 예, 원래가 한번 만난 적이 있어요.

1. 한국 음식이 본 적이 있어요?
   예, 원래가 한번 본 일이 있어요.

2. 그 사건에 대해서 들은 적이 있어요?
   예, 원래가 한번 들은 일이 있어요.
3. 왜 한국에 가 본 적이 있어요?
   예, 한국에 가 본 적이 있어요.

4. 그분이 어떻게 이야기를 들은 적이 있어요?
   예, 한국에 가 본 적이 있어요.

5. 왜 선생님께 한국에 가 본 적이 있어요?
   예, 한국에 가 본 적이 있어요.

6. 그 책을 읽어 본 적이 있어요?
   예, 한국에 가 본 적이 있어요.

7. 그분이 한국을 써 본 적이 있어요?
   예, 한국에 가 본 적이 있어요.

---

10. Substitution Drill

1. 한국에 가 본 것이 확실히 니다.

2. 한국에 가 본 것이 확실히 니다.

3. 한국에 가 본 것이 확실히 니다.

4. 한국에 가 본 것이 확실히 니다.

5. 한국에 가 본 것이 확실히 니다.

6. 한국에 가 본 것이 확실히 니다.

7. 한국에 가 본 것이 확실히 니다.

8. 한국에 가 본 것이 확실히 니다.

It is certain that [I]‘ll go to Korea in August.

There’s no doubt that Korean is difficult.

There’s no doubt that Korea’s winter is cold.

There’s no doubt that curing cancer is hard.

It’s certain that he will become the President.

I’m sure that he cannot remember my name.

I’m sure that he doesn’t know me.

There’s no question that he doesn’t know me.
11. Substitution Drill

1. 저는 워싱턴 지리에 사람입니다. I'm not familiar with Washington's geography.

2. 저는 정치 학문에 사람입니다. I'm not familiar with the field of politics.

3. 저는 미국 문화에 사람입니다. I'm not familiar with American customs.

4. 저는 한국 생활 문화에 사람입니다. I'm not used to the Korean way of life.

5. 저는 음식 만드는 데에 사람입니다. I'm not good at cooking.

6. 저는 음식 만드는 데에 위층합니다. I'm good at cooking.

12. Substitution Drill

1. 그는 수학이 사람입니다. He's not good at mathematics.

2. 그는 한국 말이 사람입니다. His Korean is bad.

3. 그는 영어가 사람입니다. He's not good at English.

4. 그는 일하는 방법이 사람입니다. His method of doing the job is clumsy.

5. 그는 운전이 사람입니다. He's a poor driver.

6. 그는 운전 기술이 사람입니다. He's unskilled in driving.
Supplementary Dialogue for Comprehension

부모: 미소여 길, 내일 저녁에 벌 일 없으면 저의 집에 놀러 오시요.

길: 내일이 무슨 특별한 날인가요?

부모: 아닙니다. 공부에 있는 잘못 친구가 몽 미국으로 떠나기 때문에 하루를 하며고 합니다. 혹시 공부에 개심은 소식을 합시요?

길: 아니요, 성실은 많이 들었지만 아직 한번도 만난 일이 없었습니다.

부모: 그렇, 이것이 좋은 기회가 되겠어요. 내일 저녁에 업서시겠음 부인과 같이 오시지요. 그런데 저의 집 주소는 알지요?

길: 예, 업서가 선생이 주소와 약속을 그저 존 일이 있어요.

선생 때 부군의 지미에는 우리야기가 집 찾아 문제 없을 것입니다.

Narrative for Comprehension and Reading

길 선생이 부모 선생에게서 저녁 초대를 받았습니다. 무손 특별한 날은 아니지만 부모 선생이 친한 친구를 위한 파티이었습니다. 그분은 미국 대학원에서 프로젝트로征收는 소프트웨어성의 곧 미국으로 떠날았습니다. 한국에서 때때로 부인을 멘리고 가지 않으셨습니다. 그분, 이번에 미국의 친구였기 때문에 길 선생에게 그에게 멘리고 짓줍니다. 부모 선생이 왜부터 잘 그저 주었기 때문에 길 선생은 쉽게 집을 찾았습니다.
UNIT 35. Invitation (Continued)

BASIC DIALOGUE

부모스

침

침(이) 들었습니다

1. 아이구, 미스터 최군이 여기 들어 오세요.

침 흘리는 때 들지 않았어요?

최 인수

자세히

아무 문제 없이

2. 결코, 선생이 지도를 자세히 그리고 주셔서

아무 문제 없이 쉽게 찾았습니다.

부모스

이미

이미 주시지요

옷 걸이

3. 자, 코트를 이미 주시지요. 옷 걸이에 걸고

옷으로 들어 갈增长率.

최 인수

천관

천관에다가(가)

4. 예, 감사합니다. 신은 여기 천관에다가

몇어 들기요?

304
부트스

한식 집이 아니어서

필요가 없으니까

사랑 필요가 없으니까

5. 아니요. 우리 집은 한식 집이 아니어서, 신을

벗을 필요가 없습니다. 그래도 안방으로

들어 오세요.

(만방에서)

(스미스 선생을 보면서)

부트스

소 개합니다

6. 스미스 선생, 여기 나와 같이 일하시는

의 선생을 소개합니다.

(미스터 최를 보면서)

선교사

기독교

고문(관)

7. 스미스 선생은 선교사로 한국에 왔서 지금은

선교사와 빼앗아 나와 맞은 기독교 신문사에

고문관으로도 일하고십니다.

최 인수

반갑습니다

기법 합니다

라나 빛게 되었습니다

I'm pleased

I'm glad

it turned out that I meet [you]
I'm glad that I [can] meet you

How do you do? I'm glad to meet you.

pride; boasting

praise; compliment

[he] boasts; [he] brags

[he] praises; [he] speaks highly of

I'm happy to meet you. I've heard a lot about you from Mr. Bruce. He boasts about you a lot.

in the future; hereafter

in many ways

(‘I ask your good favor.’)

(You compliment me, sir.) It's my pleasure to know you.
NOTES ON THE BASIC DIALOGUE

(Numbers correspond to the sentence numbers.)

1. 잃어 찾는데 잃지 않았어요? 'Didn't you have any trouble finding the house?' 잃어 찾는데 literally means 'in finding the house' (See Grammar Notes 2). 잃어 is a noun which means 'strength', 'power', 'energy'. (이)들 답 which literally means something like ('power is needed') is an idiomatic expression meaning 'to be difficult'.

식기 (가) 잃어 답니다. 'It is not easy to make a living.' or ('Living is hard.')

그 잃은 잃어 답요. 'That job is difficult.'

잃은 잃 'a hard job ('work which requires strength')'.

Another common idiomatic usage is 잃어 (서) 'to make an effort'.

4. 현관 which is similar to the 'vestibule' in a Western or American style house is available only in modern style houses.

5. 아니면서 in 잃어 잃어 아니면서 'since [it]'s not a Korean style house' is the infinitive of the negative form of the copula, 아니 is not' plus particle, which occurs always as a synonymous expression of 아니기 뭐에 or 아니니 가.

7. 선보 사람들 뿐만 아니야 (나) 'not only [he]'s a missionary but (also) ...' occurs before another inflected expression (Grammar Note 4).

8. 이르게 입어 빠져 되어서 반갑습니다. which literally means something like ('I happened to meet you this way and so I'm glad.') occurs idiomatically as a kind of greeting when you've just met someone for the first time, which is used in the similar situations where you would say 'I'm glad to know you.', 'I'm glad to have met you.', 'I'm happy to have met you.', etc.

9. 자랑하다 'to boast (about)', 'to brag', 'to speak highly of', is a transitive verb, so it precedes a direct object.
UNIT 35  KOREAN BASIC COURSE

10. 알고 또 (어미 가자도) 잡 부탁합니다. which literally means something like ('I request of your good favor (in many ways) in the future.') is said when just introduced (with or without being preceded by 이(여)에게 빌나 빌게 되어서 반갑습니다.) to someone who is in a favorable or respected position from the speaker's point of view.

GRAMMAR NOTES

1. N + 예다(가)

We have seen so far that particle 예 added to a place noun followed by such static verbs as 'to place', 'to leave', 'to exist', 'to live', etc. occurred as a Static Location Particle (See Unit 3, Grammar Notes 2, e) and translated as 'at', 'in', 'on' and so on.

Particle 예다 and its extended construction 예다가 (i.e. 예다 + 가) occurs in the same way but somewhat more emphatic than 예 in the above construction. 가 in 예다가 may be dropped freely in rapid speech without changing the meaning.

(신을 화란에 빨어 들 가요?
신을 화란예다(가) 빨어 들 가요?
'Shall I leave my shoes in the vestibule? ('Shall I take off my shoes and leave them in the vestibule?')

(제품 책상에 두 했으십시오.
제품 책상예다(가) 두 했으십시오.
'I left the book on the table.'

(그물을 던지세요.
그물을 떨 예다(가) 던지세요.
'Please cast the net in(to) the water.'

Note that 예다(가) also occurs just like particle 예 in Grammar Note 1, Unit 25 between two nominals to enumerate the nominals for the succeeding inflected expression.

2. Further Note on - 느든 /눈 예

We learned in Unit 16, Grammar Note 1, that the construction - 느든 /눈 예 which may be followed by a pause occurs before another inflected expression to signify some further explanation or remark in relation to or on the basis of the first action or description of the verb of the - 느든 /눈 form follows in the following inflected expression.
An action verb ending in -었/에+ 있다 followed by no pause before certain other inflected expressions occurs to denote the following inflected expression is a requisite for the action of the verb in the -었/에 form, and is translated as 'in doing something', or 'to do something'.

Did you have any trouble finding the house?

I consume a lot of time in studying.

How much do you pay to live in this apartment?

It took me a lot of time to finish that work.

3. -있/있지 않다 (*there's no need of doing...*), 'does not need to...

The pattern -있/있지 않다 occurs as the Korean equivalent of 'there's a need of doing...'. -있/있지 않다 (*there's no need of doing...*) is the opposite of -있/있지 않다. The pattern -있/있지 않다 occurs as a substitute of -있/있지 않다 in all environments. Examples:

(a)

You need to know Korean if you're going to live in Korea.

I think you need to study some linguistics if you are to teach a language.

Do you think I need to have a car here?

(b)

You don't need to take off your shoes.

I don't need to buy a car because I live near the work.

Look! There's no need you shout (or make noise) like that. or Hey! You don't have to shout that way.
4. **-만 안니 {그}** 'not only... but also...'

The pattern **-만 안니 {그}** which may be followed by a pause before another inflected expression occurs to mean not only someone/something is/does the description or action of the verb in the **-을** form but also [he]/[it] is/does such-and-such of the verb in the following inflected expression.

Mr. Smith not only is a missionary but also works as an advisor for a newspaper.

Mr. Kim not only is enthusiastic about the work but also does it with sincerity.

That word is not only difficult to pronounce but it is also hard to memorize.

Note that the construction, **-만 안니 {그} + -도** , means 'not only -만 안니 but also -도'.

Not only I but also my wife thinks that way, too.

Not only Korea but also many newly independent nations have difficulties due to economic problems.

5. **-곤 하다** 'often (or sometimes) does' and **-곤 했 다** 'used to do', 'sometimes did'

The construction the **-곤** form of an action verb + **하다**, occurs to denote the subject or topic's occasional action at regular intervals in performing the action of the verb in **-곤**. If the verb **하 다** in **-곤 하 다** is in present tense, the pattern is translated as 'often (or sometimes) does... (in regular interval)', and when **하 다** is in a past tense (i.e. **-곤 했 다** ) it is translated as '[he] used to do...', '[he] sometimes did... (in a regular interval)'. Note that **-곤 하 다** is the contraction of **-곤 하 다**.

(a)

Mr. Bruce (often) speaks highly of you, Mr. Choi.
'When summer comes, I often go to the beach to swim.'

'When I have spare time, I stop by tearooms occasionally but I do not always drink tea.'

'I used to take an occasional drink but...'

'Well, I used to meet her regularly until a month ago but now I've changed my mind.'

'When I was young, I sometimes had love affairs.'

'I used to eat Kimchi when I was in the service in Korea.'
UNIT 35  KOREAN BASIC COURSE

DRILLS

1. Substitution Drill

1. 집 찾아서 집 들어서 없었어요?
   Did you have any trouble finding the house? ('Wasn't finding the house difficult?')

2. 운전 배우는 데 집 들어서 없었어요?
   Did you have any trouble learning how to drive?

3. 여행하는 데 집 들어서 없었어요?
   Wasn't your trip difficult?

4. 한국 말 배우는 데 집 들어서 없었어요?
   Did you have a hard time studying Korean?

5. 서울에 이사하는 데 집 들어서 없었어요?
   Wasn't it a chore to move to Seoul?

6. 학교 다니는 데 집 들어서 없었어요?
   Wasn't it hard for you to attend school?

7. 수술하는 데 집 들어서 없었어요?
   Wasn't it difficult to have an operation?

8. 집 고치는 데 집 들어서 없었어요?
   Wasn't it difficult to repair the house?

9. 집 고치는 데 어렵지 않았어요?
   Wasn't it difficult to repair the house?

10. 집 고치는 데 시간이 많이 걸리지 않았어요?
    Didn't it take a lot of time to repair the house?

11. 집 고치는 데 돈이 많이 들지 않았어요?
    Haven't you spent a lot of money in repairing the house?

2. Response-Transformation Drill

선생: 그 사건에 대해서 잘 알고 있어?
   Do you know all about the incident?

학생: 예, 그 사건에 대해서 자세히 알고 있어.
   Yes, I know about the incident in detail.
1. 그 기사를 잘 읽었어요?
   예, 그 기사를 잘 읽었어요.

2. 그분의 이야기를 잘 듣었어요?
   예, 그분의 이야기를 잘 듣었어요.

3. 지도를 잘 그리셨어요?
   예, 지도를 잘 그리셨어요.

4. 그분이 약속을 잘 지켰어요?
   예, 약속을 잘 지켰어요.

5. 박 선생이 문법을 잘 설명했어요?
   예, 박 선생이 문법을 잘 설명했어요.

6. 선생님의 설명을 잘 듣었어요?
   예, 선생님의 설명을 잘 듣었어요.

7. 서울 지도를 잘 알아요?
   예, 서울 지도를 잘 알아요.

Did you read that article well?
Yes, I read the article in detail.

Did you take careful note of what he said?
Yes, I noted what he said in detail.

Did you draw the map well?
Yes, I drew the map in detail.

Did he draw you a good map?
Yes, he drew me a detailed map.

Did Mr. Park explain the grammar well?
Yes, Mr. Park explained the grammar in detail.

Did you listen to the teacher's explanation well?
Yes, I heard every detail of the teacher's explanation.

Do you know Seoul (geography) well?
Yes, I know Seoul (geography) in detail.

3. Response-Transformation Drill

선생: 집 찾아서 빛 틀지 않았어요?
학생: 아니요, 아무 문제 없이 쉽게 찾아서,

1. 전국 밤 배우는데 빛 틀지 않았어요?
   아니요, 아무 문제 없이 쉽게 배웠어요.

2. 운전 배우는데 빛 틀지 않았어요?
   아니요, 아무 문제 없이 쉽게 배웠어요.

3. 일 자리 찾는데 빛 틀지 않았어요?
   아니요, 아무 문제 없이 쉽게 찾아서.

Did you have any trouble finding the house?
No, I found it with no trouble at all.
('No, I found it easily without any problem.')

Wasn't it hard to learn Korean?
No, I learned it with no trouble at all.

Didn't you have any trouble (in) learning how to drive?
No, I learned it (easily) without any trouble.

Wasn't it hard to find a job?
No, I found one with no trouble at all.
4. Response Drill (based on Grammar Note 1)

선생: 신을 친관에 벗어 들까요?

학생: 예, 신을 친관에 벗어 두세요.

1. 옷을 웃음에 걸까요?
   예, 옷을 웃음에 걸으세요.

2. 씨들 좐장에 꽂을까요?
   예, 씨들 좐장에 꽂으세요.

3. 차를 차고에 넣어 들까요?
   예, 차를 차고에 넣어 두세요.

4. 종이를 설랍에 넣어 드리까요?
   예, 종이를 설랍에 넣어 두세요.

5. 포자물을 여기에 벗어 들까요?
   예, 포자물을 여기에 벗어 두세요.

6. 커피에 설탕을 넣은 거야요?
   예, 커피에 설탕을 넣어 주세요.

Wasn't it difficult to repair your car?
No, I fixed it (easily) without any trouble.

Didn't you find teaching Korean difficult?
No, I taught it without any trouble.

Wasn't it hard to get to meet the President?
No, I had no trouble getting to meet him.

Didn't you have to put in a lot of hard practice to write Chinese characters?
No, practising writing was no trouble at all.
5. Transformation Drill (based on Grammar Note 3)

전생: 신을 벗지 않아도 편찮습니다.

학생: 신을 벗는 필요가 없습니다.

1. 지금 떠나지 않아도 편찮습니다.
   지금 떠날 필요가 없습니다.

2. 미리 모으지 않아도 편찮습니다.
   미리 모으는 필요가 없습니다.

3. 그런 것을 자항하지 않아도 편찮습니다.
   그런 것을 자항할 필요가 없습니다.

4. 그분에게 말하지 않아도 편찮습니다.
   그분에게 말할 필요가 없습니다.

5. 그분을 게세 소개하지 않아도 편찮습니다.
   그분을 게세 소개할 필요가 없습니다.

6. 차를 차고에 넣지 않아도 편찮습니다.
   차를 차고에 넣을 필요가 없습니다.

7. 그런 문제가 대해선 걱정하지 않아도 편찮습니다.
   그런 문제가 대해선 걱정할 필요가 없습니다.

You don't have to take off your shoes. ('It's O.K. even if you don't take your shoes off.')
There's no need to take your shoes off.

You don't have to leave now.
There's no need for you to leave now.

You don't have to buy a ticket in advance.
There's no need to buy a ticket in advance.

You don't have to boast about such a thing.
There's no need to boast about such a thing.

You don't have to tell him.
There's no need to tell him.

You don't have to introduce him to me.
There's no need for you to introduce him to me.

You don't have to put the car in the garage.
There's no need to put the car in the garage.

You don't have to worry about such a problem.
There's no need to worry about such a problem.

6. Response-Transformation Drill (based on Grammar Note 3)

전생: 한국 말을 배워야 합니까?

학생: 1. 예, 한국 말을 배울 필요가 있어요.
       2. 아니오, 한국 말을 배울 필요가 없어요.

Do I have to study Korean?
Yes, you need to study Korean.
No, you don't need to study Korean.
1. 정치에 대해서 알아야 합니까?
   예, 정치에 대해서 알 필요가 있어요.
   아니요, 정치에 대해서 알 필요가 없어요.

2. 좋은 자동차를 사야 합니까?
   예, 좋은 자동차를 살 필요가 있어요.
   아니요, 좋은 자동차를 살 필요가 없어요.

3. 다른 사람에게 자기 이름을 소개해야 합니까?
   예, 다른 사람에게 자기 이름을 소개할 필요가 있어요.
   아니요, 다른 사람에게 자기 이름을 소개할 필요가 없어요.

4. 일본 대학교에 다녀야 합니까?
   예, 일본 대학교에 다닐 필요가 있어요.
   아니요, 일본 대학교에 다닐 필요가 없어요.

5. 날마다 메추를 마셔야 합니까?
   예, 날마다 메추를 마실 필요가 있어요.
   아니요, 날마다 메추를 마실 필요가 없어요.

6. 운전 면허증을 받아 두어야 합니까?
   예, 운전 면허증을 받아 두 필요가 있어요.
   아니요, 운전 면허증을 받아 두 필요가 없어요.

7. 소방서의 전화 번호를 적어 두어야 합니까?
   예, 소방서의 전화 번호를 적어 두 필요가 있어요.
   아니요, 소방서의 전화 번호를 적어 두 필요가 없어요.

Do I have to know about politics?
   Yes, you need to know about politics.
   No, you don't need to know about politics.

Do you have to buy a nice car?
   Yes, I need to buy a nice car.
   No, I don't need to buy a nice car.

Do I have to introduce myself to others?
   Yes, you need to introduce yourself to others.
   No, you don't need to introduce yourself to others.

Do I have to go to a 1st rate university?
   Yes, you need to go to a 1st rate university.
   No, you don't need to go to a 1st rate university.

Do you have to drink beer every day?
   Yes, I need to drink beer every day.
   No, I don't need to drink beer every day.

Do I have to obtain a driver's license?
   Yes, you need to obtain a driver's license.
   No, you don't need to obtain a driver's license.

Do I have to write down the telephone number of the fire station?
   Yes, you need to write down the telephone number of the fire station.
   No, you don't need to write down the telephone number of the fire station.
7. Combination Drill (based on Grammar Note 4)

선행: 오늘은 날씨가 춥습니다. 그리고 또 바람이 불니다.

현행: 오늘은 날씨가 추울 뿐만 아니라 바람도 불니다.

1. 그이는 선교사입니다. 그리고 또 교무관으로 일합니다.
그이는 선교사일 뿐만 아니라 교무관으로도 일합니다.

2. 밖 선생은 영어를 잘 합니다. 그리고 또 프랑스어를 잘 합니다.
바깥 선생은 영어를 잘 할 뿐만 아니라 프랑스어를 잘 합니다.

3. 그 여자는 아름답습니다. 그리고 또 돈도 많습니다.
그 여자는 아름다울 뿐만 아니라 돈도 많습니다.

4. 공부하기가 어렵습니다. 그리고 또 재미도 없습니까.
공부하기가 어렵울 뿐만 아니라 재미도 없습니까.

5. 그 사람은 아이를 자랑합니다. 그리고 또 부인도 자랑합니다.
그 사람은 아이를 자랑할 뿐만 아니라 부인도 자랑합니다.

6. 그분은 교회에 다닙니다. 그리고 또 절에도 갑니다.
그분은 교회에 다닐 뿐만 아니라 절에도 갑니다.

It's cold today. Furthermore, it's windy.

Today it's not only cold but it's windy, too.

He's a missionary. He also works as an advisor.

He's not only a missionary but also works as an advisor.

Mr. Park speaks English well. He also speaks French well.

Mr. Park not only speaks English well but also good French.

That woman is beautiful. Also she has a lot of money.

That woman is not only beautiful but, what's more, she's rich.

It is difficult to study. It's not interesting, either.

Not only is studying difficult but also it is uninteresting.

That man is proud of his child. He's also proud of his wife.

That man is proud not only of his child but also of his wife.

That man attends church. He also goes to the (Buddhist) temple.

He goes not only to a church but also to the (Buddhist) temple.
UNIT 35  KOREAN BASIC COURSE

7. 저는 남동생이 있습니다. 그리고 또 여동생도 있습니다.

저는 남동생이 있을 뿐만 아니라 여동생도 있습니다.

I have a younger brother. And I have a younger sister, too.

I not only have a younger brother but also a younger sister.

8. Expansion-Transformation Drill (based on Grammar Note 4)

선생: 밥 선생이 한국 말을 가르칩니다. /김 선생/

화생: 밥 선생뿐만 아니라 김 선생도 한국 말을 가르칩니다.

Mr. Park teaches Korean. [Mr. Kim]

Not only Mr. Park but also Mr. Kim teaches Korean.

1. 한국 말이 어렵습니다. /일본 말/

한국 말 뿐만 아니라 일본 말도 어렵습니다.

Korean is difficult. [Japanese]

Not only Korean but also Japanese is difficult.

2. 대통령은 훌륭한 정치가 입니다. /경제가/

대통령은 훌륭한 정치가일 뿐만 아니라 경제가입니다.

The President is an outstanding politician. [economist]

The President is not only an outstanding politician but also he is an economist.

3. 그 여자는 미인입니다. /마음도 좋습니다/

그 여자는 미인일 뿐만 아니라 마음도 좋습니다.

She is a beauty. [She’s warm-hearted, too.]

She is not only a beauty but is also warm-hearted.

4. 웨스트턴은 경치가 아름답습니다. /샌프란시스코/

웨스트턴 뿐만 아니라 샌프란시스코도 경치가 아름답습니다.

Washington has beautiful scenery. [San Francisco]

Not only Washington but San Francisco has beautiful scenery.

5. 저는 일본 말을 말합니다. /영어/

저는 일본 말 뿐만 아니라 영어도 말합니다.

I can speak Japanese. [English]

I can speak not only Japanese but also English.

6. 대화에서 정치학을 배웠습니다. /지리학/

대화에서 정치학 뿐만 아니라 지리학도 배웠습니다.

I studied political science in college. [geography]

In college, I studied not only political science but also geography.
7. 그분의 자동차가 비싸시네요. /집/
그분의 자동차 뿐만 아니라 집도 비싸시네요.

His car is expensive. 
Not only his car but also his house is expensive.

8. 한국 밥이 입 드시네요. /시간도 걸립니다/
한국 밥이 입 드 뿐만 아니라 시간도 걸립니다.

Korean is hard. 
[It takes time, too.]

Korean is not only hard but it also takes time.

9. Substitution Drill

1. 만나 벗어서 반갑습니다.
2. 가까이 이사 와서 반갑습니다.
3. 오빠 집에 만나서 반갑습니다.
4. 부모님에게서 편지를 받어서 반갑습니다.
5. 그분을 만나 뵐어서 반갑습니다.
6. 그분을 소개 받어서 반갑습니다.
7. 그분을 소개 받어서 기뻐합니다.

I'm glad to have met you.
I'm glad that [you]'ve moved near (us).
I'm glad to meet you after a long time.
I'm glad to have received a letter from my parents.
I'm glad to have met him.
I'm glad to have been introduced to him.
I'm happy to have been introduced to him.

10. Substitution Drill

1. 그이는 돈이 많은 것을 자랑합니다.
2. 그이는 집이 큰 것을 자랑합니다.
3. 그이는 부인이 자랑합니다.
4. 그이는 자기 자신을 자랑합니다.

He brags about having a lot of money ('He's proud of having a lot of money.')
He boasts about his house's being large.
He's proud of his wife. or He talks about how good his wife is.
He boasts about himself.
5. 그이는 한국말을 잘하는 것을 자랑합니다.

6. 그이는 아이가 공부를 잘하는 것을 자랑합니다.

7. 그이는 딸이 미신을 것의 것을 자랑합니다.

8. 그이는 일을 많이 하는 것을 자랑합니다.

9. 그이는 일을 많이 하는 것을 자랑함으로서

11. Transformation Drill (based on Grammar Note 5)

선생: 부르스 선생이 미스마 최의 자랑을 했어요.

학생: 부르스 선생이 미스마 최의 자랑을 했어요.

1. 서울에 있을 때 한식 집에 갔어요.

2. 전에 그 탕바에 들었어요.

3. 한국 사람을 만나면 한국말 말해요.

4. 어렸을 때 자주 감기에 걸렸어요.

5. 한국 친구에게서 한국풍속에 대해서 이야기 들었어요.

He brags about speaking Korean well.

He boasts about his child's being a good student.

He boasts about his daughter's being a beauty.

He brags about how much work he does.

He is proud of how much work he does.

Mr. Bruce spoke very highly of Mr. Choe.

Mr. Bruce often used to boasts about Mr. Choe.

When I was in Seoul, I went to Korean restaurants.

When I was in Seoul, I used to go Korean restaurants.

I stopped by that tearoom in the past.

I used to stop by that tearoom in the past.

When I met Koreans, I spoke in Korean.

When I met Koreans, I used to speak in Korean.

When I was very young, I frequently caught colds.

When I was very young, I frequently used to catch colds.

I heard about Korean customs from my Korean friends.

I used to hear about Korean customs from my Korean friends.
6. 제가 어렸을 때 아버지 구두를 닦았어요.
   When I was young, I polished my father's shoes.

7. 소학교 때 탈을 때 친구들과 싸웠어요.
   When I was in elementary school, I fought with my friends.

8. 서울에 살 때 한강에서 수영했어요.
   When I was living in Seoul, I used to swim in the Han River.

9. 한국에 살 때 한국 음식을 먹었어요.
   When I was living in Korea, I used to eat Korean food.

12. Response Drill

선생: 선생이 한국말을 잘 하시는군요.

화생: 참, 별 말씀 다 아십니다.

1. 아들아 아버지를 닦어서 뜨끔해 주세요.
   참, 별 말씀 다 아십니다.

2. 선생이 일을 잘 한다고 들었습니다.
   참, 별 말씀 다 아십니다.

3. 부인께서 음식 만드는 것을 배워야 해요.
   참, 별 말씀 다 아십니다.

4. 대사님께서 선생 자방을 많이 찬양합니다.
   참, 별 말씀 다 아십니다.

5. 선생에게서 어려 가짓을 배워야 해요.
   참, 별 말씀 다 아십니다.
Supplementary Dialogue for Comprehension

부르스: 길 선생 임사하시지요. 공부원에 계시는 스미스 선생입니다.
스미스 선생, 여기 나와 같이 일하는 길 선생을 소개합니다.

길: 안녕하십니까? 처음 뵙습니다. 길 첫수입니다. 선생님
성함은 많이 듣었었습니다. 이렇게 만나 뵙게 되어 정말
반갑습니다.

스미스: 부르스 선생에게서 선생에 대해 이야기 많이 들었습니다.
부르스 선생이 길 선생의 청원을 많이 받았습니다.

길: 아이, 참, 별 말씀 마 하십시오. 왜 또 여러 가지로 잘
지도해주십시오.

Narrative for Comprehension and Reading

길 선생은 부르스 선생에게서 스미스 선생을 소개 받었습니다.
스미스 선생은 교사사업 본관 아닙니다. 또 기타교적 신분자로 교육 관으로도
개심합니다. 여러 사람에게서 스미스 선생에 대해서 이야기 들었기 때문에 길
선생은 전부여 스미스 선생을 봄나고 쇠어 했습니다. 스미스 선생은
라랫을 때 길 선생을 이렇게 만나 뵙게 되어 반갑다고 말하고 왜으로
잘 지도해 달라고 부탁했습니다. 스미스 선생도 길 선생을 만나서
기쁘다고 말하고 앞으로 자주 만나기 바란다고 말했습니다.
EXERCISES

A. Invite your colleague, Mr. Kim, to a dinner party, which you are planning to give for your close friends, giving him such information as the time (hour, day of the week, date, month), place (your address), your telephone number, and the company you're expecting, etc.

B. You have invited friends to your home. Mr. and Mrs. Choe just arrived at the door. Welcome and lead them to the living room upstairs and introduce them to the other guests and offer them seats, snacks and cocktails.

C. At a dinner party you've just been introduced to Mr. Yoo, a journalist. Carry out a social conversation with him. The topics may range from his family, school, the recent weather, his work and experiences, and his acquaintance with American and foreign friends, etc.
UNIT 36. Invitation (Continued)

BASIC DIALOGUE

|活動|活動
|---|---
|1. 아침, 밤시 11시가 넘었습니다. 그림, 친구가 돌아갑니다.|Oh, it's already past eleven. I've got to go now.
|재질은 되었습니다.|
|2. 오늘 저녁에 잘 먹고 잘 놀았습니다.|I enjoyed the dinner and had a good time.
|something which [I] prepared|
|without anything that [I] prepared|
|I'm very sorry.|
|Oh, it wasn't anything special, but I'm glad you enjoyed it. ("I'm sorry to have invited you without any preparation.")|

|活動|活動
|---|---
|Not, really! ("What are you talking about?")|
|活動|活動
|---|---
|Anyway, thank you for coming.|Anyway, thank you for coming.

|活動|活動
|---|---
|that you invited me|
|glory; honor|
|I consider it to be an honor|
|It was my great honor to have been invited. ("I deem it to be an honor that you invited me.")|
KOREAN BASIC COURSE

UNIT 36

미사례스 부트스

정의
regret
it's a regret; it's regrettable
I feel sorry
I feel regrettable

문안

문안 드려 주십시오.
문안해 주십시오.

문안에 주십시오.

반의에, 부인께서 오지 못해서
쉬워서 사양을드립니다.

버, I'm sorry your wife couldn't come.

regards
give my regards to [her]

Please give my regards to your wife.
And please be sure to come together next time.

최 인사

9. 물론, 그렇게 하겠습니까. 그럼, 안녕히
주무십시오.

Of course, I will try to do so.
Well, good night.

미사례스 부트스

10. 에, 조금에 가세요. 또 (또나) 오십시오.

Be careful on your way home, and come over again.

최 인사

11. 이에, 저는 먼저 실례합니다.

Well, ladies and gentlemen. Excuse me
for leaving first. Good night.

안녕히 들 계십시오.

325
NOTES ON THE BASIC DIALOGUE

(Numbers correspond to the sentence numbers.)

3. An infinitive + 서 최송합니다 'I'm awfully sorry for having done/been such-and-such.' is much stronger in politeness than an infinitive + 서 미안합니다 'I'm sorry for...'. Thus, the pattern, an infinitive + 서 최송합니다 (or 미안 합니다) which literally means ('... did and so I'm sorry.') is a fixed Korean equivalent expression of the English 'I'm sorry for having done/been...', 'I'm sorry that...'. Note: Koreans are quite apologetic to their dinner or party guests. Even when a lot of food is prepared, the host or hostess will likely say that there is little or nothing to eat, or that nothing to eat is prepared, etc.

4. 죄, 벌 떨어지지 않아 심심합니다. which literally means something like ('Oh, no, you're saying all special words.') is a formal response to someone's undeserved or excessive apology or compliments.

5. The construction, an infinitive + 서 고맙습니다 (or 감사합니다) as in 화 주셔서 고맙습니다. 'Thank you for coming.', is a fixed pattern just like the English equivalent 'Thank you for... [doing something].'.

6. The pattern -yn/는 것을 임금으로 생각합니다 + in 지름 증례에 주신 것을 임금으로 생각합니다. ('I consider it to be an honor that you invited me.') occurs as the equivalent of English 'I'm honored to do...', 'It's [my] pleasure to do...'.

7. 죄집니다 ('It's a regret.') which normally means 'I'm sorry.', 'It's a shame.' is a copula expression (i.e. 죄 + 이다) which occurs as an intransitive expression.

8. 본만 is a noun which means 'personal regards'. A personal Noun + 에게 (본만)주십시오. is an idiomatical expression (본만으로 주십시오.) 'Please give my regards to the personal noun.'
to do...') occurs to mean 'Please be sure to do...'.

11. 

들 '[you] all' is a kind of post-noun which occurs before an inflected expression but is used immediately after nominals or adverbials to denote plurality of the subject or topic of the verbal expression and is translated as 'you all' or 'they all'. The subject or topic in the sentence often are not present but are understood from the context.

다음 어디에 가요?  'Where have they all gone?'

전에 찾을 물건 꺼내겠어요?  'When are you all going to finish the work?'

예, 그럼에 들 아시시요.  'Yes, [you all] do it that way.'

아, 참 잘들 아십니다.  'Oh, you all are doing wonderfully, indeed.'
UNIT 36  KOREAN BASIC COURSE

DRILLS

1. Substitution Drill

1. 엉 한시가 남았습니다.
   It's past eleven o'clock.

2. 학교 길 시간이 남았습니다.
   It's past time to go to school.

3. 학교 평이 막을 남았습니다.
   The Han River has gone over its dike.

4. 길에서 싸돌산을 남았습니다.
   [I] crossed the 38 Parallel on foot.

5. 돈에 평이 남았습니다.
   The water in the jar ran over.

6. 통행 길 시간이 남았습니다.
   It's past the curfew time.

7. 예쁘 산이 남았습니다.
   [He]'s over sixty (years old).

8. 탕크에 까마수가 남았습니다.
   The gas tank ran over.

2. Combination Drill

선생: 별로 준비한 것도 없었습니다. 특례해서
      최종 합니까.
      ('There isn't anything special (prepared);
      I'm awfully sorry to have invited you.')

학생: 별로 준비한 것도 없이 특례해서
      최종 합니까.
      ('I'm awfully sorry to have invited you
      without having prepared anything.')

1. 별로 산 것도 없었습니다. 돈을 다 썼습니다.
   I haven't bought much. I spent all the
   money.

   별로 산 것도 젊이 돈을 다 썼습니다.
   I spent all the money without having
   bought many things.
2. 별로 한 것도 없습니다. 시간이 다 갔습니다.

3. 별로 한 일도 없었습니다. 피곤합니다.

4. 별로 맛은 것도 없습니다. 제사 배가 부릅니다.

5. 그 음식을 먹어 본 일도 없었습니다. 맛이 없따고 합니다.

6. 건좌도 없었습니다. 까마귀 눈부시게 없습니다.

7. 예약도 없었습니다. 식당에 가올까요.

8. 공부한 것도 없습니다. 시험을 냈습니다.

I haven't done much. Time has all gone.
Time has passed without my having done much of anything.
I haven't done much. I'm tired.
I'm tired without having done anything much.
I haven't eaten much. I'm full already.
I'm full already without having eaten much.
He hasn't ever tasted that food. He says it's not tasty.
He says that food is not tasty without having ever tasted it.
He didn't call. Suddenly he came by (to chat or to play).
He came by all of a sudden without giving a call.

3. Substitution Drill

I'm awfully sorry for being late. ('I came late, so I'm awfully sorry.')
I'm awfully sorry that I couldn't keep the appointment.
I'm awfully sorry that I couldn't invite you.
(I'm awfully sorry to have invited you without any preparation.)
I'm awfully sorry that I couldn't help you when you were moving.
I'm awfully sorry for leaving early.

I'm awfully sorry for not having written you.

4. Response Drill

선생: 아역과 같이 한번 가 보십시오.
학생: 예, 아역과 한번 가 보지요.

1. 아역과 한국 밥과 밥을 먹 OnTrigger
예, 아역과 한번 놀러 보지요.

2. 아역과 그분을 한번 초대해 보십시오.
예, 아역과 한번 초대해 보지요.

3. 아역과 한번 그 줄을 배워 보십시오.
예, 아역과 한번 배워 보지요.

4. 아역과 한번 음식을 먹어 봅십시오.
예, 아역과 한번 먹어 보지요.

5. 아역과 그분을 한번 만나 봅십시오.
예, 아역과 한번 만나 보지요.

6. 아역과 한번 대사를 쓰어 갑십시오.
예, 아역과 한번 쓰어 가지요.

7. 아역과 한번 구사자들을 연출하시다.
예, 아역과 한번 연출하시요.
5. Expansion Drill

선생: 와 주셔서 교瞑습니다.

학생: 학여간 와 주셔서 교따히요.

1. 한국 맛이 어색은 것 같습니다.
학생: 학여간 한국 맛이 어색은 것 같어요.

2. 그 영화가 좋습니다.
학생: 학여간 그 영화가 좋어요.

3. 츠테해 주셔서 교망합니다.
학생: 학여간 츠테해 주셔서 교따히요.

4. 저녁 집에서 주무시고 가십시오.
학생: 학여간 저녁 집에서 주무시고 가세요.

5. 술을 마시고 운전하지 마십시오.
학생: 학여간 술을 마시고 운전하지 마세요.

Thank you for coming. ('You came for me, and so I'm grateful.')

Anyway, thank you for coming.

Korean seems to be difficult.

Anyway, Korean seems to be difficult.

That movie is fine.

Anyhow, that movie is fine.

Thank you for inviting me.

Anyway, thank you for inviting me.

You're welcome to spend the night at our house. ('Please sleep in my house and go.')

Anyway, you're welcome to spend the night at our house.

Don't drive after you drink (alcohol).

Anyway, don't drive after you drink.

6. Substitution Drill

1. 저부터 츠테해 주신 것을 영قف으로 생각합니다.

2. 선생에게서 한국 맛을 배운 것을 영قف으로 생각합니다.

3. 이렇게 간다 뭐게 뭐고 것을 영قف으로 생각합니다.

4. 테풍에게서 츠테해 받은 것을 영قف으로 생각합니다.

5. 여기에서 외부 하게 된 것을 영قف으로 생각합니다.

It's my honor to have been invited. ('I consider it to be an honor that you have invited me.')

It's been my privilege to have learned Korean from you.

It's my honor to have met you here (this way).

It's an honor for me to have been invited by the President.

It's my privilege that I can study here.
6. 선생과 같이 일하게 된 것을 영어로 
생가합니다. 
It's an honor for me to work with you.

7. 한국에 가게 된 것을 영어로 생성합니다. 
I'm privileged to be able to go to Korea.

7. Transformation Drill

선생: 부인을 오지 못 해서 안 써움니다.
학생: 부인을 오지 못 해서 죄송합니다.

1. 한국 말을 배울 시간이 없어서 안 써움니다. 
한국 말을 배울 시간이 없어서 죄송합니다.

2. 테이블에 타니지 못 해서 안 써움니다. 
테이블에 타니지 못 해서 죄송합니다.

3. 그분을 만나 빼지 못 해서 안 써움니다. 
그분을 만나 빼지 못 해서 죄송합니다.

4. 좋은 기회를 놓쳐서 안 써움니다. 
좋은 기회를 놓쳐서 죄송합니다.

5. 시험에 실패해서 안 써움니다. 
시험에 실패해서 죄송합니다.

6. 절말을 때 재미(들) 보지 못 해서 안 써움니다. 
절말을 때 재미(들) 보지 못 해서 죄송합니다.

7. 그 집을 사지 못 해서 안 써움니다. 
그 집을 사지 못 해서 죄송합니다.

It's too bad that your wife couldn't come. 
I regret that your wife couldn't come.

It's too bad you don't have time to study Korean. 
I regret that you don't have time to study Korean.

It's too bad that you cannot go to college. 
I'm very sorry that you cannot go to college.

It's too bad that I cannot meet him. 
I regret that I cannot meet him.

It's too bad that you missed a good opportunity. 
I'm very sorry you missed a good opportunity.

It's too bad that you failed the test. 
I'm sorry that you failed the test.

It's too bad you didn't have much fun when you were young. 
I'm sorry that you didn't have fun when you were young.

It's too bad that you couldn't buy that house. 
I regret that you couldn't buy that house.
8. Substitution Drill

1. 부인에게 저의 분안 도와 주십시오.
   Please give my regards to your wife.

2. 주인에게 저의 분안 도와 주십시오.
   Please give my regards to your husband.

3. 김 선생에게 저의 분안 도와 주십시오.
   Please give my regards to Mr. Kim.

4. 아버님에게 저의 분안 도와 주십시오.
   Please give my regards to your father.

5. 부모님에게 저의 분안 도와 주십시오.
   Please give my regards to your parents.

6. 아저씨에게 저의 분안 도와 주십시오.
   Please give my regards to your uncle.

7. 친남에게 저의 분안 도와 주십시오.
   Please give my regards to your (older) brother.

8. 어머님(들)에게 저의 분안 도와 주십시오.
   Please give my regards to everybody.

Supplementary Dialogues for Comprehension

(1)

여주인: 볼로 준 비단 것은 없지만 많이 도와주십시오.

손님: 아이구, 볼 만큼 다 하십시오. 이보따 어릴게 머 준 비단이 없으니까?

여주인: 아이가 많이 어여도 많이 도와주십시오.

손님: 옷식 많이 바탄에요. 가끔 왜서 옷식 바트는 것을 배워야 꼭줍니다.

여주인: 왔, 볼 만큼 다 하십시오. 이 볼로기 좀 더 드시지요?

손님: 아니오, 많이 떼었습니다. 이제 볼로가 볼만(서) 더 떼울 수가 없으십니다.

333
(2)

손님: 벌써 몽골 군의 시간이 거의 되었군요, 이젠 가봐야 겠습니다.

주인: 빨리 준비한 것도 없이 오시라고 애서 편찮습니다. 아역관
     와 주셔서 고맙습니다.

손님: 아니요, 오늘 저녁에 잘 둘고 잘 익혔습니다. 또한, 오늘 먹던 분을
     받아서 채워진 것을 영광으로 생각합니다.

주인: 이제 저녁 집이. 아니가 외우도 자주 늘려 오세요.

손님: 고맙습니다. 그렇게 하지요. 그럼, 안녕히 주무세요.

주인: 그럼, 조심해 가세요.

Narratives for Comprehension and Reading

(1)

한국 사람들은 손님을 초대하면 여לק 가지 음식을 많이 준비합니다.
준비한 음식이 많아도 주인은 항상 준비한 것이 없지만 많이 잡수시하고
말합니다. 미국 여객 사람들들은 미리 준비하지 않고 친구를 봉분하면
실례입니다. 그러나, 한국 사람들이 미리 준비하지 않고 친척이나 친구
친구들을 봉분해도 괜찮습니다. 미국 음식과 한국 음식은 여לק 가지로
다른 점이 있습니다.

EXERCISES

A. You have been the guest at the Parks' tonight, and you're leaving after a wonderful entertainment and good company. What would you say to your host, hostess and other guests who are still staying?

B. Your dinner guest, Prof. Min, who came alone without his wife, is leaving late at night. As a host or hostess, say something to him.

C. Make up short conversations, each of which contains the following expressions:

1. 아프다 문제 없이
2. 음을 빼만 아니라
3. N 없이 바도
4. 고는 못나다
5. 고는 처음이다
6. 음/음, 필요가 없으니까
7. 음/음, 걱정 않으니까
8. (아, 여)서 반갑습니다
9. (아, 여)서 기쁩니다
10. 음/음, 좋아합니다
11. 음/음, 자랑으로 생활합니다
12. (아, 여)서 죄송합니다

335
UNIT 37. Educational System

BASIC DIALOGUE

place of employment
every time [I] go to work
[I] feel
feeling
feeling that there are many students
[I] possess

Every time I go to work in the morning, I get the impression ('I have a feeling' that there are a lot of students in Korea.

Are there so many schools (in Korea) wherever you go?

narrow land
population
nature
naturally
number of students

[there] cannot help but be many

That's right. Since there's a large population in a small area, naturally there have to be many students.

comparison

[he] compares
in comparison with the number of students

[it]'s rather insufficient; [it]'s on the short side

However, I'd say that schools are still insufficient for the number of students.

5. the number of students is rather insufficient; [it] is on the short side

However, I'd say that schools are still insufficient for the number of students.

5. 비(교)에서 부족한 빈입니다

However, I'd say that schools are still insufficient for the number of students.

5. 비(교)에서 부족한 빈입니다

However, I'd say that schools are still insufficient for the number of students.

5. 비(교)에서 부족한 빈입니다

However, I'd say that schools are still insufficient for the number of students.

5. 비(교)에서 부족한 빈입니다

However, I'd say that schools are still insufficient for the number of students.

5. 비(교)에서 부족한 빈입니다

However, I'd say that schools are still insufficient for the number of students.

5. 비(교)에서 부족한 빈입니다

However, I'd say that schools are still insufficient for the number of students.

5. 비(교)에서 부족한 빈입니다

However, I'd say that schools are still insufficient for the number of students.

5. 비(교)에서 부족한 빈입니다

However, I'd say that schools are still insufficient for the number of students.

5. 비(교)에서 부족한 빈입니다

However, I'd say that schools are still insufficient for the number of students.

5. 비(교)에서 부족한 빈입니다

However, I'd say that schools are still insufficient for the number of students.

5. 비(교)에서 부족한 빈입니다

However, I'd say that schools are still insufficient for the number of students.

5. 비(교)에서 부족한 빈입니다

However, I'd say that schools are still insufficient for the number of students.

5. 비(교)에서 부족한 빈입니다

However, I'd say that schools are still insufficient for the number of students.

5. 비(교)에서 부족한 빈입니다

However, I'd say that schools are still insufficient for the number of students.

5. 비(교)에서 부족한 빈입니다

However, I'd say that schools are still insufficient for the number of students.

5. 비(교)에서 부족한 빈입니다

However, I'd say that schools are still insufficient for the number of students.

5. 비(교)에서 부족한 빈입니다

However, I'd say that schools are still insufficient for the number of students.

5. 비(교)에서 부족한 빈입니다

However, I'd say that schools are still insufficient for the number of students.

5. 비(교)에서 부족한 빈입니다

However, I'd say that schools are still insufficient for the number of students.

5. 비(교)에서 부족한 빈입니다

However, I'd say that schools are still insufficient for the number of students.

5. 비(교)에서 부족한 빈입니다

However, I'd say that schools are still insufficient for the number of students.

5. 비(교)에서 부족한 빈입니다

However, I'd say that schools are still insufficient for the number of students.

5. 비(교)에서 부족한 빈입니다

However, I'd say that schools are still insufficient for the number of students.

5. 비(교)에서 부족한 빈입니다

However, I'd say that schools are still insufficient for the number of students.

5. 비(교)에서 부족한 빈입니다

However, I'd say that schools are still insufficient for the number of students.

5. 비(교)에서 부족한 빈입니다

However, I'd say that schools are still insufficient for the number of students.

5. 비(교)에서 부족한 빈입니다

However, I'd say that schools are still insufficient for the number of students.

5. 비(교)에서 부족한 빈입니다

However, I'd say that schools are still insufficient for the number of students.

5. 비(교)에서 부족한 빈입니다

However, I'd say that schools are still insufficient for the number of students.

5. 비(교)에서 부족한 빈입니다

However, I'd say that schools are still insufficient for the number of students.

5. 비(교)에서 부족한 빈입니다

However, I'd say that schools are still insufficient for the number of students.

5. 비(교)에서 부족한 빈입니다

However, I'd say that schools are still insufficient for the number of students.

5. 비(교)에서 부족한 빈입니다

However, I'd say that schools are still insufficient for the number of students.

5. 비(교)에서 부족한 빈입니다

However, I'd say that schools are still insufficient for the number of students.

5. 비(교)에서 부족한 빈입니다

However, I'd say that schools are still insufficient for the number of students.

5. 비(교)에서 부족한 빈입니다

However, I'd say that schools are still insufficient for the number of students.

5. 비(교)에서 부족한 빈입니다

However, I'd say that schools are still insufficient for the number of students.

5. 비(교)에서 부족한 빈입니다

However, I'd say that schools are still insufficient for the number of students.

5. 비(교)에서 부족한 빈입니다

However, I'd say that schools are still insufficient for the number of students.
[he] bears the burden
[it]'s difficult to bear the whole burden

Under the present circumstances, it is hard for the government to bear the whole burden.

Therefore, even if you attend a public school, you still have to pay at least something.

부르스

시민
citizen

국민
people (of a nation)

국민 학교
grade school.

남녀 공학
coeducation

Well, I suppose middle schools are coeducational, like grade schools, aren't they?

길 선생

아닙니다. 남녀 공학은 국민 학교와 대학(교)에서도 힘들다.

No, they're not. Only grade schools and colleges are coeducational.

남학교
boys' school

여학교
girls' school

남녀 학교
[they] divide

남녀 학교로 나뉘어져 있다.
[they] become divided

For the most part, middle and high schools are divided into boys' schools and girls' schools.
NOTES ON THE BASIC DIALOGUE

(Numbers correspond to the sentence numbers.)

1. 


'feeling' is the substantive form based on the verb 

'sense', 'to feel' (See Grammar Note 1).

4.


'number' is a free noun. It also occurs after a class of nouns to form noun phrases which mean 'the number of...'.


'the number of students'


'the number of teachers'


'the number of classrooms'

5.


duty' is distinguished from 

'responsibility'.

6.


to extend' is a transitive verb, so is 

'to postpone', 

to put off'.

11.


'co-education' is a noun phrase which literally means something like 'male-female joint-study'. 

'male' is a derivational noun affix in the following common words: 

'male', 'male student', 'boys' school', 

'husband', 'handsome boy', etc.

'female' is also a derivation noun affix which is initially pronounced and is written as 

and elsewhere. 

'woman, girl, female', 

'girls' school', 

'girl student', 'actress', 

'doctor', 'heroine', 

'beauty', 

'virgin, (unmarried) single bachelor woman', etc.

13.


to divide' is a transitive verb used in basic arithmetic (See Grammar Note 8).
1. The -(으) form

A verb form ending in -(으) is used as a noun. -(으) is added to a verb stem or stem + honorific and/or tense suffix which ends in a vowel; -(으) to a consonant stem. Not like the -ся form (Unit 8) which occurs mostly before descriptive expressions or in certain subject/topic and/or object positions, the -(으) form occurs in certain limited nominal positions as if it were a noun by itself. Only a small class of verbs forms into the -(으) form to serve as a noun and many verbs never occur as the -(으) form. Therefore, any -(으) form which occurs as a nominal will be called a Noun Substantive Form or simply the Substantive. See the following examples of the common substantives.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb Stem</th>
<th>Substantives</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>느끼-</td>
<td>'to feel'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>자-</td>
<td>'to sleep'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>춤-</td>
<td>'to dance'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>움직이-</td>
<td>'to move'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>오-</td>
<td>'to be wrong'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>살-</td>
<td>'to live'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>죽-</td>
<td>'to die'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>젊-</td>
<td>'to be young'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>꿈-</td>
<td>'to dream'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>느끼-</td>
<td>'feeling'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>자-</td>
<td>'sleep'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>춤-</td>
<td>'dancing'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>움직이-</td>
<td>'moving'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>오-</td>
<td>'mistake'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>살-</td>
<td>'life'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>죽-</td>
<td>'death'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>젊-</td>
<td>'youth'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>꿈-</td>
<td>'dream'</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

It is not always correct to form a substantive by adding -(으) to any verb stem. Instead, it is suggested that you try to learn each such substantive as a separate word and see how and where such a form is used. Note that there is a small class of such substantives which occur in idiomatic phrases or expressions.

'그는 놀롭게 잘 춤을 터니다.' ('He is a good dancer.' ('He dances dancing well.'))

'아이가 지주 잘을 잡니다.' ('The child is sleeping now.' ('The child is sleeping a sleep now.'))
I dream every night.' ('I dream a dream every night.')

2. 빛나다 'every time [one] does (something)' which may be followed by a pause before another inflected expression means 'every time [one] does (something)', 'whenever [one] does (something)'. Examples:

'Every time I go to work, I pass by the South Gate.'

'Every time I receive a letter from my mother, I miss my hometown.'

'Every time it rains, I need an umbrella.'

3. Particle 토니/이돈/ 진

Go back to Unit 12, Grammar Notes 4, and review the particle 토니/이돈/진 and also review the particle 나/이나 in connection with 토니/이돈/진 in Grammar Notes 4, Unit 10. Note that the contraction of the particle 토니/이돈/진 is 토/이돈. So, 토니/이돈/진 may be considered as 토/이돈 + 진.

4. 토니 ~ 토니 'whether (does/is) or (does/is)', 'either (does/is) or (does/is)'

~토니 as a verb ending is added to a verb stem or stem + honorific and/or a past tense suffix, and denotes that the speaker makes no selection or discrimination of the action or description of the verbs in 토니 for the following inflected expression. Normally, one 토니 form is followed by another 토니 form before another inflected expression to mean 'whether ~ or', 'either ~ or'.

'Whether you study or play, do as you like.'

'I have to go to work, rain or snow.'

'I need money whether I get married or not.'
An interrogative expression + -든지 means 'no matter + interrogative expression + (one) does/is', 'interrogative... ever [one] does/is', 'regardless of + interrogative... + (one) does/is'.

An interrogative expression + -든지 means 'no matter where [I] go', 'wherever [I] go'

무엇을 하든지

'no matter what [you] do'

어떻게 살든지

'no matter how [you] live'

'whichever way [you] live'

Note that the -든지 form is contracted to -든 in rapid speech. Also note that there is a synonymous ending -가/나 which is used exactly the same way as -든지 in all environments. -가/나(Grammar Note 3) and -든(지) may have the same linguistic relevance but we distinguish them here for our purpose.

5. -있을 수 밖에 없다 'cannot help doing...', 'cannot but do...'

The pattern -있을 수 밖에 없다 occurs as the Korean equivalent of English 'cannot help doing', 'cannot but do'. Another pattern, -지 않으/을 수 있다, is used interchangeably with -있을 수 밖에 없다 in all environments.

Since there's a large population in a narrow space, naturally there have to be ('[there] cannot but be') many students.'

'Since [his] income is small, [he] cannot help living in poverty.'

'Well, yes, I cannot help thinking about marriage now.'

'If you object so firmly, I have no choice but to change my mind, too.'

6. -으면/는 뜻이다

The construction, a descriptive expression or a description verb ending in -으면/는 뜻이다, which literally means something like ('it's on the side of doing/being'), is used to denote tendency in the manner or direction of the description of the verb in the -으면 form.
'He's rather short.'

'I believe that child is rather smart.'

'She looks rather old for her age.'

('She looks rather old compared with her age.')

7. **N**에 비(교)해서 'compared with N'

비(교)하다 'to compare' is a transitive verb. **N**에 **비(교)하다** means 'to compare **N** with N'. The construction, **N**에 **비(교)해서**, which may be followed by a pause before another inflected expression means 'compared with N', 'in comparison with N', and occurs as an adverbial for the following inflected expression.

'He is young for his age.' ('Compared with his age, he is young.')

'Considering their income, I would say that Soulites are well dressed and eat well.' ('Compared with their income, Soulites are rather well dressed and eat well.')

8. **Basic Arithematics**

The key verbs in basic arithmetics are (1) 더하다 (or 가하다) 'to add', (2) 빼다 (or 빼다) 'to deduct' or 'to subtract', (3) 곱하다 (or 곱하다) 'to multiply', 나누다 (or 나누다) 'to divide'. The common patterns which are used with figures for such verbs are as follows:

(1) 오에 삼은 더하다
    'to add 3 to 5'

(2) 꼬에서 삼을 빼다
    'to deduct 3 from 8'

(3) 섬 친에는 사를 곱하다
    'to multiply 17 by 4'

(4) 오실을 오로 나누다
    'to divide 50 by 5'
Examples

(1)

10에 5를 더하면 15가 된다. '10 plus 5 is 15.' ('If you add 5 to 10, [it] becomes 15.')

35에 7을 가하면 42가 된다. '35 plus 7 equals 42.' ('If you add 7 to 35, [it] becomes 42.')

(2)

12에서 2를 빼면 10이 남는다. '12 minus 2 is 10.' ('If you deduct 2 from 10, 10 remains.')

38에서 7을 빼면 31이 남는다. '38 minus 7 equals 31.' ('If you deduct 7 from 38, 31 remains.')

(3)

7에 2를 곱하면 14가 된다. '7 multiplied by 2 is 14.' ('If you multiply 7 by 2, [it] becomes 14.')

8을 3으로 나누면 2가 된다. '8 multiplied by 3 equals 24.'

(4)

12를 6으로 나누면 2가 된다. '12 divided by 6 is 2.' ('If you divide 12 by 6, 2 remains.'

22를 2로 나누면 11을 얻는다. '22 divided by 2 equals 11.' ('If you divide 22 by 2, you get 11.')
DRILLS

1. Response-Transformation Drill

Do you feel that Korean is difficult?
Yes, I have a feeling that Korean is difficult.

Does it seem to you that there are many cars in America?
Yes, it seems to me that there are many cars in America.

Do you feel that Korea's economy is getting better?
Yes, I've a feeling that Korea's economy is getting better.

Do you feel that India's population is too big?
Yes, I feel that India's population is too big.

Do you feel that the college tuition is too expensive?
Yes, I've a feeling that the college tuition is too expensive.

Do you feel that the burden of parenthood is great?
Yes, I've a feeling that the burden of parenthood is great.

Do you feel that there are a lot of auto accidents in the United States?
Yes, I've a feeling that there are a lot of auto accidents in the United States.

Do you feel that transportation in Washington is inconvenient?
Yes, I've a feeling that transportation in Washington is inconvenient.

Do you feel that there are many cars in America?
Yes, it seems to me that there are many cars in America.

Do you feel that the burden of parenthood is great?
Yes, I've a feeling that the burden of parenthood is great.

Do you feel that there are a lot of auto accidents in the United States?
Yes, I've a feeling that there are a lot of auto accidents in the United States.

Do you feel that transportation in Washington is inconvenient?
Yes, I've a feeling that transportation in Washington is inconvenient.
2. Combination Drill (based on Grammar Note 2)

선생: 학교에 갑니다. 학생이 많다는 느낄을

I go to school. I’ve a feeling that there are a lot of students.

학생: 학교에 갑 대마다 학생이 많다는 느낄을

Every time I go to school I’ve a feeling that there are a lot of students.

1. 세분법을 배웁니다. 한국 말이 어렵다는

I learn new grammar rules. I’ve a feeling that Korean is difficult.

느낄을 듯습니다. 세분 법을 배울 때마다 한국 말이 어렵다는

Every time I learn a new grammar rule, I’ve a feeling that Korean is difficult.

2. 비행기를 입습니다. 레미하단느 느낌을

I take an airplane. I’ve a feeling that it’s convenient.

느낄을 듯습니다. 비행기를 할 때마다 레미하단느 느낌을

Every time I fly, I’ve a feeling that it’s convenient.

3. 시내에 갑니다. 교통이 변잡하단느 느낌을

I go downtown. I’ve a feeling that there are traffic jams.

느낄을 듯습니다. 시내에 갑 때마다 교통이 변잡하단느 느낌을

Every time I go downtown, I’ve a feeling that there are traffic jams.

4. 김치를 먹습니다. 맛다는 느낌을 듯습니다.

I eat Kimchi. I’ve a feeling that it’s hot (spicy).

김치를 먹을 때마다 맛한다는 느낌을 듯습니다.

Every time I eat Kimchi, I have a feeling that it’s hot (spicy).

5. 그 여배우를 본다. 아름답다는 느낌을 듯습니다.

I see that actress. I’ve a feeling that she is beautiful.

그 여배우를 본 때마다 아름답다는 느낌을 듯습니다.

Every time I see that actress, I’ve a feeling that she is beautiful.

6. 전쟁 이야기를 듣습니다. 전쟁이 무섭다는

I hear a war story. I’ve a feeling that war is fearful.

느낄을 듯습니다. 전쟁 이야기를 들을 때마다 전쟁이 무섭다는 느낌을 듯습니다.

Every time I hear a war story, I’ve a feeling that war is fearful.
KOREAN BASIC COURSE

UNIT 37

7. 캐딜락 차량을 합니까. 정말 좋다는
   느겁을 갖습니다.
   캐딜락 자동차를 안 떼어내고 정말 좋다는
   느겁을 갖습니다.

I ride in a Cadillac (car). I've a
   feeling that it's very nice.
   Every time I ride in a Cadillac (car),
   I've a feeling that it's very nice.

3. Response-Transformation Drill (based on Grammar Note 4)

선생: 어디에 갈까요?

1. 무엇을 먹을 갈까요?
   무엇을 먹으러 갈까요?

2. 무엇 영화 볼 갈까요?
   무엇 영화 보러 갈까요?

3. 언제 출근할까요?
   언제 출근 할까요?

4. 얼마짜리 양복을 드릴까요?
   얼마짜리 양복을 주고 싶으시죠?

5. 몇시에 만나실까요?
   몇시에 만나서 만나실까요?

6. 이 사과를 몇으로 나눌까요?
   이 사과를 몇으로 나누고 싶으시죠?

7. 누가 전기 값은 부담할까요?
   누가 전기 값은 부담하겠습니까?

Where shall we go?

Anywhere is fine. ('Wherever [we] go
   is fine.')

What shall we eat?

Anything is all right. ('Whatever we
   eat is all right.')

What movies shall we see?

Any movie we see is fine. ('Whatever
   movies we see is fine.')

When shall we go to work?

Any time is fine. ('Whenever we go to
   work is fine.')

What price suit would you like?

Any price suit is all right. ('What-
   ever the price of the suit you give
   me, it's all right.')

What time shall we meet?

Any time (we meet, it) is all right.

Into how many portions shall I divide
   this apple?

However you divide it, it's all right.

Who will pay for the electricity?

Any one can pay for the electricity
   so far as I care. ('Whoever pays the
   electricity, it's all right (with me).')
4. Response-Transformation Drill (based on Grammar Note 4)

Do you want me to go to a public school?
As for whether you go to a public school or not, do as you like.

Do you want me to take the bus?
As for whether you take the bus or not, do as you like.

Do you want me to study Chinese?
As for whether or not you study Chinese, do as you like.

Do you want me to sit down on the ground?
As for whether or not you sit down on the ground, do as you like.

Do you want me to eat Western food?
As for whether you eat Western food or not, do as you like.

Do you want me to compare that book with other books?
As for whether you compare that book with other books or not, do as you like.

Do you want me to practise it again?
Do as you like so far as whether or not you practise it again is concerned.

Do you want me to make a reservation at that restaurant?
As for whether or not you make a reservation, do as you like.

Do you want me to deliver that message to him?
As for whether you tell him or not, do as you like.

센서: 제가 공립 학교에 다니기를 원하세요?
환서: 공립 학교에 다니는지 말든지 마음대로 하세요.

1. 제가 버스를 타기를 원하세요?
버스를 타든지 말든지 마음대로 하세요.

2. 제가 중국 음식을 배우기를 원하세요?
중국 음식을 배우든지 말든지 마음대로 하세요.

3. 제가 땅바닥에 앉기를 원하세요?
땅 바닥에 앉든지 말든지 마음대로 하세요.

4. 제가 양식을 먹기를 원하세요?
양식을 먹든지 말든지 마음대로 하세요.

5. 제가 저 책을 다른 책과 비교해 보기를 원하세요?
저 책을 다른 책과 비교해 보든지 말든지 마음대로 하세요.

6. 제가 그 책을 다시 읽기를 원하세요?
그 책을 다시 읽든지 말든지 마음대로 하세요.

7. 제가 그 식당에 예약하기를 원하세요?
예약하든지 말든지 마음대로 하세요.

8. 제가 그분에게 그 말을 전하기를 원하세요?
그 말을 전하든지 말든지 마음대로 하세요.
5. Transformation Drill (based on Grammar Note 5)

Korean is difficult to Americans.
Korean cannot help but be difficult to Americans.

I have to go to work on time.
I have no choice but to go to work on time.

The parents have to pay the tuition.
It's inevitable that the parents must pay the tuition.

You have to attend school throughout the period of compulsory education.
You have no choice but to attend school during the period of compulsory education.

He got angry.
He could not help getting angry.

He entered the hospital because the disease was serious.
He could not avoid being hospitalized because the disease was serious.

I extended my vacation.
I had no choice but to extend the vacation.

Because private schools required too much money, I have gone to public schools.
Because private schools required too much money, I inevitably had to go to public schools.
6. Combination Drill

한국 말이 어렵습니다. 시간이 오래 걸릴 수 밖에 없어요.

한국 말이 어렵습니까 자연히 시간이 오래 걸릴 수 밖에 없지요.

The number of students is big. The number of schools cannot help but be insufficient.

Since there's a large number of students, naturally it is inevitable that the schools are insufficient.

유업료가 비싸십시오. 학교를 그만둘 수 밖에 없어요.

유업료가 비싸니까 자연히 학교를 그만둘 수 밖에 없지요.

Tuition is expensive. I cannot avoid having to quit school.

지난차 수가 많습니다. 교통 사고가 많을 수 밖에 없어요.

지난차 수가 많으니 자연히 교통 사고가 많을 수 밖에 없지요.

Since there are a lot of automobiles, naturally there cannot help being many auto accidents.

수입이 부족합니다. 생활이 곤란할 수 밖에 없어요.

수입이 부족하니 자연히 생활이 곤란할 수 밖에 없지요.

Income is not enough. Living cannot help being difficult.

고는 부자ぢ담받습니다. 잘 살 수 밖에 없어요.

고는 부자ぢ담니자 잘 살 수 밖에 없지요.

He is diligent. Inevitably he lives well.

Since he is diligent, naturally he cannot help but be well off.

고는 훌륭한 교육을 받았습니다. 좋은 직장을 얻을 수 밖에 없어요.

고는 훌륭한 교육을 받으니 자연히 좋은 직장을 얻을 수 밖에 없지요.

Since he has an excellent education, naturally he cannot but get a good job.

Korean is difficult. It cannot but take a long time.

Since Korean is difficult, naturally it cannot but take a long time.

이수는 부족하니 자연히 생활이 곤란할 수 밖에 없지요.

Since [my] income is not sufficient, naturally living cannot help but be hard.

He has an excellent education. He inevitably must get a good job.

Since he has an excellent education, naturally he cannot but get a good job.
7. Response Drill (based on Grammar Note 6)

선생: 김 박사의 딸이 똑똑합니까?

학생: 예, 똑똑한 편입니다.

1. 한국의 겨울이 춥습니까?

예, 한국의 겨울이 추운 편입니다.

2. 선생의 방은 수업도가 비쌀니까?

예, 우리 방은 수업도가 비싼 편입니다.

3. 공립 학교는 타비가 싫습니까?

예, 공립 학교는 타비가 싫습니다.

4. 의사와 변호사 등이 잘 벌니까?

예, 의사와 변호사 등이 잘 벌습니다.

5. 미국 대학중에 남녀 공학하는 학교가 많습니까?

예, 미국 대학중에 남녀 공학하는 학교가 많은 편입니다.

6. 미국의 영토가 넓습니까?

예, 미국의 영토가 넓은 편입니다.

They do not drive carefully. They inevitably have accidents.

Because they do not drive carefully, naturally they cannot help having accidents.

I slept until late. It was inevitable that I was late for school.

I slept late, so naturally I couldn't help being late.

Is Dr. Kim's daughter smart?

Yes, she's on the bright side.

Is the Korean winter cold?

Yes, the Korean winter is rather cold.

Is the tuition at your school expensive?

Yes, the tuition at our school is rather expensive.

Is the cost of attending public schools cheap?

Yes, the cost of attending public schools is rather inexpensive.

Do doctors and lawyers make a lot of money?

Yes, doctors and lawyers do rather well.

Are there many coeducational schools among the American colleges and universities?

Yes, there’re comparatively many coeducational schools among the American colleges and universities.

Is America's territory large?

Yes, America's territory is rather large.
7. 그분이 젊습니까?

예, 그분이 젊습니다.

Is he young?

Yes, he is rather young.

8. Response-Expansion-Transformation Drill

선생: 학교 수가 부족한 것입니까? /학생 수 /

학생: 예. 학생 수에 비해 학교 수가 부족한 것입니까.

Is the number of schools somewhat insufficient? [number of students]

Yes, compared with the number of students, the number of schools is rather insufficient.

1. 그 아이는 키가 큰 것입니까? /나이/

예, 나이에 비해 그 아이는 키가 큰 것입니까.

Is that child rather tall? [age]

Yes, compared with his age, that child is rather tall.

2. 그 자동차가 비싼 것입니까? /다른 차/

예, 다른 차에 비해 그 자동차가 비싼 것입니까.

Is that car on the expensive side? [other cars]

Yes, compared with other cars, that car is somewhat expensive.

3. 그 시계가 좋은 것입니까? /구체적 상호사/

예, 구체적 상호사에 비해 그 시계가 좋은 것입니까.

Is that watch pretty good? [price]

Yes, compared with the price, that watch is pretty good.

4. 그 집이 넓은 것입니까? /가족 수 /

예, 가족 수에 비해 그 집이 넓은 것입니까.

Is the house rather large? [number of people in the family]

Yes, compared with the number of people in the family, the house is rather big.

5. 선생은 야채를 싸먹는 것입니까? /교기/

예, 교기에 비해 선생은 야채를 싸먹는 것입니까.

Do you not care much for vegetables? [meat]

Yes, compared with meat, I don't care much for vegetables.

6. 그는 생활이 녹앙한 것입니까? /나/

예, 나이에 비해 생활이 녹앙한 것입니까.

Is he ('his living') rather well-to-do? [me]

Yes, compared with me, he is rather well-to-do.

7. 금 선생은 높은 것입니까? /나이/

예, 나이에 비해 금 선생은 높은 것입니까.

Does Mr. Kim look rather old? [age]

Yes, Mr. Kim looks rather old for his age.
8. 미국은 인구가 적은 나라가 니까? 

8. Does the U.S. have a rather small population? (size of land)

Yes, the population of the United States is small for the size of the land.

9. Substitution Drill

1. 그 나라의 정치 상황이 좋지 않습니다.

The political situation of that country is not good.

2. 그 나라의 전기 상황이 좋지 않습니다.

The electric situation in that country is not good.

3. 그 나라의 경제 상황이 좋지 않습니다.

Economic situation of that country is not good.

4. 그 나라의 교육 상황이 좋지 않습니다.

The education situation in that country is not good.

5. 그 나라의 수도 상황이 좋지 않습니다.

The situation of the public water supply system in that country is not good.

6. 그 나라의 수도 상황이 어떻습니까?

How is the (situation of the) public water supply system in that country?

7. 그 나라의 수도 상황이 구름있습니까?

Is the (situation of the) public water supply system all right?

10. Substitution Drill

1. 제가 돈을 내겠습니다.

I'll pay for [it].

2. 제가 학비를 내겠습니다.

I'll pay for the tuition.

3. 제가 수업료를 내겠습니다.

I'll pay for the school expenses.

4. 제가 휴가를 내겠습니다.

I'll make time available for you.

5. 제가 시간을 내겠습니다.
6. 제가 식사할게요.
   I'll treat you.

7. 제가 익히겠습니다.
   I'll get angry.

8. 제가 의뢰를 내주겠습니다.
   I'll come up with an idea.

9. 제가 소문을 내주겠습니다.
   I'll spread a rumor.

11. Response Drill

   선생: 열을 돌고 나눠 준 것을 얼마나 내주신가요? /마신/
   학생: 열을 돌고 나누면 다음입니다.

   1. 열을 돌고 나눠 준 것을 얼마나 내주신가요? /셁/
      열을 돌고 나누면 섹션이 되십시오.
      How much is ten divided by two? [five]
      Ten divided by two is five.

   2. 섹션을 달성으로 나누면 열을 얼마나 내주신가요? /섹션/
      섹션을 달성으로 나누면 섹션입니다.
      How much is six divided by two? [three]
      Six divided by two is three.

   3. 넷에 일곱을 곱하면 열을 얼마나 내주신가요? /스포 엽들에게
      넷에 일곱을 곱하면 소풍 일이 되십시오.
      How much is thirty divided by five? [six]
      Thirty divided by five is six.

   4. 엽들에게 열을 공하하면 열을 얼마나 내주신가요? /יכון/
      엽들에게 열을 공하면 엽니다.
      How much is seven times four? [twenty-eight]
      Seven times four is twenty-eight.

   5. 엽에서 마신을 다비면 열을 얼마나 내주신가요? /마신/
      엽에서 마신을 다비면 마신입니다.
      How much is ten take away five? [five]
      Ten less five is five.

   6. 석에서 소풍을 다비면 열을 얼마나 내주신가요? /석론/
      석에서 소풍을 다비면 석론입니다.
      How much is fifty take away twenty? [thirty]
      Fifty less twenty is thirty.

   7. 일곱에 이쁨을 다비면 열을 얼마나 내주신가요? /일 여섯/
      일곱에 이詹姆을 다비면 일 여섯입니다.
      How much is seven plus nine? [sixteen]
      Seven plus nine is sixteen.
KOREAN BASIC COURSE

UNIT 37

How much is forty plus sixty? [one hundred]

Forty plus sixty is one hundred.

Supplementary Dialogue for Comprehension

부조: 한국의 교육 제도는 미국과 같습니까?

길: 거의 비슷합니다. 한국의 소학교는 6년, 중학교는 3년식 입니다. 그리고 대학교는 4년이지요.

부조: 그럼, 고등학교까지 의무 교육인가요?

길: 아닙니다. 중학교 3년까지 의무 교육입니다. 의무 교육이지만 마지막 미국 의무 교육과 의미가 좀 다르겠습니다.

부조: 어떻게 다릅니까?

길: 미국의 의무 교육 동안은 수업료를 내지 않지만 한국의 경우에는 수업료를 내야 합니다. 물론 책값도.

부조: 공립 학교에서도 수업료를 내야가요?

길: 물론, 공립 학교는 사립 학교보다 수업료가 좀 싸지만 외부 공립 학교에서도 수업료를 내야 합니다.

부조: 중고등 학교는 대개 공립 학교인가요?

길: 한국에서는 소학교는 공립 학교가 많지만 중고등 학교는 거의 사립 학교입니다.
한국의 교육 제도는 미국과 비슷한 점도 있지만 많이 다릅니다. 한국에서 소학교는 6년, 중학교는 3년까지, 고등학교는 4년이고 대학교는 2년입니다. 중학교 3년까지의 교육이지만 한국의 경제 사정으로는 정부가 교육비를 다 부담할 수 없었기 때문에 학생이 수업료를 내야 하고 학업을 마치기 힘들었습니다. 소학교는 매개 공립 학교이며 남녀 공학을 합니다. 그러나, 중학교와 고등학교는 거의 사립 학교입니다. 중학교와 고등학교는 매개 남녀 공학이 아니고 여학교와 남학교로 나뉘며, 매개 남녀 공학입니다.
UNIT 38. Educational System (Continued)

BASIC DIALOGUE

부모스

entrance examination

1. 입학 시험은 대학에 들어갈 때만 붙니가?

Is an entrance examination given only when you enter college?

부모스

college of arts and sciences

2. 중학교 이전은 어느 학교나 다.

Oh, no. You have to take entrance exams for all the schools beyond middle school.

부모스

3. 한국에는 대학이 더 많은데. 미국처럼

It seems there are quite a number of colleges in Korea; are there many colleges of liberal arts and sciences, like in the United States?

부모스

4. 그렇지요. 4년제 대학중에는 문과 대학의

I think so. Among the 4 year colleges there are comparatively many liberal arts and sciences colleges.

부모스

4년제

comparatively

비교적

4. 그림지를. 4년제 대학중에는 문과 대학의

B.A(S.); M.A(S.); Ph. D.

degree

accredited (regular) college

engineering college

law college

(college which specializes in certain fields within a university)
5. However, among the accredited colleges giving bachelor's degrees, there are also the (specialized) colleges (within universities) such as engineering, law, etc.

6. Do the students have 4 years of general studies before they enter medical school or dental school?

7. No. Only medical schools are 6 years. So, after a student finishes 2 years of premed, he can enter the 4 year (regular) medical course.

8. If you (have to) take an entrance exam when you go to college, naturally, depending on the school and the field of study, competition must be keen!
일부 대학

9. 물론입니다. 일부 대학(교)에 들어 가기란 그리 쉬운 일이 아니지요.

Yes, indeed. It isn't that easy to get into a first class university.

 최근
 최근에는
 계통
 인문 계통
 이공
 사회
 과학
 사회 과학
 환경
 농학예

10. 그리고 최근에는 인문 사회 (과학) 계통을 전공하는 학생보다 이공이나 과학을 전공하는 학생 수가 점차 늘었다고 합니다.

And they say that the number of students majoring in engineering and sciences has increased much more lately than the number in liberal arts or social sciences.

부르스

공업
 공업국
 현대
 현대화
 현대화 (한국)
 현대화 (세계)
 현상
 좋은 현상이라고 볼니다

industry
 industrial nation
 modern (times)
 modernization
 [it] becomes modernized
 phenomenon; aspect
 I regard [it] to be a good phenomenon
 Naturally, that's how it is, since Korea is (step-by-step) becoming a modern industrial nation. I regard it as a wonderful phenomenon.

Additional Vocabulary and Phrases

A. Major Universities and Colleges:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>University Name</th>
<th>Location</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>서울대학교</td>
<td>Seoul</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>연세대학교</td>
<td>Seoul</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>고려대학교</td>
<td>Seoul</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>이화여자대학교</td>
<td>Seoul</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td>숭명여자대학교</td>
<td>Seoul</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.</td>
<td>중앙대학교</td>
<td>Seoul</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.</td>
<td>동국대학교</td>
<td>Seoul</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.</td>
<td>성균관대학교</td>
<td>Seoul</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.</td>
<td>한양대학교</td>
<td>Seoul</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.</td>
<td>건국대학교</td>
<td>Seoul</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.</td>
<td>경희대학교</td>
<td>Seoul</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.</td>
<td>외국어대학교</td>
<td>Seoul</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.</td>
<td>부산대학교</td>
<td>Pusan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.</td>
<td>경북대학교</td>
<td>Taegu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.</td>
<td>전남대학교</td>
<td>Kwangju</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.</td>
<td>전북대학교</td>
<td>Chonju</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### B. Major Colleges within a University:

| 1. 론토과 대학 | College of Liberal Arts and Sciences |
| 2. 법과 대학 | College of Law |
| 3. 공과 대학 | College of Engineering |
| 4. 사범 대학 | Teachers' College; College of Education |
| 5. 의과 대학 | College of Medicine |
| 6. 약학 대학 | College of Pharmacy |
| 7. 농과 대학 | College of Agriculture |
| 8. 음악 대학 | College of Music |
9. 미술 대학
10. 상과 대학
11. 상경 대학
12. 정법 대학
13. 법정 대학
14. 대학원

C. Majors:

College of Fine Arts
College of Commerce (Seoul University)
College of Business Administration (Yonsei, Korea and others)
College of Political Science and Law (Yonsei and others)
College of Law and Political Science (Ewha and others)
Graduate School

1. 저는 의학을 전공했습니다.
2. 저는 공학을 전공했습니다.
3. 저는 약학을 전공했습니다.
4. 저는 가족학을 전공했습니다.
5. 저는 가정학을 전공했습니다.
6. 저는 화학을 전공했습니다.
7. 저는 물리학을 전공했습니다.
8. 저는 수학을 전공했습니다.
9. 저는 생명학을 전공했습니다.
10. 저는 생화학을 전공했습니다.
11. 저는 심리학을 전공했습니다.
12. 저는 문학을 전공했습니다.
13. 저는 영문학을 전공했습니다.
14. 저는 언어학을 전공했습니다.

I majored in medicine.
I majored in engineering.
I majored in pharmacy.
I majored in nursing.
I majored in home economics.
I majored in chemistry.
I majored in physics.
I majored in mathematics.
I majored in biology.
I majored in biochemistry.
I majored in psychology.
I majored in literature.
I majored in English literature.
I majored in linguistics.
I majored in Korean literature.

I majored in Korean language and literature.

I majored in philosophy.

I majored in education.

I majored in pedagogy.

I majored in sociology.

I majored in anthropology.

I majored in archaeology.

I majored in law.

I majored in public administration.

I majored in business administration.

I majored in civil law.

I majored in public law.

I majored in international law.

I majored in Oriental painting.

I majored in Western painting.

I majored in government.

I majored in history.

I majored in geography.

I got my degree in law. ('I came out of the department of law.')

I got my degree in mechanical engineering.
3. 저는 건축학을 나 왔어요.
4. 저는 전기공학을 나 왔어요.
5. 저는 로봇공학을 나 왔어요.
6. 저는 화공공학을 나 왔어요.
7. 저는 조선공학을 나 왔어요.
8. 저는 방직공학을 나 왔어요.
9. 저는 약물공학을 나 왔어요.
10. 저는 화공공학을 나 왔어요.
11. 저는 계측공학을 나 왔어요.
12. 저는 (가사과학) 나 왔어요.
13. 저는 음악학을 나 왔어요.
14. 저는 교육과학을 나 왔어요.

I got my degree in architecture.
I got my degree in electrical engineering.
I got my degree in civil engineering.
I got my degree in mechanical engineering.
I got my degree in ship-building engineering.
I got my degree in textile engineering.
I got my degree in metal engineering.
I got my degree aviation engineering.
I got my degree in physical education.
I got my degree in home-economics.
I got my degree in music.
I got my degree in education.
NOTES ON THE BASIC DIALOGUE

(Numbers correspond to the sentence numbers.)

2. 'beyond, above, more than' is a post-noun to which the topic particle
may or may not be added and which occurs after a class of nouns to
make adverbial phrases. An antonym of 'below' which occurs in
parallel way as 'beyond'.

- 'beyond middle school'

- 'more than one month'

- 'more than 500 dollars a month'

- 'beyond this [line]', 'more than this', 'above this'

- 'more than that'

- 'more than this', 'beyond this'

- 'beyond me'

4. - which may occur as a derivational noun suffix is added to a certain
numeral expression and it denotes 'system'.

- '4 year (system) college'

- '2 year junior college'

- '6 year medical school'

N 중에 ("as for among Ns") and N 중에서 ("from among Ns") are both used
as adverbials and are translated as 'among Ns'.

8. 'naturally' is often contracted in rapid speech to 'naturally', which may
also be used as a noun meaning 'nature'.

9. is the shortened expression of
Grammar Notes

1. 

- is a derivational noun suffix added to a small class of nouns to make another noun which forms either a noun phrase with the succeeding noun or copula expression. In either case, the English equivalent is an adjectival expression. A - derivational noun + particle occurs as an adverbial. Observe the following - derivational noun words and their related expressions:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nouns</th>
<th>- + N</th>
<th>Copula Expression</th>
<th>Adverbial</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>비교 'comparison'</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>'-이다'</td>
<td>비교적으로 '-ly'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>경제 'economy'</td>
<td>경제적 N 'economical N'</td>
<td>경제적이다 'to be economical'</td>
<td>경제적으로 '-ly'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>정치 'politics'</td>
<td>정치적 N 'political N'</td>
<td>정치적이다 'to be political'</td>
<td>정치적으로 '-ly'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>사회 'society'</td>
<td>사회적 N 'social N'</td>
<td>사회적이다 'to be social'</td>
<td>사회적으로 '-ly'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>철학 'philosophy'</td>
<td>철학적 N 'philosophical N'</td>
<td>철학적이다 'to be philosophical'</td>
<td>철학적으로 '-ly'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>교육 'education'</td>
<td>교육적 N 'educational N'</td>
<td>교육적이다 'to be educational'</td>
<td>교육적으로 '-ly'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>시 'poem; poetry'</td>
<td>시적 N 'poetic N'</td>
<td>시적이다 'to be poetic'</td>
<td>시적으로 '-ly'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>심리 'psychology'</td>
<td>심리적 N 'psychological N'</td>
<td>심리적이다 'to be psychological'</td>
<td>심리적으로 '-ly'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>현대 'the modern time'</td>
<td>현대적 N 'modern N'</td>
<td>현대적이다 'to be modern'</td>
<td>현대적으로 '-ly'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>정신 'spirit'</td>
<td>정신적 N 'spiritual N'</td>
<td>정신적이다 'to be spiritual'</td>
<td>정신적으로 '-ly'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>육체 'the body'</td>
<td>육체적 N 'bodily N'</td>
<td>육체적이다 'to be physical'</td>
<td>육체적으로 '-ly'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>인간 'human being'</td>
<td>인간적 N 'human N'</td>
<td>인간적이다 'to be human'</td>
<td>인간적으로 '-ly'</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
2. **-고 나서 'after having done...','after doing...'

The construction **-고 나서** (i.e. the **-고** form of an action verb + Infinitive form + of the verb **-고** + particle **-서**) which may be followed by a pause before another inflected expression means 'after having done [something]'. This construction is used interchangeably with **-여** (Unit 15).

\[ \text{돈을 충분히 벌고 나서 결혼할 수 있게 될 것이다.} \]

\[ \text{돈을 충분히 벌고 나서 결혼할 수 있게 될 것입니다.} \]

\[ \text{After [you] finish the premed, you can enter the 4 year (regular) medical course.} \]

\[ \text{I'm planning to get married after having earned enough money.} \]

3. **-화 and -화하다**

-화 is a derivational noun suffix added to a class of nouns and forms a denominal which means 'ization'. A -화 denominal makes a verb by adding either -하다 or 되다: -화하다 is a transitive verb and -화되다 an intransitive verb respectively. Observe the following common nouns on which -화 and -화하다 are built:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>Korean (with 하다)</th>
<th>English (with to)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>'the modern time'</td>
<td>'현대화'</td>
<td>'현대화 하다'</td>
<td>'to modernize'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'general public'</td>
<td>'일반화'</td>
<td>'일반화 하다'</td>
<td>'to popularize'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'industry'</td>
<td>'공업화'</td>
<td>'공업화 하다'</td>
<td>'to industrialize'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'freedom, liberty'</td>
<td>'자유화'</td>
<td>'자유화 하다'</td>
<td>'to liberalize'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'America'</td>
<td>'미국화'</td>
<td>'미국화 하다'</td>
<td>'to Americanize'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'democracy'</td>
<td>'민주화'</td>
<td>'민주화 하다'</td>
<td>'to democratize'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>('common property')</td>
<td>'공산화'</td>
<td>'공산화 하다'</td>
<td>'to communize'</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. **Infinitive + 기타**

기타 immediately after an infinitive form of a class of verbs may occur as an auxilliary verb and denotes gradual or step-by-step change of the action of the verb in the infinitive form.
Korea is (step-by-step) becoming a modern industrial nation. ('Korea is gradually becoming modernized as an industrial nation.')

I'm reading this book a little bit every day.

The number of students in our school is increasing every year.

I cannot finish the work at one time, but I can finish it by doing just one lesson a day.

Note that 오자 is occasionally used similarly as 하자 in the above construction.
DRILLS

1. Response-Transformation Drill

선생: 중학교부터 입학 시험을 떠나니까?
학생: 아니, 중학교 입학 시험을 떠나야 해요.

1. 언제 학교에 다닐 수 있나요?
   학생: 언제 학교에 다닐 수 있어요.

2. 여섯 살부터 중학교에 다닐 수 있나요?
   학생: 여섯 살 이상으로 중학교에 다닐 수 있어요.

3. 이십과부에 문법 노트가 없나요?
   학생: 이십과 파문법 노트가 없어요.

4. 한국말을 영어 문법 이해해야 합니다.
   학생: 한국말을 영어 문법 이해해야 해요.

5. 학생에 여덟시까지 일해야 합니다.
   학생: 학생에 여덟시까지 일해야 해요.

6. 중학교부터 의무 교육이 아닙니까?
   학생: 중학교 이상은 의무 교육이 아니에요.

7. 대학부터 자기가 학비를 부담해야 합니다.
   학생: 대학 이상은 자기가 학비를 부담해야 해요.

2. Response Drill

선생: 아이들은 몇시까지 자야 합니까?
   학생: 여덟시까지 자야 합니다.

Do you take entrance exams from middle school on?
Yes, we take entrance exams for middle school and beyond.

Can you vote from the age of 21 on?
Yes, age 21 and above can vote.

Can you go to grade school from the age of 6?
Yes, age 6 and above can go to grade school.

Are there no grammar notes from Lesson 20 on?
Right. There are no grammar notes beyond Lesson 20.

Do you have to study Korean for ten months?
Yes, I have to study Korean more than ten months.

Do you have to work for eight hours a day?
Yes, I have to work more than eight hours per day.

Isn't education compulsory from middle school on?
Right. It's not compulsory from middle school on.

Do you have to bear the burden of school expenses yourself beginning college?
Yes, one has to bear the burden of school expenses himself from college on.

How many hours do the children have to sleep? [more than eight hours]
They have to sleep more than eight hours.
UNIT 38
KOREAN BASIC COURSE

1. 한국에서 얼마나 한국어를 배워야 합니까?
   [more than ten months]
   How long do you have to study Korean?

2. 한국어를 어떻게 배워야 합니까?
   [at least more than ten months]
   I have to study it (at least) more than ten months.

3. 올바른 고유명사와 접여야 합니다.
   [more than ten days]
   How long do you have to be in the hospital?

4. 공부를 어떻게 많이 하세요?
   [more than ten times]
   How many times have you travelled to Europe?

5. 미국 대통령은 몇 년에 한번 걸출 수 있을까요?
   [more than eight years]
   An American Presidency cannot stay in office more than eight years.

6. 베헤가 먹을 수 있을까요?
   [above 18 years of age]
   From what age can one drink?

7. 한달 수입이 얼마 이상이 결제가 곤란합니까?
   [300 dollars]
   If the monthly income is below $300, the living standard is at the poverty level.

3. Response Drill

学生: 문학과 대학의 수가 많습니까?

老师: 예, 문학과 대학의 수가 비교적 많어요.

Are there a number of liberal arts and sciences colleges?

Yes, there is a comparatively large number of liberal arts and sciences colleges.
1. Are there many students who major in engineering fields?
   Yes, there's a comparatively large number of students who major in engineering fields.

2. Is it difficult to study medicine?
   Yes, studying medicine is comparatively difficult.

3. Are the entrance exams of the 1st rate colleges difficult?
   Yes, the 1st rate college entrance exams are comparatively difficult.

4. Is Korea becoming modernized?
   Yes, Korea is becoming comparatively modernized.

5. Is your Korean better than before?
   Yes, my Korean has improved compared to what it was before.

6. Is competition sever in the foreign service exams?
   Yes, competition is comparatively keen in the foreign service exams.

7. Is Korean industry developed?
   Yes, Korean industry is comparatively developed.

8. Is it more difficult to get a Ph. D. in America than in Europe?
   Yes, getting a Ph. D. in America is comparatively more difficult than in Europe.

4. Transformation Drill (based on Grammar Note 2)

   선생: 한국 민을 깎아내도 한국에 가계어요.
   학생: 한국 민을 깎아내도歉한 한국에 가계어요.

   After finishing Korean, I will go to Korea.
   I'll go to Korea after having finished my Korean language studies.
UNIT 38  
KOREAN BASIC COURSE

1. 석사 학위를 받은 후에 결혼하세요.
   석사 학위를 받고 나서 결혼하세요.
I'll get married after I get a Master's degree.
I'll get married after having received a Master's degree.

2. 법과 떨어졌으나 태양 후에 변호사가 되겠습니다.
   법과 떨어졌으나 충성하고 나서 변호사가 되겠습니다.
I'm going to be a lawyer after I graduate from the law school.
I'm going to be a lawyer after having graduated from the law school.

3. 난첩을 잡은 후에 공부해야겠어요.
   난첩을 잡고 나서 공부해야겠어요.
I'm going to study after I take a nap.
I'm going to study after I've had a nap.

4. 그는 결혼한 후에 사람이 달라졌어요.
   그는 결혼하고 나서 사람이 달라졌어요.
He changed after getting married.
After he got married he became a different man.

5. 그분은 국회의원이 된 후에 좀 이상해졌어요.
   그분은 국회의원이 되고 나서 좀 이상해졌어요.
He has become a little strange after he became a member of the National Assembly.
After he had become a member of the National Assembly, he became a little strange.

6. 저는 어어날 동안 잔은 후에 몸 무게가 줄었어요.
   저는 어어날 동안 잔고 나서 몸 무게가 줄었어요.
My weight went down after I was sick for several days.
My weight went down after I had been sick for several days.

7. 저녁을 먹은 후에 신문을 읽겠어요.
   저녁을 먹고 나서 신문을 읽겠어요.
I'll read the newspaper after I eat supper.
I'll read the newspaper after having eaten supper.

8. 석사 학위를 받은 후에 박사 학위 공부를 계속하겠습니다.
   석사 학위를 받고 나서 박사 학위 공부를 계속하겠습니다.
I'll go on for a Ph. D. after I get a Master's degree.
I'll go on for a Ph. D. after having gotten a Master's degree.

5. Response Drill (based on Grammar Note 2)

선생: 한국어 공부를 끝마친 후에 어디에 가겠어요? /한국/
 학생: 한국어 공부를 끝마치고 나서 원국에 가겠어요.

Where will you go after you finish Korean language study? [Korea]

I'll go to Korea after having finished my Korean language study.
1. 결혼한 후에 신혼 여행은 어디에 갔어요?
/구라가/
결혼하고 나서 신혼 여행은 구라가에 갔어요.

2. 군대에서 제대한 후에 무엇을 했어요? /강사/
군대에서 제대하고 나서 강사를 했어요.

3. 병사 휴식일 땐 어때 했어요? /가토치는 일/
박사 휴식일 땐 박사 가토치는 일에 종사하겠어요.

4. 그 집을 빌고 후에 어디로 이사하겠어요?
/ 홈 더 큰 집/
그 집을 빌고 나서 홈 더 큰 집으로 이사하겠어요.

5. 근에서 제대한 후에 어떤 직업을 구하겠어요?
/공무원 일자리/
군에서 제대하고 나서 공무원 일자리를 구하겠어요.

6. Response-Transformation Drill

선생: 일류 대학교에 들어 가기 쉽습니까?

학생: 아니요, 일류 대학교에 들어 가기란 그리 쉬운 일이 아닙니다.

1. 선배 배우기 쉬습니까?

학생: 아니요, 선배 배우기란 그리 쉬운 일이 아닙니다.

2. 돈 벌기 쉬습니까?

학생: 아니요, 돈 벌기란 그리 쉬운 일이 아닙니다.

Is getting into a 1st rate university easy?
No, entering a 1st rate university is not an easy job.

Is studying a language easy?
No, studying a language is not an easy job.

Is it easy to make money?
No, earning money is not an easy job.

Where did you go for your honeymoon after you get married? [Europe]
I went to Europe for my honeymoon after having got married.

What did you do after you were discharged from the military? [small sales business]
I had a small sales business after having been discharged from the military.

What kind of profession will you engage in after you get a Ph. D.? [teaching profession]
I'll go into the teaching profession after having obtained a Ph. D. degree.

Where will you move to after you sell that house? [a little larger house]
I'm going to move to a little larger house after having sold that house.

What sort of occupation will you seek after you're discharged from the military? [government employee's job]
I'm going to look for a job in the government after having been discharged from the military.
3. 돈 없이 대학에 다니기가 쉬우니까?
아니요, 돈 없이 대학에 다니기는 그림 쉬운 일이 아닙니다.

4. 음식을 만들기 힘들니까?
아니요, 음식을 만들기 힘들지 않아야 합니다.

5. 태풍이 놀라기가 힘들니까?
아니요, 태풍이 놀라기 힘들지 않아야 합니다.

6. 시내에서 운전하기가 어렵습니까?
아니요, 시내에서 운전하기가 어렵습니다.

7. 말 가르치기도 어렵습니까?
아니요, 말 가르치기 쉽습니다.

8. 남에게 충고하기가 재미 있습니까?
아니요, 남에게 충고하기가 재미있습니다.

7. Response Drill

선생: 누-음과 위성문은 어디가 더 큽니까?
/누-음/

학생: 누-음이 월성 더 큽니다.

1. 놀이와 한국 어느 어느 방이 더 어렵습니까?
/한국 위/

한국어가 월성 더 어렵습니다.
2. 의과와 치과는 어느 과가 공부하기 더 어렵습니까? /의과/

의과가 공부하기 환심 더 어렵습니다.

3. 일본과 데라스 야마가 공업이 더 발달했습니다니까? /일본/

일본이 공업이 환심 더 발달했습니다.

4. 고등학교와 대학은 야마가 입학 경쟁이 더 심합니까? /대학/

대학이 환심 입학 경쟁이 심합니다.

5. 캐디라크와 선셋 차림 차는 어느 것이 더 비싼니까? /캐디라크/

캐디라크 환심 더 비싸니다.

6. 이름 제동의 학생 수와 인문 계통의 학생 수는 어디가 더 많습니까? /이름 계통/

이름 계통의 학생 수가 환심 더 많습니다.

7. 선셋과 스미스 선생은 누가 한국 밥을 더 잘 합니까? /스미스 선생/

스미스 선생이 환심 더 잘 합니다.

8. Response Drill

선생: 한국이 현대화 되어 가는 것을 어떻게 생각하나요?

학생: 그건 할창은 현상이라고 봅니다.

선생: 한국이 공업화 되어 가는 것을 어떻게 생각하나요?

학생: 그건 할창은 현상이라고 봅니다.
2. 할아버지가 자유화 되어 가는 것을 어떻게 생각하시겠어요?
그건 참 좋은 현상이라고 볼니다.

3. 컷보리아가 공산화 되지 않는 것을 어떻게 생각하시겠어요?
그건 참 좋은 현상이라고 볼니다.

4. 남자가 점점 민주화 되는 것을 어떻게 생각하시겠어요?
그건 참 좋은 현상이라고 볼니다.

9. Response Drill (based on Grammar Note 1)

선택: 지금 집을 사는 것이 경제적입니까?
확답: 예, 경제적이라고 생각해요.

1. 한국 맛이 비로소(오토) 어렵습니까?
   예, 비로소(오토) 어렵다고 생각해요.

2. 그분은 너무 정치적입니까?
   예, 너무 정치적이라고 생각해요.

3. 할아버지의 생각이 너무 현대적입니까?
   예, 너무 현대적이라고 생각해요.

4. 그 문제는 너무 복잡적입니까?
   예, 너무 복잡적이라고 생각해요.

5. 그 영화는 교육적입니까?
   예, 교육적이라고 생각해요.

6. 미국에서 인종 문제가 큰 사회적 문제입니까?
   예, 큰 사회적 문제라고 생각해요.

   What is your reaction about Hungary's liberalization?
   I regard it as a wonderful phenomenon.

   What is your reaction about Cambodia's not going communist?
   I regard it as a wonderful phenomenon.

   What is your reaction about the school's gradual democratization?
   I regard it as a wonderful phenomenon.

   Do you think it's economical to buy a house now?
   Yes, I think it's economical.

   Is Korean difficult, comparatively speaking?
   Yes, I think Korean is difficult, comparatively speaking.

   Is he too political?
   Yes, I think he is too political.

   Is your grandfather's idea too modern?
   Yes, I think it is too modern.

   Is that problem too philosophical?
   Yes, I think it's too philosophical.

   Is that movie educational?
   Yes, I think it's educational.

   Is the racial problem in America a big social problem?
   Yes, I think it's a big social problem.
7. 그 표현이 시적인가요?
이 표현이 시적으로 생각해요.

8. 그분의 생각은 민주적은가요?
이 민주적이라고 생각해요.

Is that expression poetic?
Yes, I think it's poetic.

Is his idea democratic?
Yes, I think it's democratic.

10. Response Drill (based on Grammar Note 1)

선생: 택시를 타는 것이 시간적으로 경제적으로 정계적적인가요?
화생: 예, 택시를 타는 것이 시간적으로 경제적으로 정계적적입니다.

Is taking a taxi time-saving?
Yes, taking a taxi is time-saving.

1. 그분이 경제적으로 곤란한가요?
이 경제적으로 곤란합니다.

Is he economically in hardship?
Yes, he is in hardship economically.

2. 그분이 정치적으로 힘입어 생가요?
이 정치적으로 힘입어 생니다.

Is he politically powerful?
Yes, he is politically powerful.

3. 그분이 사회적으로 유명한가요?
이 사회적으로 유명합니다.

Is he famous socially?
Yes, he is socially famous.

4. 그 텔레비전 프로그램 아이들에게 교육적으로 나쁘요?
이 교육적으로 나쁘습니다.

Are those T.V. programs educationally bad to the children?
Yes, they're educationally bad.

5. 말 배우는 것이 정신적으로 부담이 큰가요?
이 정신적으로 부담이 큽니다.

Is studying a language a big burden mentally?
Yes, mentally it's a big burden.
Supplementary Dialogue for Comprehension

부조스: 왜 한국에선 일부 학교는 그들에게 있는 시험에 경제이 싫습니까?

김: 좋은 학교들 중 입학해야 좋은 직장을 구할 수 있다고 생각하기 때문인지 걱정합니다.

부조스: 그런데 한국에선 모든 학교를 하단에 평등히 삼아 싫으시니까?

김: 물론, 좋은 고등 학교들 중 입학해야 좋은 대학에 입학할 수 있으니 그래 보기에 없지요.

부조스: 오랫동안 한국 대학생들 중 대개 무엇을 많이 전공합니다?

김: 전에는 점차 하나 이상 사회와 계층을 공부하는 학생이 많았습니다. 그러나, 요즘은 이론이나 과학을 공부하는 학생 수가 점선 늘었습니다.

부조스: 그럼, 한국 공립 박물관은 과를 도움이 되겼군요.

김: 예, 마지막에 한국도 공립국으로 전태화 된 것 같습니다.

Narrative for Comprehension and Reading

한국에서는 중학교 이상은 다 입학 시험이 있음입니다. 좋은 학교를 줄여봐야 좋은 직장을 구할 수 있다고 생각하기 때문에. 일부 학교의 입학 시험은 경제의 대단히 싫습니다. 대학에서는 전공 분야에 따라 경제가 다르지만 요즘은 이론이나 과학 계층을 공부하려는 학생이 많어서 그 계층은 경제의 대단합니다. 그것은 한국의 공립 박물관을 위해서 좋은 대상이라고 합니다. 그러나 일부 대학에 입학하면 대학원에 갈 사람은 의학 이상 입학 시험이 없으니까 고등 학교 대학원 공부를 열심히 하지 않습니다. 그냥 한국에선
소학교나 중학교 학생들이 대학을 끝내고 공부를 더 열심히 하는 이상한 경향이 있습니다.
UNIT 39. Discussing One's Occupation

BASIC DIALOGUE

부모

어후

졸업한 이후

내내

1. 김 선생은 태화중 졸업한 이후 내내 중학교

선생으로 재선했습니까?

원

보험 회사

일하다가

취직했어요

취직되었어요

지금에 이르겠어요

2. 아니요. 처음에는 어느 보험 회사에서

일하다가 일년 후에 (학교) 선생으로

취직되어서 지금에 이르겠어요.

부모

때우

때우가 나쁘니가

있긴히나

직장은 옮겼을까요

3. 그럼. 처음 직장에서 때우가 나빠서

직장은 옮겼나요?

have you been a middle school teacher ever since you graduated from college?

insurance company

[I] worked and (then)

[I] got a job

[I] was hired

[I]'ve reached the present time

no. at first i worked with an insurance company, but one year later i was hired as a teacher and i have been one ever since.

treatment

treatment is bad

[i] move something (from one place to another)

[i] changed jobs

well, did you change your job because of ill treatment?
4. 품도시 그룹지( 또 ) 없습니다.

저주합니다.

음미.

음미가 없습니까.

음미가 있습니까.

5. 몇몇은 그들에게 나쁘지 않았으나 하는 일이 저에게 지루하고 음미 없는 일이였습니다.

게다가

의견.

의견이 없습니까.

화.

 السنة.

화가 없습니까.

siblings.

상을.

사직.

사직닙니다.

사직하고 맘벗었습니다.

6. 게다가, ( 같은 과의 ) 과장과 의견이 맞지 않아.

화가 나서 사직하고 맘벗었습니다.

누스

school teacher (usually of secondary schools)

So, how do you like teaching? ('How is the school teacher's life?')
8. 세상에 만족할 만한 일이 어때요?

Is there any job on earth which is completely satisfactory?

9. 실온, 제가 영어 말해지는 힘을 가진 것을

As a matter of fact, during my college days I hoped that I would become a scholar, but I ended up as a middle school teacher.

10. 한국에서 가르치는 일이 존경받는 직업이 아니야요?

I understand that teaching is a respected occupation in Korea, isn't it?

11. 그건 대학 교수 말이지요!

Yes, it is, for a college professor.
전면
시간이 전면 없습니다

12. 그보다, 중고등학교에서 공부한 시간이 적습니다. 휴가가 될 수 있나요?

(외국) 유학
온

13. 그래서, 전 외국 기회가 있으다면 외국 유학을 갈 필요가 있고 지금 제게 그런 운이 있을지 모르지요.

부르스

기부
장학금

14. 요새는 정부나 여러 기관에서 장학금을 준다고 들었습니다.

신청서
신청용지
신청합니다

15. 그런 장학금을 신청해 보시지요.

독서
응답합니다

일임이
부 지연이

일임입니다
부 지연입니다

설취

absolutely; never; (not) at all
[I] have absolutely no time

But how can I become a scholar with secondary school teaching leaving me absolutely no time to study?

studying abroad
luck

So, I'd like to go study abroad if I get the chance in the future, but I don't know if I'll have such luck.

organization; agency
scholarship

I've heard that the government as well as several other organizations offer scholarships these days.

application form

[he] applies for

Why don't you apply for such a scholarship?

especially; particularly
[he] applies for
diligently

[he]'s diligent

capacity; ability; capability
I was also thinking of that. I'm studying English hard lately in order to take an exam for such scholarship, especially the Government's. But my command of English is still not sufficient.
NOTES ON THE BASIC DIALOGUE

(Numbers correspond to the sentence numbers.)

1. "all the way" occurs after a time nominal forming a phrase or before an inflected expression and is used as an adverbial which denotes continuity of action or description of a time expression for the following inflected expression.

(a)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean Text</th>
<th>English Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>야간 내내</td>
<td>'all night long'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>하루 내내</td>
<td>'all day long'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>밤 내내</td>
<td>'all night long'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>한달 내내</td>
<td>'all month'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>일년 내내</td>
<td>'all year around'</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(b)

이 길로 내내 가세요. | 'Keep going on this road (all the way)'.
내내 담배를 피우면 잦에 걸림 | 'You'll get cancer if you keep smoking.'

2. 보험 'insurance' is a noun. 보험에 들다 means 'to insure N.'

2.6. 취직하다 means 'to get a job'; 취직되다 'to be hired'. The opposite of 취직하다 is 사직하다 'to resign' and 해고하다 means 'to fire (someone).'</p>

4. 반드시 'necessarily' is synonymous with '가.'

5. 놀이 'interest' is different from 재미 'fun'. 재미가 없다 is frequently translated as 'N is not interesting.' (Unit 6). The noun 놀이 occurs in different ways: 놀이가 있다 means 'to be interested in N' and 놀이가 없다 'to be uninterested in N'.

6. 게다가 'on top of that, moreover, furthermore' is a sentence adverbial which is the contraction of 거기에도다가 (i.e. 거기 'that place' + deago, (See Grammar Note 1, Unit 35).
7.9. While 'teacher' as a free noun is a cover term for teachers of all categories, 교사 and 교원 refer specifically to a 'school teacher' of an elementary and/or secondary school.

8. 세상 in 세상에서 'in the world' means 'human society'. 세계 which occurs in an adverbial 세상에서 'in the world' refers to the physical 'world'.

10. 존경 'respect' is a noun. 존경하다 'to have respect [for]' occurs as a transitive verb.

13. 계에게 'to me' is the contraction of 계에게.

15. 신청하다 'to apply (for)' is a transitive verb and it precedes an object such as 신청금 'scholarship', 입학허가 'admission (to school)', 돈 'money', 일자리 'job', 휴가 'vacation, leave', etc.

Another verb 응하다 occurs in a meaning somewhat similar to 신청하다 but 응하다 is an intransitive verb and its usage is limited: 취직 시험에 응하다 'to apply for the job test', 모집에 응하다 'to apply for the recruiting', etc.

16. 그러나 생각이 없습니다. 'I'm thinking of that.' is the contraction of 그려서 한 생각이 있습니다. ('I have an idea to do so.').

GRAMMAR NOTES

1. -을/을 만 하다 'to be -able', 'to be worth...ing', 'to deserve to...

The pattern -을/을 만 하다 (i.e. the prospective form -을/을 of an action or description verb + 만 + 하다) means 'to be -able', 'to be worth...ing', 'to deserve to...', for the action or description of the verb in the -을/을 form whichever makes sense. The tenses and/or speech levels for the whole construction are generated in 하다.

그 책은 읽을 만 합니다. 'That book is readable.' or 'That book is worth reading.'
한국 말이 배울 만 합니까?

'Is Korean worth learning?' or ('Is Korean learnable?')

그 음식은 맛을 만 합니까?

'Is the food edible?'

 капит우 구미는 들어 본 만 하다라고 생각해요.

'I think Dr. Kim's lecture is worth listening to.'

이 길은 철차는 지나 가란 하지만 보통 승용차는 운전하기 극난해요.

'This road is passable for jeeps but ordinary passenger cars are hard to drive on it.'

그 아이는 그런 징크عظيم 맛을 만 해요.

'The child deserves to receive such a compliment.'

Note that the pattern -익을 가치가 있다 'to be worth...ing' ('there's a value of doing...') is a substitute of -익을 만하다 in this meaning.

2. 전연 + Negation 'never...', 'not...at all'

전연 means 'absolutely'. 전연 used with a negative expression means 'never is/does', 'is/does not... at all'.

공부 할 시간이 전연 없어요.

'I have absolutely no time to study.'

저는 전연 술을 못 마셔요.

'I absolutely can not drink liquor.'

전연 그렇게 생각하지 않았어요.

'I never thought so.' or 'I had no such idea.'

어찌 간 중 엄사님은 전연 만나 일이 없었나요.

'I have never met Consulate General Kim yet.' or 'I have never had a chance to meet Consulate General Kim yet.'

Note that 조금도 ('even just a little'), 한번도 ('even just once'), 절대도 'absolutely' also occur similarly as 전연 with negative expressions and are all translated as 'never...', 'not...at all'.

선임 미국 대사님은 조금도 한국 말을 못 한다고.

'They say that the newly appointed American Ambassador cannot speak Korean at all.'

저는 한번도 캐나다에 가 본 일이 없어요.

'I've never been to Canada.' ('I have not gone to Canada even once.'
3. 에 and 에따(가)

Go back to Unit 25, Grammar Note 1 and Unit 35, Grammar Note 1, and review 에 and 에따(가) which may occur between two nominal expressions to enumerate them.
I graduated from college. After that, I've been school teacher ever since.

Ever since I graduated from college, I've been a school teacher.

I got married. After that, I've lived only in foreign countries all the time since.

Ever since I got married, I've lived only in foreign countries.

I began Korean language study. After that, I've used only Korean language.

Ever since I began Korean language study, I've used only Korean.

I quit that company. I've been unable to find a job ever since.

Ever since I quit that company, I've been unable to find a job.

He left his hometown. I haven't heard of him ever since.

Ever since he left his hometown, I haven't heard of him.

I had an operation. I've been sick ever since.

Ever since I had an operation, I've been sick.

I had a traffic accident. I haven't had any luck.

Ever since I had a traffic accident, I haven't had any luck.
I failed the exam. Ever since I've lost all interest in studying.

Ever since I failed the exam, I've lost all interest in studying.

2. Response Drill

선생: 왜 그러한 생각이 들어나요?
학생: 반대로 그렇게 말해야요.

1. 상관과 의견이 잘 맞지요?
반대로 그렇게 말해야요.

2. 말 배우기가 지루하지요?
반대로 그렇게 말해야요.

3. 미국에서 대학 교수를 존경하지요?
반대로 그렇게 말해야요.

4. 미국 공인은 매우 전기지요?
반대로 그렇게 말해야요.

5. 선생은 선생직업에 만족하지요?
반대로 그렇게 말해야요.

6. 열심히 한국 말을 배우면 잘 할 수 있지요?
반대로 그렇게 말해야요.

7. 미국 대학에서 장학금을 받는 것은 쉬워요?
반대로 그렇게 말해야요.

The life in the foreign service is interesting, isn't it? [It's] not necessarily so.

You get along with your boss well, don't you? (or you agree with your boss, don't you?) Not necessarily so.

Studying a language is boring, isn't it? Not necessarily so.

People have respect for college professors in America, don't they? Not necessarily so.

American soldiers get good treatment, don't they? Not necessarily so.

You are satisfied with your occupation, aren't you? Not necessarily so.

You can speak Korean well if you study it for ten months, can't you? Not necessarily so.

Getting scholarships from American colleges is easy, isn't it? Not necessarily so.
3. Combination Drill

Korean grammar is complicated. Moreover, there are a lot of new words, too.

In addition to Korean grammar being complicated, there're a lot of new words, too.

He became unemployed. On top of that, he ran out of money.

He not only became unemployed, he also ran out of money.

The job is uninteresting. Besides that, the treatment is not good, either.

Besides the job being uninteresting, the treatment is bad, too.

It is snowing. Moreover, the road is crowded, too.

Not only it's snowing, but the road is crowded, too.

I've a stomach ache. Besides that, I caught a cold.

Besides having a stomach ache, I caught a cold.

I don't have a good command of English. Furthermore, I don't have any pull.

Not only do I not have a good command of English, but I also lack pull.

He is intelligent. Moreover, he is also diligent.

Not only is he intelligent, he is also diligent.

I don't like him. What's more, I don't agree with him, either.

Besides disliking him, I also disagree with him.
4. Response-Transformation Drill

**Selected: 왜 직장을 사직했어요? /왜가 나빠서/**
Selected: 왜가 나빠서 사직하고 말.Must.

1. 왜 학교를 그만두었어요? /공부에 응미가 없었어요/  
   공부에 응미가 없어서 그만두고 말.Must.

2. 왜 이혼했어요? /사람이 없었어요/  
   사람이 없어서 이혼하고 말.Must.

3. 왜 그 학생이 학교 시험에 떨어졌어요? /실패가 없었어요/  
   실패가 없어서 떨어 지고 말.Must.

4. 왜 엄마가 사고를 넣었어요? /출을 마시고 운전했어요/  
   출을 마시고 운전해서 사고를 넣고 말.Must.

5. 왜 화를 넣었어요? /참을 수 없었어요/  
   참을 수 없어서 화를 넣고 말.Must.

---

5. Response-Transformation Drill (based on Grammar Note 1)

**Selected: 그 책 읽을 가치가 있습니까?**
Selected: 읽 읽을 가치가 있어요.

1. 누-용은 구경할 가치가 있습니까?  
   읽 구경할 가치가 있어요.

2. 그 영화를 보 가치가 있습니까?  
   읽 보 가치가 있어요.

---

**Why did you resign the job? [Treatment was bad.]**  
The treatment was bad, so I ended up resigning.

**Why did you quit school? [I didn't have any interest in studying.]**  
I didn't have any interest in studying, so I ended up quitting school.

**Why did you get divorced? [We had no love.]**  
We had no love, so we finally got divorced.

**Why did the student fail the entrance exam? [He was a poor student.]**  
He was a poor student, so he ended up failing the entrance exam.

**How did he come to cause an accident? [He drove after drinking.]**  
He drove after drinking, and he ended up causing an accident.

**Why did you get angry? [I lost my patience.]**  
I couldn't stand it, so I finally got angry.

---

**Is that book worth reading? ('Does that book have a value to read?')**  
Yes, it's worth reading.

**Is New York worth seeing?**  
Yes, it's worth seeing.

**Is that movie worth seeing?**  
Yes, it's worth seeing.
KOREAN BASIC COURSE

UNIT 39

3. 그 물건을 살 가치가 있습니까?
   예, 산 만 해요.

4. 외국 여행 배의 둘 가치가 있습니까?
   예, 배줘 둘 만 해요.

5. 외망을 걷 가치가 있습니까?
   예, 외망을 걷 만 해요.

6. 그 일을 할 가치가 있습니까?
   예, 할 만 해요.

Is that merchandise worth buying?
Yes, it's worth buying.

Is it worthwhile to learn a foreign language?
Yes, it's worthwhile to learn one.

Is [it] worth pinning your hopes on it?
Yes, [it]'s worth hoping for.

Is that work worth doing?
Yes, it's worth doing.

6. Response Drill (based on Grammar Note 1)

선생: 그 분은 존경을 받을 만 합니까?
학생: 예, 존경을 받을 만 하지요.

1. 이 선생이 그런 태도를 받을 만 합니까?
   예, 그런 태도를 받을 만 하지요.

2. 가갑 최상은 좋길 만 합니까?
   예, 가갑 최상은 좋길 만 하지요.

3. 그 과목을 열심히 배울 만 합니까?
   예, 열심히 배울 만 하지요.

4. 구당약을 구경할 만 합니까?
   예, 구경할 만 하지요.

5. 그 장려금을 신청할 만 합니까?
   예, 신청할 만 하지요.

6. 아이들을 대학에 보낼 만 합니까?
   예, 보낼 만 하지요.

Does he deserve to receive respect from others?
Yes, he deserves to receive the respect of others.

Does Mr. Lee merit such treatment?
Yes, he rates such treatment.

Is it worth changing jobs sometimes?
Yes, sometimes they're worth changing.

Is that subject worth studying hard?
Yes, it's worth studying hard.

Is Europe worth seeing?
Yes, it's worth sightseeing.

Is that scholarship worth applying for?
Yes, it's worth applying for.

Is sending children to college worth doing?
Yes, it's worth it.
7. Response Drill (based on Grammar Note 2)

1. 그 키사도 읽은 일이 있습니까?
   아니요, 전혀 읽은 일이 없습니다.

2. 푸른 옷을 운전해 본 일이 있습니까?
   아니요, 전혀 운전해 본 일이 없습니다.

3. 장마가올 신청해 본 일이 있습니까?
   아니요, 전혀 신청해 본 일이 없습니다.

4. 보험 회사에 근무한 일이 있습니까?
   아니요, 전혀 근무한 일이 없습니다.

5. 공부에 흥미를 얻어 빠른 일이 있습니까?
   아니요, 전혀 흥미를 얻어 빠른 일이 없습니다.

6. 세계를 일주한 일이 있습니까?
   아니요, 전혀 일주한 일이 없습니다.

7. 외국어를 배운 일이 있습니까?
   아니요, 전혀 배운 일이 없습니다.

8. 한국의 장래에 대해서 생각해 본 일이 있습니까?
   아니요, 전혀 생각해 본 일이 없습니다.

---

8. Substitution Drill

1. 그는 한국 말 공부에 열심입니다.

2. 그는 돈 벌는데 열심입니다.

---

He's enthusiastic about his Korean language study.

He's enthusiastic about making money.
3. 그는 자신의 일에 열심입니다.
He's enthusiastic about his own work.

4. 그는 가르치는데 열심입니다.
He's enthusiastic about teaching.

5. 그는 업무 실력을 기르는데 열심입니다.
He's enthusiastic about improving his command of English.

9. Response Drill

선생: 한국말 공부에 열심이니까?
학생: 아니, 열심이 한국말 공부 않습니다.

1. 직업 시기에 열심이니까?
예, 열심히 직업을 합니다.

2. 그분은 돈 벌기에 열심이니까?
예, 열심히 돈을 번다.

3. 요즘 운전( 운전 ) 배우기에 열심이니까?
예, 열심히 배웁니다.

4. 그 선생은 가르치기에 열심이니까?
예, 열심히 가르칩니다.

5. 군인들이 훈련(훈련) 받기에 열심이니까?
예, 열심히 훈련을 받습니다.

6. 선생은 학생들을 훈련하기에 열심이니까?
예, 열심히 학생들을 훈련합니다.

Are you enthusiastic about Korean language study?
Yes, I'm studying it diligently.

Is he eager to find a job?
Yes, he's eagerly looking for a job.

Is he enthusiastic about making money?
Yes, he's earning money diligently.

Are you enthusiastic about learning driving these days?
Yes, I'm learning it eagerly.

Is Mr. Kim enthusiastic about teaching?
Yes, he's teaching eagerly.

Are the soldiers enthusiastic about getting training?
Yes, they're taking (their training) diligently.

Is the teacher enthusiastic about training the students?
Yes, the teacher is working hard in training the students.
Supplementary Dialogue for Comprehension

부츠: 매일을 출업하면 직장 직기가 문제 없겠죠?

감: 왜가요. 매일 직장 수가 부족한데다가 출업세 수가 많어서 직장 없는 것이 그치 취준 은 안되지요.

부츠: 이공 계통이나 과학 계통의 출업생도 직장 구하기가 어렵습니까?

감: 그런 계통은 사람이 좀 많습니다. 요즘 한국에 공장을 많이 세우고 공업 발전에 노력하기 때문에 이공이나 과학 계통 출업생은 거의 100퍼센트 취직 됩니다.

부츠: 직장을 원하는 사람이 많으면 직전 취직 시점 같은 것도 있습니다.

감: 물론 취업 방법도. 경제자가 많으니 자신 실력이 있어야 취직을 할 수 있습니다. 그래도 일부 매출을 출업하는 것이 중요하게 됩니다.

Narrative for Comprehension and Reading

감 가수 선생은 선생 메하라고 삼과 매출을 출업해왔습니다. 출업 후 어느 회사의 회사에 취직 시점을 찾았습니다. 감선생은 실력이 없었기 때문에 쉽게 취직되지 못했습니다. 그후 얼마 후에 일을 시작하였는데 그 회사는 매출은 높았지만 매일 같은 일만 하기 때문에 일이 지루하고 세미 없었습니다. 가수가 감 선생은 상관과 의견이 맞지 않아서 사직하고 밝았습니다. 그후에 어느 남학교에 상업 선생으로 취직 되었습니다. 취업생이 감 선생을 존경하고 또 열심히 공부하기 때문에 감 선생은 세 취업에 만족하고 있습니다.

396
UNIT 40. Discussing One's Occupation (Continued)

BASIC DIALOGUE

@. 품사합니다.

1. 비 suger로 화논이 엥립된 계신 것으로 알고 있는 것, 달리 주입에 품사합니까?

김

I understand that you have several older brothers, Mr. Kim; what occupations are they engaged in?

김

I've three older brothers and all of them are in different occupations.

1. 개업합니다.

개업합니다.

병원을 개업하고 있습니다.

공무원으로 있으면서

한편

부업

농사

농 사실 갖습니다.

3. 큰 형은 의사가 되어 인천에서 개업하고 있고,

동제 형은 공무원으로 있으면서 한편 부업으로

집에서 농사를 짓고 있습니다.

무역

사원

비지 않아(서)

자기

자신

My oldest brother became a doctor and he is practicing medicine in Inchon. As for my second oldest brother, he works for the government and at the same time, he does farming at home as side job.

export-import; trading

employee of a company

before long

[his] own

oneself
유니트 40

한국어 기본 과정

상기 자신의
상사

4. 세제 청은 부역 회사에 사원으로 (일하고)

있는가, 머지 않아서(서) 자기 자신의 차가우며

해 보겠다고 합니다.

부모님

방리

서로

돕습니다

도와 줄니다

도움

도움이 필요합니다

5. 형제들이 다들 다른 방법에서 일하거나

서로 떨어져 도움이 되지 않아요.

실습

실습합니다

(아모습니다)

6. 형제가 많아서 외롭지는 않지만 다 자기 삶에

바빠서 떨어져 다니다가(도) 못 합니다.

명절

로입니다

보이든지 합니다

7. 무슨 명절이야 되어야 형제들이 다 모보고 때에

보이든지 큰 형 때에 보이든지 하지요.

[he] himself

sales business

My third brother is working for a trading company; but he says he will soon try opening his own small shop.

부모님

area; field; line

each other; mutually

[he] helps

[he] gives an assistance

help; assistance

[it]'s a help ('help becomes')

It must be very helpful for you to have brothers in different occupations.

실습

[he]'s lonely; [he]'s lonesome

With so many brothers I am certainly not lonely, although everyone is so busy making his own living that we don't (even) see each other often.

명절

[we] gather

([we] either gather or...)

Only when certain festival days come, we gather either at our parents' or at the oldest brother's home.
8. 그림, 그 선택의 자신의 장래의 목표가 되는 것이 무엇인가요?

가능하다
불가능하다
가능하지 못 가능하다
두고 봐봅시다

9. 끝내요. 그런 의사를 가지고 있지만,
가능하지 못 가능하지 두고 봐봅시다.

Well, as for yourself, Mr. Kim, your future goal is to become a college professor, isn't it?

가능하다
불가능하다
가능하지 못 가능하다
두고 봐봅시다

Well, that's my hope. But we'll have to wait and see whether or not it's ('will be') possible.
Additional Vocabulary and Phrases

A. Occupational Fields:

1. 그는 공업에 종사하고 있습니다. He's in industry.
2. 그는 사업에 종사하고 있습니다. He's in business.
3. 그는 상업에 종사하고 있습니다. He's in commerce.
4. 그는 농업에 종사하고 있습니다. He's in agriculture.
5. 그는 어업에 종사하고 있습니다. He's in fishing.
6. 그는 수산업에 종사하고 있습니다. He's in marine harvesting.
7. 그는 건축업에 종사하고 있습니다. He's in building business.
8. 그는 자주업에 종사하고 있습니다. He's in free business.
9. 그는 잡사를 합니다. He's in sales.
10. 그는 어업업에 종사하고 있습니다. He's in hotel business.
11. 그는 생산업에 종사하고 있습니다. He's in production.
12. 그는 제조업에 종사하고 있습니다. He's in manufacturing.
13. 그는 무역업에 종사하고 있습니다. He's in trading business.
14. 그는 수출업에 종사하고 있습니다. He's in export business.
15. 그는 수입업에 종사하고 있습니다. He's in import business.

B. Occupational Titles:

1. 그는 은행가입니다. He's a banker.
2. 그는 건축가입니다. He's an architect.
3. 그는 사업가입니다. He's a businessman.
4. He's an enterpriser.
5. He's a capitalist.
6. He's an industrialist.
7. He's a novelist.
8. He's a writer.
9. He's an engineer.
10. He's a medical doctor.
11. He's a school teacher.
12. He's an (airplane) pilot.
13. He's a lawyer.
14. He's a missioner (of Catholic church).
15. He's a minister (of Protestant church).
16. He's a gardener.
17. He's a scholar.
18. He's a laborer.
19. He's a guardian (or protector).
20. He's an author.
21. He's a technician.
22. He's a school teacher.
23. He's a nurse.
24. He's a store-clerk.
25. She's a salesgirl.
27. 그는 선원입니다.  He's a sailor (a member of the crew of a ship).
28. 그는 학비입니다.  He's a trainee.
29. 그는 어부입니다.  He's a fisherman.
30. 그는 농부입니다.  He's a farmer.
31. 그는 신부입니다.  He's a priest.
32. 그는 간호부입니다.  She's a nurse.
33. 그는 목수입니다.  He's a carpenter.
34. 그는 운전수입니다.  He's a driver.
35. 그는 교수입니다.  He's a professor.
36. 그는 교환수입니다.  He's a telephone-operator.
37. 그는 가수입니다.  He's a jail-keeper.
38. 그는 상인입니다.  He's a merchant.
39. 그는 지배인입니다.  He's a manager.
40. 그는 고용주입니다.  He's an employer.
41. 그는 고용인입니다.  He's an employee.
42. 그는 장교입니다.  He's a (military) officer.
43. 그는 사병입니다.  He's an enlisted man.
44. 그는 경찰관입니다.  He's a policeman.
45. 그는 순경입니다.  He's a patrolman (or cop).
46. 그는 선장입니다.  He's a captain of a ship (or skipper).
47. 그는 기장입니다.  He's a captain of an airplane.
48. 그는 교장입니다.  He's a principal.
49. 그는 학장입니다.  He's a dean of college.
NOTES ON THE BASIC DIALOGUE

(Numbers correspond to the sentence numbers.)

1. An occupational name + 업무하다 means 'to engage in the occupation'.

3. 작다 is an irregular verb called /-s, -/ dropping stem: the stem final -A is dropped in its all inflected forms except for the present and future formal speech statement and question sentences. 작다 has three meanings depending on what object it takes:

농사를 짓다 'to farm'

밥을 짓다 'to cook (rice), to make food'

집을 짓다 'to build a house'

들여서 개업하다 'to practise medicine' ('to open the business of hospital')

and 모름사들 개업하다 'to practise law' ('to open the business of a lawyer') are idiomatic expressions.

4. 창사 'sales business' usually refers to a small sales business run by a merchant. 창사하다 'to keep a shop', 'to be in sales business' is its verb.

5. 도움 'help' is the substantive form of 돕다 'to help'.

9. 끓 in 끓 기능하다 'to be impossible' is a derivational noun prefix which often occurs as part of a word and it often denotes negation. Some of the common words which begin in 끓 are 끓 기능 'impossibility', 끓 안전 'insecurity', 끓 불편 'inconvenience', 끓 해 'unhappiness', etc.

GRAMMAR NOTES

1. -(으)면서

The -(으)면 form + particle 서, which may be followed by a pause, occurs
before another inflected expression to denote the final verbal expression is taking place simultaneously with the action of the verb in -(으)니/서. In this construction (i.e. -(으)니/서 + another inflected expression) the subject or topic for both inflected expressions is always the same and occurs only once. Examples:

1.Tambahdumisunyeori tibituboraveunmul.
'I watched T.V. while reading (a book).'

2. 'Do you drink coffee while smoking?'
'Do you smoke and drink coffee at the same time?'

3. 'If you speak only English while learning Korean, what can you do?'

4. 'Don't say you know it well when you know nothing about it.'

5. 'My older brother works for the Government and at the same time he does farming as a side job.'

Previously, in Unit 13, Grammar Note 3, and in Unit 16, Grammar Note 4, we learned the construction, a modifier word + 은/는, occurs before another inflected expression. We have also been introduced to the pattern -(으)니/서 'whether [it] does/is or ([it] does/is)' in Unit 37, Grammar Note 4. The pattern -(으)로/로 -(으)로/로 (i.e. the prospective modifier word + 은/는 which occurs twice in repetition with the same or different verbs) occurs just like -(으)니/서 -(으)로/로 before another inflected expression in a parallel way except that -(으)로/로 -(으)로/로 indicates future action or description and is translated as 'whether [it] will do/be... or ([it] will do/be).

1. 오늘 학교에 갈지 안 갈지 아직 몰라요. 'I don't know yet whether I'll go to school or not.'

2. 'Whether Korean will be difficult or easy, I'll be able to tell only when I study it.'

3. 'How can I tell now whether the child will be a scientist or a laborer.'
3. -기와 바쁘다 'to be busy in doing something'

The pattern -기와 바쁘다 means 'to be busy in doing something'. The form in the above pattern is always an action verb. There is another pattern which occurs frequently as the substitute of -기와 바쁘다 in the same meaning: -노라고 바쁘다.

요즘 저는 한국 말 배우기와 바쁘니다. 'I'm busy these days studying Korean.'
요즘 저는 한국 말 배우노라고 바쁘니다.

무엇을 하게 그렇게 바쁘니가? 'How come you're so busy?' ('In doing what, are you so busy?')
DRILLS

1. Combination Drill (based on Grammar Note 1)

선생: 공무원으로 일请您. 한편 농사도 짖습니다.

학생: 공무원으로 일으면서, 한편 농사도 짖습니다.

1. 그는 변호사 게임(을) 하고 일请您. 한편 저녁에는 대화에서 가토집니다.
   그는 변호사 게임(을) 하고 있으면서, 한편 저녁에는 대화에서 가토집니다.

2. 강사를 합니다. 한편 책을 쓰십니다.
   강사를 하면서, 한편 책을 쓰십니다.

3. 과자를 먹습니다. 한편 이야기를 합니다.
   과자를 먹으면서, 한편 이야기를 합니다.

4. 도시 생활은 재미 있습니까. 한편 본주 합니다.
   도시 생활은 재미 있으면서, 한편 본주 합니다.

5. 해가 떨습니다. 한편 비가 올니다.
   해가 내려서, 한편 비가 올니다.

6. 그분은 부자입니다. 한편 항상 돈이 없잖아 혐합니다.
   그분은 부자이면서, 한편 항상 돈이 없잖아 혐합니다.

[He] is a civil servant. At the same time, [he] does farming, too. While he works for the government, he does some farming, too.

He's practising law. At the same time, he teaches at a college in the evenings.

He's in a small sales business. At the same time, he is writing a book. While he's in a small sales business, he's writing a book.

He's eating sweets. At the same time, he's talking. While he's eating sweets, he's talking.

City life is interesting. On the other hand, it's hectic.

City life is interesting, but on the other hand, it is hectic.

The sun is out. At the same time, it's raining.

It's raining at the same time that the sun is shining.

He's a rich man. Yet on the other hand, he always says he doesn't have money.

He's a rich man, and yet he always says he is poor.
2. Transformation Drill

선생: 저는 한국말을 공부하고 한국역사를 배우요.

학생: 저는 한국말을 공부하고 한국역사를 배우요.

1. 저는 한식을 좋아하고 집 사람은 양식을 좋아해요.
   저는 한식을 좋아하고 집 사람은 양식을 좋아해요.

2. 그분은 돈이 많으나 건강은 좋지 않아요.
   그분은 돈이 많으나 건강은 좋지 않아요.

3. 제 친정은 수출업에 종사하고 제 동생은 수입업에 종사해요.
   제 친정은 수출업에 종사하고 제 동생은 수입업에 종사해요.

4. 한국여름은 매우 습기는 거의 없어요.
   한국 여름은 매우 습기는 거의 없어요.

5. 일본은 미국과 우호하고 소련과도 우호해요.
   일본은 미국과 우호하고 소련과도 우호해요.

6. 한국어는 문법이 복잡하나 소리는 간단해요.
   한국어는 문법이 복잡하나 소리는 간단해요.

7. 남편은 의사이고 부인은 간호부이에요.
   남편은 의사이고 부인은 간호부이에요.

I'm studying Korean and am also learning Korean history.

At the same time that I'm studying Korean, I'm learning Korean history, too.

I like Korean food and my wife likes Western food.

While I like Korean food, my wife likes Western food.

He has a lot of money but his health is not good.

Although he has a lot of money, his health is not good.

My older brother is in the export business and my younger brother is in the import business.

While my older brother is in the export business, my younger brother is in the import business.

Korean summer weather is hot but there is little humidity.

The Korean summer is hot, but on the other hand, there is little humidity.

Japan trades with America and also with the Soviet Union.

While Japan does trading with the United States, she also trades with the Soviet Union.

Korean is complicated in grammar but its writing is easy.

While Korean is complicated in grammar, its writing is easy.

The husband is a doctor and his wife is a nurse.

While the husband is a doctor, his wife is a nurse.
3. Response Drill

Is your Korean language study going to be finished soon?
Yes, it will be finished before long.

Will Mr. Kim practise law soon?
Yes, he’ll practise law before long.

Will he be discharged from the Army soon?
Yes, he’ll be discharged from the Army before long.

(Do you think) Korea’s industry will be developed soon?
Yes, Korea’s industry will be developed before long.

Will Mr. Lee go in a small sales business?
Yes, he’ll go in a small sales business before long.

Will the unification of North and South be achieved soon?
Yes, the unification of North and South will be achieved before long.

Will the two countries have diplomatic relations soon?
Yes, there will be diplomatic relations before long.

Will you be trading with Japan soon?
Yes, we’ll trade with Japan before long.

4. Response Drill

Has Mr. Kim repaired [his] house?
Yes, he repaired it by himself. (‘Mr. Kim himself repaired it.’)

Will you try to type it?
Yes, I’ll try to type it myself.
2. 학교에 공부하고 싶어 하지 않아요?
   예, 학생 자신들이 공부하고 싶어 하지 않아요.

3. 김 선생님이 그렇게 말했어요?
   예, 김 선생님이 그렇게 말했어요.

4. 선생님이 그것을 물었어요?
   예, 제 자신이 그것을 물었어요.

5. 그는 자기가 그것을 원해요?
   예, 자기 자신이 그것을 원해요.

6. 선생님이 직접 말하기 귀난해요?
   예, 제 자신이 직접 말하기 귀난해요.

7. 선생님이 무슨 방면에 응미가 있는지 몰라요?
   예, 제 자신이 무슨 방면에 응미가 있는지 몰라요.

Don't the students want to study?
No, the students have taken it on themselves to decide that they do not want to study.

Did Mr. Kim say that?
Yes, Mr. Kim himself said that.

Didn't YOU know that?
No, I myself didn't know that.

Does HE want it?
Yes, he himself wants it.

Is it difficult for you to say that to his face?
Yes, it's difficult for me to say that myself.

Don't you know what area you're interested in?
No, I myself don't know what area I'm interested in.

5. Response Drill

선생: 형제가 많으면 도움이 돼나?
학생: 예, 형제가 많으면 서로 도움이 돼요.

1. 그 두 사람은 사랑합니까?
   예, 그 두 사람은 서로 사랑해요.

2. 그분들은 적임니까?
   예, 그분들은 서로 적임니다.

3. 아이 들이 놀다가 싸울니까?
   예, 아이 들이 놀다가 서로 싸워요.

When you have many brothers and sisters, is it helpful?
That's right. When you have many brothers and sisters, it's mutually helpful.

Are those two in love?
Yes, those two love each other.

Are they enemies?
Yes, they are mutual enemies.

Do children fight while playing?
Yes, children fight with each other while playing.
4. 김 선생, 박 선생을 모릅니까?
예, 우리 세 티 만요.

5. 선생은 그분과 인사했습니까?
예, (처음은) 서로 인사했어요.

6. 정 선생은 부인을 훈습니까?
예, 정 선생과 부인은 서로 도와요.

6. Combination-Transformation Drill (based on Grammar Note 4, Unit 35)

선생: 부모님 편에 모십니다. 또는 형님 편에 모십니다.

학생: 부모님 편에 모인지 형님 편에 모인지 합니다.

1. 점심을 샌드위치를 먹습니다. 또는 할버거를 먹습니다.
점심은 샌드위치를 먹든지 할버거를 먹든지 합니다.

2. 졸업 후에 군대에 가겠습니다. 또는 외교관이 되겠습니다.
졸업 후에 군대에 가든지 외교관이 되든지 합니다.

3. 군복원이 되겠습니다. 또는 무역을 학겠습니다.
군복원이 되든지 무역을 학든지 학겠습니다.

4. 변호사 개업을 학겠습니다. 또는 국무 총리 고문관으로 임명된 임직원입니다.
변호사 개업을 하든지 국무 총리 고문관으로 임명된 임직원입니다.

Let's gather at our parents' home. Or, let's gather at older brother's home.

Let's gather either at our parents' home or at our older brother's home.

For lunch I eat sandwiches. Or, I eat hamburgers.

For lunch I eat either sandwiches or hamburgers.

I'll go to the military service after graduation. Or, I'll join the foreign service.

After graduation I'll either go into the military service or join the foreign service.

I'll join the Government. Or, I'll go into the export-import trading business.

I'll either join the Government or go into the export-import business.

I'll open a law office. Or, I'll work as Advisor to the Prime Minister for a while.

I'll either open a law office or work as Advisor to the Prime Minister for a while.
5. 저녁에는 텔레비전을 보나. 또는 신문을 읽습니다.
저녁에는 텔레비전 보든지 신문을 읽든지 합니다.
I watch T.V. in the evenings. Or, I read newspapers.

6. 돈이 필요하느되나. 또는 선생의 도움이 필요하느되나.
돈이 필요하느든지 선생의 도움이 필요하느든지 합니다.
I'll need money. Or, I'll need your help.

7. 교육이 있어야 합니다. 또는 지식과 실력이 있어야 합니다.
교육이 있든지 지식과 실력이 있든지 해야 합니다.
You have to have education. Or, you have to have knowledge and capability.

7. Response-Transformation Drill (based on Grammar Note 4, Unit 35)

선생: 한국 맛이 어색하도 백요겠어요?
학생: 예, 어색든지 어색지 않든지 백요겠어요.

1. 김치가 매워도 먹겠어요?
예, 매든지 먹지 않든지 먹겠어요.
Will you eat Kimchi even if it is hot?
Yes, regardless of whether it's hot or not, I'll eat it.

2. 내가 좋지 않아도 여기서 일락겠어요?
예, 내가 좋든지 좋지 않든지 여기서 일락겠어요.
Will you work here even if the treatment is not good?
Yes, regardless of whether the treatment is good or not, I'll work here.

3. 그 자동차가 비싸도 사겠어요?
예, 비싸든지 비싸지 않든지 사겠어요.
Will you buy that car even if it's expensive?
Yes, I'll buy it whether it's expensive or not.

4. 그 영화가 재미 없어도 보겠어요?
예, 재미 없든지 재미 있든지 보겠어요.
Will you see that movie even if it's not interesting?
Yes, I'll see it regardless of whether it's interesting or not.

5. 광미가 싫어도 대화에 담아야 해요?
예, 광미가 없든지 있든지 담아야 해요.
Do you have to attend college even if you are not interested in it?
Yes, I'll have to attend regardless of whether I'm interested or not.
UNIT 40

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

6. 식어도 학교에 와야 해요?
Do you have to come to school even if
you dislike it?
예, 식어도 학교에 와야 해요.
Yes, like it or not I have to come to
school.

7. 외롭지 않에도 친구가 필요해요?
Do you need friends even if you are not
lonely?
예, 외롭지 않에도 친구가 필요해요.
Yes, no matter whether I'm lonely or
not, I need friends.

8. Response-Transformation Drill (based on Grammar Note 2)

예, 식어도 학교에 와야 해요.
Yes, like it or not I have to come to
school.

Do you have to come to school even if
you dislike it?
예, 식어도 학교에 와야 해요.
Yes, like it or not I have to come to
school.

Do you need friends even if you are not
lonely?
예, 외롭지 않에도 친구가 필요해요.
Yes, no matter whether I'm lonely or
not, I need friends.

Do you suppose it'll be possible?
Well now, we will have to wait and
see whether it'll be possible or not.

Will that plan be successful?
Well, I couldn't say, we'll have to
wait and see whether it'll be
successful or not.

Do you suppose he will be a good worker?
Well, we'll have to wait and see
whether he'll be a good worker or not.

Do you suppose it'll be difficult to
study while working?
Well, I couldn't say, you'll have to
wait and see whether it'll be
difficult or easy.

Do you suppose that business will do
well?
Well, who knows, we'll have to wait
and see whether it'll do well or not.

Do you suppose the President will visit
Europe?
Well, I wouldn't know, we'll have to
wait and see whether he'll visit there
or not.

Do you suppose that Miss Kim and Mr.
Chung will get married?
Well, who can tell, we'll have to wait
and see whether they'll marry or not.

Do you suppose that Red-China would win
if she fought the Soviet Union?
Well, I couldn't say, we'll have to
wait and see whether she wins or not.
Supplementary Dialogue for Comprehension

부조: 한국에서 공무원은 인기가 있는 직업인가요?

김: 예입니다. 대부분 공무원의 분규일 잘한 개인 회사보다 월급이 작지 않기 때문에 될 수 있으면 개인 회사에 취직하려고 하는 것이 같습니다.

부조: 개인 회사에는 일 자체가 많은가요?

김: 어떤 회사든 취직 자체가 많지 않기 때문에 경제적 실용입니다. 그 외에도, 의사나 변호사 같은 직업이나 기간이 많지 않아요. 의사나 변호사 개업을 하면 수입이 좋고 생각이 안정되기 때문이에요. 그늘, 의사나 변호사 되기란 또한 쉬운 일이 아닙니다.

부조: 그것은 미국도 마찬가지입니다. 어느 나라에서도 기술이 없어야 살 수 있는 것 같습니다.

Narrative for Comprehension and Reading

김 선생은 쌍님이 세부게임에 취직이 당 딴습니다. 큰 젖은 의사 매화문 출업하고 지금은 교향에서 병원을 개설하고 있습니다. 둘째 젖은 정치 재고학을 전공했는데 지급은 외부에 공무원으로 취직 되었습니다. 셋째 젖은 상과 백화점 출업한 후 어느 무의 회사에 취직했습니다. 네째 젖은 그 두의 회사에서 얼마 동안 경험을 쌓은 후에 자기 자신이 장사를 매책하기 좋아요. 김 선생 자신은 문학을 전공했고 공부를 더 계속하여 밝은 희망을 받은 후에 교수가 되는 것이 의업입니다. 그런데 앞으로 기회가 있으면 외국 유학을 한것이 헛수고 없이 야노 기킨이나 정부의 장학금을 신청해 본 생각이지만 쉬어 실례이 그리 좋지 않아 걱정입니다. 하여간 운이 좋기를 바랄 것입니다.
UNIT 41. Going Out to the Countryside

BASIC DIALOGUE

농촌
경치
벼밭
있으면
있으면 보입니다

Ah, the more I see of Korea's rural scenery the more it looks truly beautiful.

farm village; rural district scenery
the more I see... the more...
certainly; the truth
[it] looks beautiful

물
산물
물자
풍경
마치
현상할나다
현상시킴나다

under; below
at the foot of the mountain
valley
scenes; sights; views
just
I'm reminded of
[it] reminds me of; [it] makes me think of

The view of the farmers working in the valley at the foot of that mountain over there reminds me exactly of a painting.

물
바람
물밭
걸고 있습니다
물밭을 갑니다
있나 봅니다

wet field
dry field
(cultivated) field
[they]'re plowing
[they] till the fields
[it] looks like there is
It's spring now, so it looks as if they are plowing the fields.

- ground; land; soil
- [they] dig the ground
- seed
- [they] spray; [they] scatter
- [they] scatter seeds
- after having dug (in advance) and...
- when the time comes
- [they]’re going to start

Once the ground is all plowed, when the time comes, they will start sowing.

**KOREAN BASIC COURSE**

**UNIT 41**

3. 이레, 봄이 되었으니가 눈밭은
 준비가 있으나 봄입니다.

4. 일부 면동을 봤습니다가, 때가 되면
 시동 봄기 시 작하리는 것이지요.

5. 한국의 농촌에서 농부들은
 농사를 많이 짓습니까?

6. 아직도 남한에서는 빼 농사가 제일 가지요.
 그러나, 최근에는 여러 가지 수출용 농작물에
 많은 관심을 가지고 있습니다.

**제33**

What kind of farming do Korean farmers do mostly?

- 밥
- 제일
- 제일 간니다
- 최근에는
- 농작물
- 수출용 농작물
- 관심
- 관심을 과 슬 히 합니다

- grain of (unhusked) rice
- No. 1; most
- [it] is in first place
- recently
- agricultural products
- agricultural products for export
- a feeling of concern
- [they]’re concerned; they feel concerned

Rice farming is still in first place in South Korea. But recently, people have come to be greatly concerned about agricultural exports.
7. Since there are more wet fields than dry ones in South Korea, a lot of rice must be produced. By the way, what crops are produced for export?

8. Some rice is also exported, but in addition to that, there are special Korean products like Ginseng, tobacco and so on.
9. 또, 농산물은 아니라도 오줌은 빌가지

비나, 왜도 전복하고 어떤 농관에서는

의도와 농사기적으로 유명합니다.

제임스

finished silk

[it]'s famous

양, 그 때문에 최근에 한국의 비나가 그림계

유명하게 되었군요!

10. 야, 그래서 최근에 한국의 비나가 그림계

유명하게 되었군요!

11. 그림, 한국 벚한 일반적으로 농사는 일년에

한번 밖에 못 짓는가요?

경, 종류

과식

일년식(과식)

12. 절에 따라 나는 종류가 달라지지만

일반 과식은 거의 일년식입니다.

개량합니다

종자

개량된 종자를 사서서

13. 그나마, 왜도 개량된 종자를 사서서

한국에서도 벚 농사를 일년에 두 번 할 수

있게 됐다고 합니다.

season

kind; sort

grains; cereals; crops

annual crops

We raise different crops in different

seasons, but the average cereal gives

only one crop annually.

[they] improve (quality)

seeds

(by) using the improved seeds

They say that in the future by using

improved seeds, it will be possible to

raise two grain crops in Korea also.
If that could happen, the food problem would be completely solved. What wonderful news that is!
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Additional Vocabulary</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>아재</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. 배추</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. 토배추</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. 고추</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. 샐러리</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. 시금치</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. 파</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. 양파</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. 마늘</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. 오이</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. 무</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. 토마토</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. 봉향나무</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13. 콩나물</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14. 쌈추나물</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15. 생강</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16. 버섯</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17. 감자</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18. 고구마</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19. 토마토</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20. 당근</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Fruits and Nuts

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>apple</td>
<td>pear</td>
<td>peach</td>
<td>grape</td>
<td>persimmon</td>
<td>banana</td>
<td>melon</td>
<td>strawberry</td>
<td>watermelon</td>
<td>chestnut</td>
<td>walnut</td>
<td>peanut</td>
<td>Ginko-nut</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Crops and Cereals

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1. 쌀</th>
<th>2. 보미</th>
<th>3. 밀</th>
<th>4. 콩</th>
<th>5. 옥수수</th>
<th>6. 박화</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(husked) rice</td>
<td>barley</td>
<td>wheat</td>
<td>bean</td>
<td>corn</td>
<td>cotton</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### D. Sea products

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>생선</td>
<td>fish (from sea)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>물고기</td>
<td>fish (‘water meat’)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>새우</td>
<td>shrimp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>굴</td>
<td>oyster</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td>게</td>
<td>crab</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.</td>
<td>조개</td>
<td>shellfish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.</td>
<td>문어</td>
<td>octopus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.</td>
<td>호산어</td>
<td>cuttlefish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.</td>
<td>해초</td>
<td>seaweeds; marine plants</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.</td>
<td>김</td>
<td>(dry) laver</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.</td>
<td>미역</td>
<td>(a kind of seaweed called Undaria Pinnatifida)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### E. Trees and Flowers

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>소나무</td>
<td>pine tree</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>밤나무</td>
<td>chestnut tree</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>가나무</td>
<td>persimmon tree</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>단풍나무</td>
<td>maple tree</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td>은행나무</td>
<td>Ginko tree</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.</td>
<td>범랑나무</td>
<td>whiteoak tree</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No.</td>
<td>Korean</td>
<td>English</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----</td>
<td>--------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.</td>
<td>호통 나무</td>
<td>paulownia tree</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.</td>
<td>로부 마 나무</td>
<td>popular (tree)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.</td>
<td>벼들 나무</td>
<td>willow (tree)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.</td>
<td>야가시야 나무</td>
<td>acacia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.</td>
<td>사철 나무</td>
<td>evergreen (tree)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.</td>
<td>대 나무</td>
<td>bamboo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.</td>
<td>꽃 나무</td>
<td>flowering tree</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.</td>
<td>장미 꽃</td>
<td>rose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.</td>
<td>국화 꽃</td>
<td>chrysanthemum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.</td>
<td>백합 꽃</td>
<td>lily</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.</td>
<td>무궁화</td>
<td>the rose of Sharon (Korean national flower)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18.</td>
<td>개나리</td>
<td>forsythia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19.</td>
<td>진달래</td>
<td>azalea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.</td>
<td>로스모스</td>
<td>cosmos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21.</td>
<td>연꽃</td>
<td>lotus flower</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
(Numbers correspond to the sentence numbers.)

4. 시작하다는 것입니다 '[they]'re going to start' is the contraction of 시작하라고 하는 것입니다 ('[it]'s what [they]'re going to start').

6. 제일 간단히 ('[it] goes No. 1') means '[it] is in first place'.

N에 관심을 가슴니다 '[they]'re concerned about N' is an idiomatic expression, which literally means ('[they] have a feeling of concern').

8. 수출하고 있습니까 '[they]'re exporting but' (See Grammar Note 5).

9. 아니라도 in 농작물은 아니라도 'though [they]'re not agricultural products' is the contraction of 아니라고 해도 ('even though [you] can not say it is...').

치다 in 함께와 누예(의)치다 'to raise chickens and silkworms' has a variety of meanings depending on what object it takes. Review the following expressions:

- 타이промышлен
  - '[He] types.'
- 피아노를 치입니다.
  - '[He] plays piano.'
- 정구를 치니다.
  - '[He] plays tennis.'
- 양을 치니다.
  - '[He] raises sheep.'

12. 일년간 (収穫)which literally means 'yearly produced (crops)' occurs with or without (収穫) 'crops' to mean 'one crop annually'.
UNIT 41
KOREAN BASIC COURSE

GRAMMAR NOTES

1. The more ~ the more

The pattern (- 느리 게) - / / 을 / 수록 followed by another inflected expression occurs as the Korean equivalent of 'the more, ... the more...', which denotes an increase of intensity of the action or description of the verb in - 느리 게 for the following inflected expression. The same verb is repeated twice, once in - 느리 게 and once in - 느리 게 form, but the - 느리 게 form may be dropped in the above construction without changing the meaning.

한국 밖에서 배우는 수록 어렵습니다. 'The more I study Korean the more it becomes difficult.'

사람들은 돈을 벌수록 더 많이 고통에 입니다. 'The more people make money the more they want to have.'

한국 농촌의 경치는 (보리) 본 수록 정말 아름답게 보입니다. 'The more I see of Korea's rural scenery the more it looks truly beautiful.'

이 책은 (보리) 읽을 수록 제미 잡아요. 'The more I read this book, the more interesting it is.'

2. - 게 보이기 / 일 - 게 들리기

The - 게 form of a class of description verbs + 보이기 means 'to look + adjective'; the - 게 form of a class of description verbs + 들리기 means 'to sound + adjective'.

(a)

저 산이 아름답게 보입니다. 'That mountain looks beautiful.'

그 아이가 똑똑하게 보이는군요! 'The child certainly looks bright, isn't he?'

김 장군의 새 차동차가 정말 비싸게 보이지요? 'General Kim's new car looks really expensive, doesn't it?'

(b)

그 음악 소리가 정말 쾌쾌하게 들립니다. 'That music really sounds melancholy.'

424
The radio sounds too loud.'

'Does what I say sound strange?'

3. -시켜다

시켜다 as an independent verb means 'to order (meals)'.

무엇을 시켜주실래요?

'What would you [like to] order?'

저는 빨래 닭면을 시켜요.

'I've already ordered Naengmyun.'

시켜다 added to a small class of nouns occurs as a derivative verbalizer, which generally has a causative meaning (i.e. 'to have [someone] do...'). However, it is suggested that every verb which ends in -시켜다 built on a noun should be memorized as a separate lexical entity.

### Nouns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nouns</th>
<th>Derivatives</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>교육</td>
<td>'education'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>연상</td>
<td>'reminding'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>공부</td>
<td>'studying'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>심부름</td>
<td>'errand'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>일</td>
<td>'work'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>목욕</td>
<td>'bath'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>교육시켜다</td>
<td>'to educate'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>연상시켜다</td>
<td>'to be reminded of'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>공부시켜다</td>
<td>'to make [someone] study'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>심부름시켜다</td>
<td>'to have [someone] go around for errands'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>일시켜다</td>
<td>'to have [someone] work'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>목욕시켜다</td>
<td>'to bath [someone]'</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. -나보다 'seems to be -ing'

The construction, the -나 form of a verb + 보다 occurs as a substitute of -었/은/는 것 같다 (Unit 18), -نى/은/는 들었습니다 (Unit 32). Compare the following:

'It looks as if the farmers are plowing the fields.'
'It seems that the school is near.'

5. -별다 '... but'

The particle 는 added to the formal polite statement sentence ending -별다 (i.e. -별다만) before another inflected expression occurs interchangeably with the -지만 construction (Unit 11). Compare the following pairs:

한국 말이 어렵지만 재미 있습니다.
한국 말이 어렵습니다만 재미 있습니다.

사람은 많이 날지만 수출용 농작물은 생산되지 않아요.
사람은 많이 날지만 수출용 농작물은 생산되지 않아요.

미니 스커트가 유행하고 있지만
나는 한 번도 입어 보지 않았어요.
미니 스커트가 유행하고 있습니다만
나는 한 번도 입어 보지 않았어요.

Korean is difficult but is interesting.'

'Rice is produced a lot, but agricultural products for export are not produced.'

'Mini-skirts are in fashion, but I've never worn one.'
1. Combination-Transformation Drill (based on Grammar Note 1)

I see the scenery. It looks more beautiful.
The more I see of the scenery the more beautiful it looks.

I read this book. It's more interesting.
The more I read this book the more interesting it gets.

I'm on good terms with him. He becomes more likable.
The closer we become the more I like him.

I think of that problem. I get more headache.
The more I think of that problem, the more headache I have.

He is becoming famous. He wants to become more famous.
The more famous he becomes, the more he wants to be known.

I bear it. I get angrier.
The longer I remain patient, the angrier I become.

I study a lot. There're more things I don’t know.
The more I study, the more things I do not know.

The car is large. It is more expensive.
The larger the car is, the more expensive it is.
2. Transformation Drill

선생: 그 사람이 자기가 대통령인 것 같이 말합니다.

학생: 그 사람이 자기가 대통령인 것 같이 말합니다.

1. 저 풍경은 어떤 그림을 연상시킵니다.
저 풍경은 마치 어떤 그림을 연상시킵니다.

2. 아이가 죽을 것 같이 올�니다.
아이가 마치 죽을 것 같이 올니다.

3. 고양이 이야기를 들으면 고양이가 갑자기 긁습니다.
고양이 이야기를 들으면 마치 고양이가 갑자기 긁습니다.

4. 엄마 사진을 볼니다. 엄마를 떠난 것 같이 기뻐합니다.
엄마 사진을 보면 마치 엄마를 떠난 것 같이 기뻐합니다.

5. 그분은 화가 나면 미친 사람 같습니다.
그분은 화가 나면 마치 미친 사람 같습니다.

6. 일본 식당에 가면 일본에 간 것 같습니다.
일본 식당에 가면 마치 일본에 간 것 같습니다.

3. Response-Transformation Drill (based on Grammar Note 2)

선생: 한국 농촌의 경치가 아름답습니까?

학생: 예, 한국 농촌의 경치가 아름답습니다.

Is Korea's rural scenery beautiful?

Yes, Korea's rural scenery looks beautiful.
1. Is a woman pretty when she is made-up?
   Yes, a woman looks pretty when she is made-up.

2. Is it strange for a woman to smoke?
   Yes, it looks strange for a woman to smoke.

3. Are Chinese characters difficult?
   Yes, Chinese characters look difficult.

4. Is that student bright?
   Yes, that student looks bright.

5. Is the voice of that announcer outstanding?
   Yes, the voice of that announcer sounds excellent.

6. Is the airplane noisy?
   Yes, the airplane sounds noisy.

7. Is the dog's barking loud?
   Yes, the dog's barking sounds loud.

4. Response Drill (based on Grammar Note 3)

   선생: 이 그림은 무엇을 연상시킵니까?  
   /한국의 농촌/  
   학생: 한국의 농촌을 연상시킵니다.

   1. Who educates children in America?  
      [parents]  
      The parents educate the children.

   2. Do you make the student study?  
      [yes]  
      Yes, I make the student study.
Who sent him on an errand? [mother]
Mother sent him on an errand.

Will you let your daughter get married early? [no]
No, I won't let my daughter get married early.

Does your boss make you work a lot? [yes]
Yes, my boss makes me work a lot.

Who bathes the children? [my wife]
My wife bathes the children.

What food would you like to order? [Pulkoki]
I will order Pulkoki.

5. Response-Transformation Drill (based on Grammar Note 4)

선생: 비가오는 것 같습니까?
학생: 예, 비가 오나 봅니다.

1. 봄이 온 것 같습니까?
   예, 봄이 왔나 봅니다.

2. 저 농부가 사시로 밭을 가지고 있습니까?
   예, 저 농부가 사시로 밭이 봅니다.

3. 한국 농부들은 밭 농사를 많이 짓는 것 같습니까?
   예, 한국 농부들은 밭 농사를 많이 짓나 봅니다.

4. 양계 사기가 쉬운 것 같습니까?
   예, 양계 사기가 쉬나 봅니다.

Does it seem to be raining?
Yes, it looks as if it's raining.

Does it look like spring?
Yes, it looks as if spring has come.

Does it seem that the farmer is sowing?
Yes, the farmer looks as if he's sowing.

Does it seem that Korean farmers do a lot of rice farming?
Yes, it seems that Korean farmers do a lot of rice farming.

Does raising chicken seem to be easy?
Yes, raising chicken looks easy.
5. 인삼이 왜로 좋은 것 같습니까?
에, 인삼이 왜로 좋나 봅니다.

6. 요즘 잘은 치마가 유행하는 것 같습니까?
에, 요즘 잘은 치마가 유행합니다.

7. 남아에서 첫이 많이 나는 것 같습니까?
에, 남아에서 옷이 많이 나나 봅니다.

8. 그분이 정치에 관심이 있는 것 같습니까?
에, 그분이 정치에 관심이 많습니다.

6. Response-Transformation Drill

선생: 세계에서 어느 나라가 공업이 제일 발달했어요? [미국]
학생: 세계에서 미국이 제일 많지 않다.

1. 남아에서 무엇이 제일 가는 능력이 이요?
사람/

2. 미국 중서부 지역에서 무슨 공업이 발달했어요?
/자동차 공업/

3. 어느 도시가 제일 아름다워요? [샌프란시스코]
/샌프란시스코가 제일 많다.

4. 무슨 음식이 제일 인기가 있어요? [중국 음식]
/중국 음식이 제일 많다.

5. 미국에서 어떤 경치를 제일 좋아하셔요?
/나이아가라 폭포/

Does Ginseng seem to be good as medicine?
Yes, Ginseng appears to be good as medicine.

Does it seem that short skirts are in fashion these days?
Yes, short skirts seem to be in fashion these days.

Does it seem that a lot of rice is produced in South Korea?
Yes, it seems that a lot of rice is produced in South Korea.

Does he seem to be concerned about politics?
Yes, he seems to be interested in politics.

What country has the most developed industry in the world? [the United States]
The United States is ('goes') No. 1 in the world.

What is the leading agricultural product in South Korea? [rice]
Rice is No. 1.

What kinds of industries are developed in the Midwest of the United States? [auto industry]
The auto industry is No. 1.

Which city is most beautiful? [San Francisco]
San Francisco is No. 1.

What kind of food is most popular? [Chinese food]
Chinese food is No. 1.

What scenery in the United States do you like best? [Niagara Falls]
Niagara Falls is No. 1.
7. Response-Transformation Drill (based on Grammar Note 1, Unit 28)

In the farm willages, are people interested in agricultural products for export?

Yes, people in the farm villages have come to be interested in agricultural products for export.

Are students concerned about politics these days?

Yes, students have come to be concerned about politics these days.

Are you concerned about children's education?

Yes, I've come to be concerned about children's education.

Are the farmers interested in raising chickens for a side job?

Yes, farmers have come to be interested in raising chickens as a side job.

Are the Korean people concerned about Korea's industrial development?

Yes, the Korean people have come to be concerned about Korea's industrial development.

Are farmers interested in the improvement of agricultural products?

Yes, farmers have come to be concerned about the improvement of agricultural products.

Are politicians concerned about the solution of food problems?

Yes, politicians have come to be concerned about the solution of food problems.

Is Mr. Kim interested in getting married?

Yes, Mr. Kim has come to be concerned about getting married.
Are you interested in him?
Yes, I’ve come to be interested in him.

What kinds of agricultural products are produced in quantity in Korea? [rice]
A lot of rice is produced.

What comes to mind when you see rural sceneries? [hometown]
I think of my hometown.

What is his name known for? [educator]
He is known as an educator.

What are the major products of the state of Michigan? [automobiles]
A lot of autos are produced there.

What are the major products of Florida? [orange]
A lot of oranges are produced there.

When you catch a cold, do you have a high temperature? [yes]
Yes, I have a high temperature when I catch a cold.

What do they produce in Texas? [agricultural products]
They produce a lot of agricultural products.
9. Transformation Drill (based on Grammar Note 5)

선생: 상을 수출하지만 인삼과 연초도 수출해야. Rice is exported but Ginseng and tobacco are also exported.

학생: 상을 수출하더라도 인삼과 연초도 수출해야. 

1. 정치에 관심이 있지만 정치가가 되고 싶지 않아요. I'm concerned about politics but I don't want to be a politician.

정치에 관심이 있음니까만 정치가가 되고 싶지 않아요. 

2. 이 산의 경치가 아름답지만 금강산보다 못해요. The scenery of this mountain is beautiful but it cannot be better than that of Diamond Mountain.

이 산의 경치가 아름답습니까만 금강산보다 못해요. 

3. 그분을 알지만 친한 사이는 아니에요. I know him but we're not very close to each other.

그분을 알니까만 친한 사이는 아니에요. 

4. 한국도 공업이 발달했지만 미국만큼 발달하지 못했어요. Industry has been developed in Korea also but it is not developed as much as in America.

한국도 공업이 발달했습니까만 미국만큼 발달하지 못했어요. 

5. 저희 회사는 수출도 하지만 수입도 해요. Our company not only does importing but also exporting. 

저의 회사는 수출도 입니다만 수입도 해요. 

6. 생활 수준이 향상되었지만 아직도 더 향상해야 해요. The living standard has been improved but it has to be further improved.

생활 수준이 향상되었습니까만 아직도 더 향상해야 해요. 

7. 한국어를 배웠지만 아직 잘하지 못해요. I have studied Korean but I cannot speak it well yet.

한국어를 배웠습니까만 아직 잘하지 못해요.
8. 그 문제가 어느 정도 해결되었지만 완전히 해결되지 않았어요.

그 문제가 어느 정도 해결되었습니까만, 완전히 해결되지 않았어요.

Is your Korean study all finished?
No, it is not completely finished yet.

Has he recovered?
No, he has not yet recovered completely.

Do you know everything you've studied so far?
No, I don't know it completely yet.

Has the Mideast problem been all solved?
No, it has not been solved completely yet.

Can cancer be cured?
No, it can not be cured completely yet.

Has that country become a communist country?
No, it has not become a communist country completely yet.

Have you finished building the house?
No, I haven't finished building the house completely yet.
Supplementary Dialogue for Comprehension

제임스: 한국에는 어느 지역에서 농사를 많이 짓습니까?

박: 중부 지역에서 많이 짓습니다. 동부 지역은 산 풍이 많아 논밭을 많이 볼 수 없습니다.

제임스: 한국에서도 미국처럼 농사 짓는데 기계를 많이 쓰니까요?

박: 아니요. 아직 기계를 쓰는 곳이 적습니다. 그러나 앞으로 기계를 사용해 농사 짓는 방법을 개발할 수 있기 바랍니다.

제임스: 한국의 농산물은 어떤 것이 있습니까?

박: 섬, 뿌어, 밀 등이 있습니다. 특히 한국 산재는 일본에서 인기가 있어 일본으로 수출 되고 있습니다. 요즘은 한국 농부들도 농사를 짓는 방법을 개발하는 데 노력하고 있습니다. 그리고 수출용 농작물에 많은 관심을 갖게 되었습니다.

제임스: 그러니 자연 농부들의 생활도 나아지겠지요.

Narrative for Comprehension and Reading

남한은 북한보다 기후도 따뜻하고 산도 많지 않어서 땅길이 Publish하게 농업이 발달했습니다. 동부 지방에 높은 산들이 있어서 하구 지방보다 많이 농사를 짓지 못했습니다. 한국의 논밭은 미국과 같이 넓지 않아서 미국처럼 농사를 짓는데 기계를 많이 쓸 수 없습니다. 따라서, 많은 농작물을 생산하기가 힘들었습니다. 그러나 앞으로 한국도 미국처럼 기계를 사용해 농작물을 생산하면 농부들의 삶도 훨씬 풍요롭지 않을까 기대합니다.
UNIT 42. Going Out to the Countryside (Continued)

BASIC DIALOGUE

Let's take a picture here with the mountain behind us for a background, and then go down to the stream bank at the foot of that hill.

That's good. Shall we take a picture of two of us together? I'll ask that school boy who came on a picnic to press the shutter for us.
Do you come out to the countryside often, Mr. Park?

as far as I'm concerned; as for me
since I'm a person who grew up in the country

Since I'm a person who grew up in the country, I like mountain-climbing and long for nature.

So, whenever I have time I get out of Seoul and often come like this to the countryside.

From now on I'm also going to try to come out to the countryside every weekend to get a change.
In spring and autumn, I come out to the countryside almost every weekend to appreciate nature and enjoy life.

flowers bloom
butterfly
butterflies fly
[they] plant trees
grains ripen
grains are ripe
harvesting
[they] harvest
sight; view; scene

When spring comes, flowers bloom, butterflies fly around and farmers plant vegetables and trees; and in autumn the grains and fruits ripen and when I see the sight of the harvest, it makes me forget all the complicated city life, (you know).

Your expression is really poetic, Mr. Park.
Additional Vocabulary

A. 새

1. 새
2. 참새
3. 갈매기
4. 까마귀
5. 비둘기
6. 오리
7. 비둘기
8. 멧
9. 비둘기
10. 독수리

Birds

bird
sparrow
magpie
crow
swallow
duck
crane
pheasant
pigeon; dove
eagle; vulture

B. 곤충

1. 파리
2. 모기
3. 벌레
4. 겨
5. 빈테
6. 나비
7. 비

Insects and Flies

fly
mosquito
insect (cover term)
worm (cover term)
bed-bug
butterfly
bee
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>8.</td>
<td>벌 북</td>
<td>flea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.</td>
<td>밤 지 붓</td>
<td>firefly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.</td>
<td>야구 삼 이</td>
<td>dayfly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.</td>
<td>점 자 마</td>
<td>dragon-fly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.</td>
<td>맹 대 기</td>
<td>grasshopper; locust</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### C. 동물

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>소</td>
<td>cow; ox; cattle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>말</td>
<td>horse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>개</td>
<td>dog</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>쥐</td>
<td>rat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td>돼 지</td>
<td>pig</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.</td>
<td>고 양 이</td>
<td>cat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.</td>
<td>토 기</td>
<td>rabbit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.</td>
<td>사 자</td>
<td>lion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.</td>
<td>호랑 이</td>
<td>tiger</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.</td>
<td>솔 생 이</td>
<td>monkey</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.</td>
<td>모 기 마</td>
<td>elephant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.</td>
<td>뱀</td>
<td>snake</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.</td>
<td>다 뽀 리</td>
<td>squirrel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.</td>
<td>물 개</td>
<td>otter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.</td>
<td>닭</td>
<td>chicken</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
UNIT 42  KOREAN BASIC COURSE

16. 고래 whale
17. 여우 fox
18. 거북(이) totoise
19. 알igator alligator

D. 자연과 기후

1. 장마 long-continued rain
2. 홍수 flood; deluge
3. 태풍 typhoon
4. 가뭄 drought
5. 서미 frost
6. 안개 fog
7. 풍작 good harvest
8. 풍년 fruitful year; good crop
9. 풍작 poor harvest; short crop [yield]
10. 풍년 lean year
11. 우물 well

Nature and Weather
GRAMMAR NOTES

1. N + 마/이마(서)

마 is added to a noun which ends in a vowel and 이마 to a noun which ends in a consonant. Particle 서 may be added to N 마/이마 as an extended construction without changing the meaning.

The pattern N 마/이마(서) which means something like '[it] is N and so', 'since [it] is N' may be followed by a pause before another inflected expression and denotes that the N is the cause or reason for the succeeding inflected expression.

жу는 시골에서 자란 사람이야서,  
동산을 좋아 해요.

그는 지금 시간중 이마(서), 진화를  
받을 수 있음이야.

그는 부식자야서, 신문을 읽지 못 해요.

'Since I'm a person who grew up in the  
country, I like mountain-climbing.'

'He is in class now, so he can not get  
the phone.'

'Being an illiterate person, he cannot  
read newspapers.'

'Since Dr. Kim is a scholar, he has  
no flexibility.'

2. -기로요!

-기로요! is a statement sentence final form which is added to a verb or copula stem, or stem + honorific and/or tense suffixes. The -기로요! sentence occurs as a response to someone's interrogative-word question or statement to which the speaker responds emphatically. Observe the following:

A: 선생은 왜 그렇게 바쁘신가요?  
'Why are you so busy?'

B: 오늘 일이 추 밥기로요.  
'I have a lot of things to do these  
days, (you know).'

A: 선생은 주말이면 자주 야외에  
가는 것을 보니 채 자연을  
즐기는 것 같군요.  
'I see you often go out to the country-
side on weekends; you certainly seem  
to enjoy nature.'
'That's right. Going out to the countryside on weekends is good for me to get a change. And when I see mountains and fields, they make me forget all the complicated city life, (you know).'

Note that an inflected expression ending in -가든 without being added by the sentence particle 임 may also occur before another inflected expression and is used as a conditional verb form just like the -(으)면 'if...'. Therefore, the non-sentence final verb endings -가든 and -(으)면 are mutually interchangeable.

리가 와긴다 는말 오세요.
리가 있으면

그 커피가 맛있다 제게도 안한다
그 커피가 맛있으면 사 주십시오.

잔돈이 있겠다 이십원만 빌려
잔돈이 있으면 줄시겠어요?

'If you have time, come over.'

'If the coffee is good, buy me a cup, too.'

'If you have small change, can you lend me just W20?'
1. Response Drill

何年에 사진을 적어 달라고 부탁할까요?
/저군현/

합성: 저군현에게 사진을 적어 달라고 부탁합니다.

1. 누구에게 사진을 적어 달라고 부탁할까요?
/ 사진사/

사진사에게 사진을 적어 달라고 부탁합니다.

2. 무엇을 사 달라고 부탁할까요?
/커피/

커피를 사 달라고 부탁합니다.

3. 언제와 달라고 까닐 사진에게 부탁할까요?
/ 내일/

내일과 달라고 까닐 사진에게 부탁합니다.

4. 이 편지를 누구에게 전해 달라고 부탁할까요?
/ 이 사람/

이 사람에게 전해 달라고 부탁합니다.

5. 누구에게 새 차를 보여 달라고 부탁할까요?
/ 판매원/

판매원에게 보여 달라고 부탁합니다.

6. 무엇을 배경으로 사진을 적어 달라고 부탁할까요?
/ 산/

산을 배경으로 사진을 적어 달라고 부탁합니다.

Drills

Whom shall we ask to press the shutter (of the camera) for us? [that soldier]
Let's ask that soldier to press the shutter for us.

Whom shall we ask to take our picture? [photographer]
Let's ask the photographer to take our picture.

What shall we ask him to buy us? [coffee]
Let's ask him to buy us coffee.

When shall we ask Mr. Kim to come? [tomorrow]
Let's ask him to come tomorrow.

To whom shall we ask him to deliver this letter? [Mr. Lee, the president of the company]
Let's ask him to deliver it to Mr. Lee, the president of the company.

Whom shall we ask to show us a new car? [salesman]
Let's ask the salesman to show us one.

With what behind us for a background, shall we ask him to take our picture? [mountain]
Let's ask him to take our picture with the mountain behind us for a background.
2. Response-Transformation Drill

선생: 교외에 자주 나옵니까?

학생: 네, 교외에 자주 나오곤 합니다.

1. 주말에 그분을 만남니까?

선생: 네, 주말에 그분을 만나곤 합니다.

2. 시간이 있으면 야외로 소풍 가습니까?

선생: 익, 시간이 있으면 야외로 소풍 가곤 합니다.

3. 기회가 있으면 사진을 적습니까?

선생: 네, 기회가 있으면 사진을 적곤 합니다.

4. 고향 이야기를 듣으면 고향을 그리워 합니까?

선생: 네, 고향 이야기를 듣으면 고향을 그리워 하고 합니까.

5. 기본 전환이 위해 음악을 감상합니다?

선생: 네, 기본 전환이 위해 음악을 감상하기 합니다.

6. 음이 있으면 도시를 벗어 납니까?

선생: 음, 음이 있으면 도시를 벗어 나곤 합니다.

7. 돈이 있으면 그 나라에 득을 납니까?

선생: 네, 돈이 있으면 그 나라에 득을 하고 합니까.

Do you come out to the countryside often?
Yes, I do come out to the countryside quite often.
Do you meet him on weekends?
Yes, I often meet him on weekends.
Do you go on a picnic to the countryside when you have time?
Yes, I do go on a picnic sometimes to the countryside when I have time.
Do you take pictures whenever you have a chance?
Yes, I do take pictures whenever I find a chance.
Do you miss your hometown when you hear about your hometown?
Yes, whenever I hear about my hometown I feel longing for it.
Do you find it a restful change to appreciate music?
Yes, I sometimes appreciate music to get a pleasant change.
Do you get out of the city when you have time?
Yes, when I have time I sometimes get out of the city.
Do you stop by the tearoom whenever you have money?
Yes, whenever I have money I regularly stop by the tearoom.

3. Transformation Drill

선생: 저는 시골에서 자란 사악이기 때문에 동산을 좋애요.

학생: 저는 시골에서 자란 사악이기 때문에 동산을 좋애요.

Because I'm a person who grew up in the country, I like mountain-climbing.
Being a person who grew up in the country, I like mountain-climbing.
1. Because he's the son of a rich man, he does not know anything about suffering.

2. That expression is not good because it's too poetic.

3. Because he's a striver, he became a success early.

4. Because the father was an educator, he saw to it that his son was well educated.

5. Because he is a famous doctor, he has a lot of patients all the time.

6. Because he is a (simple) country man, he is not suited to the city life.

7. Being a man of a great deal of social experience, he has understanding.

4. Substitution Drill

1. He enjoys nature.

2. He enjoys life.

3. He enjoys music.
UNIT 42
KOREAN BASIC COURSE

5. Response Drill


학생: 왜냐하면 분주한 도시 생활을 피하기 위해서 혼자 합니다.

1. 왜 한국 말이 그렇게 어렵습니까? /문법이 복잡합니다.
   왜냐하면 문법이 복잡하기 때문입니다.

2. 왜 길 선적은 늘 농촌을 그려내 합니까? /농부이였습니다.
   왜냐하면 그는 농부이었습니다.

3. 왜 주말마다 소풍 갈니까요? /기분 전환을 위해서 즐깁니다.
   왜냐하면 기분 전환이기 때문에 즐깁니다.

Why do you always go out to the countryside? [It makes me forget the hectic city life.]
That's because it makes me forget the hectic city life.

Why is Korean so difficult? [Grammar is complicated.]
That's because the grammar is complicated.

Why does Mr. Kim long for farm villages? [He was a farmer.]
That's because he was a farmer.

Why do you go on a picnic every weekend? [It's good for a change.]
That's because it makes a good change.
4. 왜 선생을 사진 찍는 것을 좋아하지냐?  /좋은 기념이 됩니다./
왜냐하면 좋은 기념이 되기 때문요.

5. 어떻게 그분은 벌써 집을 떠났는가?  /놓벽이 없습니다./
왜냐하면 그분은 능력이 있기 때문요.

6. 왜 종부 둔은 가운데 바쁘니가?  /추스든/
왜야 합니다./
왜냐하면 가운데 추스든 해야 하기 때문요.

7. 왜 그는 성공하지 못 했는가?  /노력을 하지 않습니다./
왜냐하면 노력을 하지 않기 때문요.

8. 그분이 왜 집을 잘못았는가?  /한국으로 이사하게 되었습니다./
왜냐하면 한국으로 이사하게 되기 때문요.

6. Response Drill

선생: 저 선생의 표현은 시적이십니까?
학생: 예, 참고로 시적이에요.

1. 여자들은 너무 감상적이니가?
   예, 참고로 여자들은 너무 감상적이에요.

2. 그분은 인생을 즐길 줄 알니가?
   예, 참고로 인생을 즐길 줄 알어요.

3. 학생 들이 한국어를 배우려고 노력을 많이 했다니가?
   예, 참고로 노력을 많이 해요.

Is that gentleman's expression poetic?
Yes, his expression is really poetic.

Are women too emotional?
Yes, women certainly are too emotional.

Does he know how to enjoy his life?
Yes, he really knows how to enjoy his life.

Do the students make a great deal of effort to learn Korean?
Yes, they really make a great deal of effort.

Why do you like taking pictures?
[They become good souvenirs.]

That's because they make good souvenirs.

How come he became a Minister (of the Government) already? [He has ability.]

That's because he has ability.

Why are the farmers busy in autumn? [They have to harvest.]

That's because they have to harvest in autumn.

Why couldn't he succeed? [He doesn't make an effort.]

That's because he doesn't make any effort.

Why did he sell his house? [It turned out that he has to move to Korea.]

That's because it turned out that he has to move to Korea.
4. 농부들이 귀석을 추수하는 광경은 아름답습니까?
   예, 정말 아름답습니다.

5. 복잡한 도시 생활을 벗어 나고 싶습니까?
   예, 정말 벗어 나고 싶어요.

6. 그분은 자연을 사랑합니까?
   예, 정말 사랑해요.

Is the scene of the farmers harvesting grains beautiful?
Yes, it is really beautiful.

Do you want to get out of the hectic city life?
Yes, I really want to get out.

Does he love nature?
Yes, he really does.
Supplementary Dialogue for Comprehension

지연: 왜 밥을 해서 동산에 가는데 경치가 참 아름답다고요.

박: 네, 그здрав. 밥을 해서 동산에 가는데 경치는 보면서 볼수록 더 아름답게 보이지요.

지연: 밥을 먹어서 나눠먹는 서울의 경치는 정말 아름답지요.

지연: 밥 삽심은 자주 교외로 나 간니까?

박: 네, 주 많이 자주 가족을 먹이고 야외로 소풍 가지요. 그것이 한 주일의 피로를 완전히 다니다.

지연: 밥을 해서 동산에 가는데 경치가 좋은데 갔움이 있습니까?

박: 네, 밥을 먹는 나무 뿌리에서 가족과 같이 가기라 좋어서 놀습니다. 그러니까 공정, 정능도 소풍이하기 좋은 곳이 많습니다.

Narratives for Comprehension and Reading

(1)

서울 부근에는 소풍이나 동산가기 좋은 곳이 많습니다. 동산을 좋아하는 사람들은 밥을 먹고 도롱뇽 등에 많이 올려 접됩니다. 그리고 공정이나 정능동은 교통이 편리하므로 가족을 먹이고 소풍하기에 좋습니다. 냉과 가을에는 많은 화산들이 소풍하는 것을 볼 수 있습니다. 서울에서 좀 먼 허리에도 구경할 만한 곳이 많이 있지만 밥에 갔다 오기는 좀 어려운 일입니다.
7.1e. A-14-el
A1-61°114-V-°1, s16 AI+

전주일 동안 네네 복잡한 서울의 도시 생활에 지치고 지루해 지곤
의하게 기본 전반을 위해서 동산하는 것이 저희 취미이니까요.
첫째, 서울을 벗어 나는 것이 정신적으로 좋고 또 아름다운 한옥의
농촌과 산의 경치와 풍경을 즐길 수 있는 기회가 됩니다. 둘째로, 나는
원래 시골에서 남아서 시골에서 자란 사람이라서 시골의 평화스러운
풍경이 늘 그립고 자연을 감상하고 싶은 텐데가 많습니다.

그래서 따뜻한 봄 첫에는 동산과 소풍을 즐기고 여름에는 바탕가에 가서
수영이나 낚시를 하고 가을 첫에는 이곳 저곳 멋을 여행하며
절이나 경치 좋은 산을 찾아 타닙니다. 이렇게 해서 인생을 즐기며
자연을 감상하고 삶니다. 어떻게 해야할까요? 선생도 한번 그렇게 하실
노력해 보지 않겠습니까?
When I read newspaper articles these days there are so many criminal incidents, it's frightening.

Some articles sound like falsehoods, they are so hard to believe.
부 새
부 붙임을 니다
부 붙임을 달아요
부 붙임을 씌워요
부 붙임을 쓰세요
부 붙임을 쓰시다
부 붙임을 쓰는다

3. 신문이 가끔 좀 과장하는 경향이 있지 않지요. 그 이유는, 과도하게 뉴스를 빼우기 많이 진 것은 사실이지요. 그런 사회가 부 붙임 증가하고 붙이나요.

감자자기
신고
감동합니다
농부님
신고에 따라(서)

4. 그런 야마 감자자기 많은 시골 사람들이 도시로 밀집하니까, 자연히 범죄가 가라앉아 신고에 따라(서) 노는 게 아닐까요?

기사가 들립니다

5. 여기 오늘 아침 신문에(도) 빈 큰 기사가 냅니다. 이거 좀 보세요.

감옥
성년
미성년
죄수
석방했습니다

The newspapers are not without some tendency to exaggerate sometimes. Nevertheless, it is true that there've been more crimes in recent days. I see it as evidence that society has become corrupt.

suddenly
population

Perhaps that's because a lot of rural people are concentrating suddenly into big cities and the crime rate increases along with the population, don't you think?

an article appeared

Here's another big article—in this morning's paper. Have a look at this one.

jail; prison
grownup
juvenile; minor
criminal; prisoner

[they] released him (from the prison)
No sooner was a juvenile offender released from jail than he committed robbery again and he was arrested by the police, it says.

in the middle of the night

rear door

through the back door

[he] intruded

woman; female

[he] assaulted

[he] robs [her] of

[he] robbed and

[he] escapes; [he] runs away

the poor; people in poverty

slum

[he] hides [himself]

[he] conceals

[he] conceals; [he] hides

[they] detected out; [they] found out
UNIT 43  KOREAN BASIC COURSE

7. 밤중에 뜬 문을 통해(서) 어느 집에 침입해서, 
한 여인을 낙성하고 변호 8,500원을 빼앗아 
가지고 도망쳤는데 변호문에 숨어 있는 것을 
경찰이 찾아 냈다고요.

도난
도난(을) 탕해율 낙성
시립 병원
침시
입원했다가

8. 그라고 도난과 낙성한 당한 여인은
시립 병원에 침시 입원했다가 지금은
집에 돌아 왔다고...

[he] is careful; [he] acts carefully

The world sure is in a mess! Not only should everyone be careful, but don't you think parents especially should watch their children well so that juvenile delinquency can be eliminated?
Furthermore, public safety officials should accept responsibility and strive to make it possible for citizens to live and feel secure.

the proper authorities
utterly; entirely
[we] rely on; [we] leave it up to
I don't think that we can leave everything up to the police these days.

the entire society; society as a whole
atmosphere; environment
[we] obey the law
spirit

[it] becomes created
[he]'s pleasant; [he]'s cheerful
pleasant society

In the first place, if citizens strive to develop a law-abiding spirit, I believe we can achieve a more pleasant social atmosphere.
### Additional Vocabulary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Korean</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Christianity</td>
<td>기독교 = 예수교</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Catholic</td>
<td>천주교 = 케트פיק교</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Protestant</td>
<td>신교</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. Presbeterian</td>
<td>장로교</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Methodist</td>
<td>감리교</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Baptist</td>
<td>십자가교</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Episcopal</td>
<td>성공회</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Judaism</td>
<td>유대교</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Buddhism</td>
<td>불교</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Conficianism</td>
<td>오교</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. Mohammedanism</td>
<td>회회교</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. Shamanism</td>
<td>무당</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
GRAMMAR NOTES

1. 

The Construction 

The Construction -자 마(는)자 which may be followed by a pause before another inflected expression occurs as an adverbial expression to mean 'as soon as something is done or takes place' for the final clause. The verb of the -자 form may include the honorific suffix but no other suffixes. The tenses and/or levels of the speech for the whole sentence (i.e. -자 마(는)자 + an inflected expression) are generated in the final inflected expression.

*Line 1*  

인국에 달자 마자 뻣지 쓰겠습니다.  

'I'll write you as soon as I arrive in Korea.'

학교가 끝나자 마자 집으로 떠나자.  

'I'm planning to leave for home as soon as the school is over.'

Note that the patterns -(-이)면 곧 ('soon... when...') and -는 때로('on doing...') are often used in place of -자 마자 before the final clause and are both translated as 'as soon as...', 'No sooner... than...'. Observe the following:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Korean</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I'll get married as soon as I get a job.</td>
<td>취직하면 결혼이예요.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'Come back as soon as you finish your work.'</td>
<td>일이 끝나면 곧 돌아 오세요.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. 

-망하다 is a noun derivative verbalizer which is added to a class of nouns to make verbs. Any derivative verb which is in -망하다 is in passive meaning in English. While -망하다 itself does not occur as an independent verb, not like 입다 or 떠다, it sometimes occurs with a noun which occurs as the object of the verb 입다 in the exactly same meaning as the one word derivative verb.

Compare the following common -망하다 derivative verbs and their original nouns.
Noun | Derivative Verbs
---|---
'robbery' | 'it' is robbed'
'invasion' | 'it' was invaded'
'sacrifice' | 'it' is sacrificed'
'assault' | 'she' is assaulted'
'arrest' | 'he' was arrested'
'raping' | 'she' was raped'

3. Infinitive + 가지고

The infinitive of an action verb + 가지고 which may be followed by a pause occurs before another inflected expression and denotes the action of the verb will have (or has) been done as a prerequisite or preparation for the following inflected expression. The subject or topic of the two sequential inflected forms (i.e. Inf. 가지고 + another inflected expression) is the same and occurs only once, with tenses and/or speech levels generating in the second inflected expression.

'I intend to go to Korea after having studied Korean (first).'
'I'll go to the class after having read this book completely.'
'I (bought and) brought coffee for you, sir.'
'I'm thinking of buying a house after having earned enough money.'
'I'm thinking of earning enough money first and then buy a house.'
'I'll telephone you after I have found out the train schedule.'
Supplementary Dialogues for Comprehension

(1)

A: 오늘 야행 신문에서 한 미성년자의 범죄 사건에 대해 기사를 읽었습니까?

B: 아니요, 무슨 이야기인지 모르겠네요. 또 무슨 삶인 사건이 있었나요?

A: 살인 사건이 아니고 광도 사건이었습니다. 여제 오후에 경찰서에서 석방된 죄수가 뒷시간 후에 다시 어느 상점에 침입해서 많은 현금을 빼앗았어 가지고 도망쳤습니다.

B: 그래, 아직 잡히지 않았어요?

A: 야 탑적이거나 부에 빈민들에 손여 있는 것을 경찰이 체포했습니다.

B: 아이구, 참 다양합니다. 그런데 다른 (관)계를 많이 studied 사망은 없습니다.

A: 그 상점이 도난당하기 외 한시간 전에 한 젊은 여자가 중앙 공원에서 난행을 당해서 시립 병원에 입원중인데, 경찰은 지금 그 죄수와 관련 있는지 조사중 이랍니다.

(2)

미국 사함: (참) 서울의 인구가 지금 이렇게 많은데 5년 전에 제가 한국에 왔을 때는 이렇게 많은 노동을 괴지 않았어요.

한국 친구: 최근 서울의 보고에 의하면 현재 서울의 인구가 사백만이 넘는다고 합니다. 그러나가 십년 전에 비교해서 거의 두 배가 되었다고 할 수 있습니다.
미국 사람: 그림너가 왜 그렇게 값싸게 서울의 전구 가 눈에 띄었을까요?

한국 친구: 거기에선 흔한 사람이나 별도로 공급하여 가니가, 텔레비전이나 방송이 되는 경우가 많고, 몇 지점에, 농촌이나 시골 사람 들이 서울이나 부산 같은 도시로 집중하기 때문에 있다고 보니다.

(3)

X: 김 선생, 누가 이 도시의 행정을 담당하고 있습니까?

Y: 지난 해까지는, 손 이란씨가 행정을 지냈으나 그 후 지난 일년 동안은 김 청길씨가 시 행정을 맡아 왔지요.

X: 아, 그래서 다들 시의 행정 분위기가 달라졌다고 들었습니다.

Y: 네, 그렇습니다. 김 청길씨가 시장이 된 후에는 시 공무원의 부품을 없어도 많은 노력을 해서 크게 성공했습니다.

오늘의 시 문제는 은행자들 뿐만 시민 들이 전적으로 믿고 의뢰하기 되었고, 모든 사람 들이 전보다 많은 법률 지키는 정신을 갖게 되던 것 같습니다. 그러니가, 자연히 밀집한 사회 분위기가 조성되고 있습니다.
UNIT 44. Society and Social Life (Continued)

NARRATIVE

1. 저는 요즘 신문 읽기에 취미를 붙였습니다.

미국 신문과 달리
나 같이 바쁜 사람에게
적합
적합합니다.
적합(이) 됩니다.

2. 한국 신문은 미국 신문과 달리 페이지 수가 적어, 나 같이 바쁜 사람에게 위 시간 절약이 되기로.

저는 요즘 신문 읽기에 취미를 붙였습니다.

미국 신문과 달리
나 같이 바쁜 사람에게
적합
적합합니다.
적합(이) 됩니다.

Since Korean newspapers, unlike American ones, have fewer pages, a busy man like myself saves a lot of time, you know.

As far as I know, two kinds of papers, morning and evening, are published in Seoul. (I think) they say there are more afternoon papers.
Political articles are invariably put on the first page. Economic and international news appear on the second page and editorials also are usually put there.

The third page, as the social column, carries day to day important events and news and so it attracts my attention.
6. 마치 마지막으로, 사전은 문화란인데 체육, 문학, 교육 등의 기사가 나지요. 여기에 독자가란도 있어, 독자 독의 비평이나 평론같은 것이 나타납니다.

Lastly, the fourth page is the cultural section and articles on sports, literature, education and so forth are on this page. The Readers' column is there too, so such things as readers' criticisms or comments appear there.

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

UNIT 44

7. 광고는 각 페이지의 하반부를 차지합니다. 영화나 음반, 상품 전단은 보통 크게 나눈 대신에 광고 비드 비사지요.

Ads occupy the lower half of each page. The ads for movies and general goods are usually printed big, accordingly, advertising expenses are high.

8. 사전 광고란에서 구직, 매매, 세, 구인 광고등을 많이 볼 수 있습니다.

In the ads section of the fourth page, you can see many such ads as 'job wanted', 'for sale', 'for rent', 'help wanted', etc.
Those who are seeking employment or part-time jobs run ads in the 'job wanted' column. Ads such as 'tutor' and 'private teaching' are numerous.

The scope of the ads in the buy and sell column is rather broad, but there are ads for selling and buying goods, or real estate ads such as for land or housing.

"Se", which means renting out or renting a house, office or merchandise, includes many such ads as house for rent with deposit or by monthly payments, etc.
In the 'help wanted' or 'recruiting' section, employers, that is, individuals, companies, or public organizations, put out ads recruiting people.

recently
(marriage sought)
other side; partner; mate
case; circumstances

These days there is also a 'wanted to wed' column, so there are also cases where people who want to marry seek their partners.

Additional Vocabulary and Phrases

1. 비
비이 없어요.
비었어요.
debt
I'm in debt.
I'm in debt.

2. 계약
계약을 받았어요.
계약을 맺었어요.
계약을 썼어요.
contract; lease
[I] received a contract.
[We] concluded a contract.
[I] made a contract.

3. 죄
죄와
죄를 썼어요.
crime; sin
sin
[He] committed a crime.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>4.</th>
<th>(처)벌</th>
<th>punishment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>벌을 주셨어요.</td>
<td>[We] punished [him].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>벌을 받으셔요.</td>
<td>[I] was punished.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>처벌해어요.</td>
<td>[They] punished [him].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td>sentence</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>사형 선고를 받으셔요.</td>
<td>[He] was sentenced to death.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>[He] received a death penalty.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.</td>
<td>murdering</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>살인</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>살인자</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>살인책어요.</td>
<td>[He] murdered [someone].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.</td>
<td>suicide</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>자살</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>자살책어요.</td>
<td>[He] committed suicide.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.</td>
<td>trial</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>재판</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>재판소</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>재판을 받으셔요.</td>
<td>[He] was on trial.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.</td>
<td>pick-pocket</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>호의</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>호의를 당よかった어요.</td>
<td>I was robbed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.</td>
<td>love affair</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>연애</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>연애책어요.</td>
<td>[I] had a love affair.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
GRAMMAR NOTES

1. -/11/는 한(은)

한 'the limit' occasionally occurs as a free noun synonymously as 'end'. The construction -/11/는 한 (i.e. the present modifier word + 한) which may be followed by a pause occurs as an adverbial before another inflected expression and is translated as 'as far as [one] does something', 'as long as [one] is/does such-and-such'.

'As far as he is a person who will do such a thing.'

'He says that he will not retire as long as his health is all right ('his health permits').'

'As long as our love lasts, we will not be unhappy.'

'As long as the actress is young and beautiful, her popularity may be maintained but....'

2. 대신

대신 ('a substitute') is a noun. The construction N 대신에 which occurs as an adverbial before an inflected expression means 'instead of N', 'in place of N', 'in lieu of N'. 그 대신에 'instead' is a sentence adverbial.

'I came here in lieu of the Ambassador.'

'Give me a check instead of cash.'

The construction -/11/는/는 대신에 occurs before another inflected expression and is translated as 'instead of doing...', 'in place of doing...', 'while...', and is an adverbial for the succeeding expression.

'I'll teach Chinese instead of studying Korean.'

'Instead of writing [him], talk to him directly over the phone.'
'While the National Assembly members make a lot of money, they spend a lot, too.'

'While she is pretty, she has a strange personality.'

대신하다 is the denominal verb of 대신 which occurs transitively and means 'to take the place of', 'to substitute', i.e. N₁ 이/가 N₂ 을/를 대신하다 means 'N₁ takes the place of N₂'. The construction N₁을/를 대신해서 which occurs as an adverbial before another inflected expression is translated as 'on behalf of N₁', 'in place of N₁'.

'On behalf of the entire class of ours, I express my sincere gratitude to you.'

'The Prime Minister is scheduled to visit the United States in place of the President.'
KOREAN BASIC COURSE

UNIT 44

Narratives for Reading and Comprehension

(a)

게임스서는 오줌 납마다 본주한 생활을 하고 있습니다. 그렇지만 아침에 줄려하기 전과 저녁 식사 후에는 납마다 잡지 않고 하는 일이 있습니다.

그것은 조간 신문과 석간 신문을 읽는 일입니다. 물론 미국에서 발행되는 신문도 가끔 보지만 시간이 없어서 못 보는 헤드라인과 뉴스보도 같음 신문을 매일 읽음 시간이 없습니다. 그 때문에 시각을 찾아하기 위해서 메이저 수가 많지 않은 한국에서 발행되는 신문을 자주 매일 읽기 시켰습니다. 지금은 신문 읽기에 대한 취미를 끌었습니다.

한국 신문을 읽는 데 또 하나의 중요 약은 한국어 공부에 큰 도움이 되기 때문에입니다. 매일 신문에서 읽는 기사 틈이 그가 하는 일이 많은 관계가 있습니다. 그리고 신문에서 배운 것이 가까운 많은 한국 사람들과 한국 말도 많이 문해 살 수 있었습니다.

(b)

한국 신문의 게임스서는 의료 경제 기사와 세계적인 뉴스가 실립니다.

가끔 경제의국 국제 뉴스가 다른 메이저에 있는 일이 있으나, 현재의 중요한 신문에서는 매일 같은 메이저에 나와있습니다. 대부분 신문에는 사실과 국제 뉴스뿐만 같은 메이저에 실립니다. 하면사 사회신문에 그날 그날에 일어난 사건에 대한 기사가 낮입니다. 그 밖에, 한국 신문에서 볼 수 있는 것은 문화신, 뉴스신, 그리고 스포츠 전문 문화신, 뉴스신 등이 있습니다.

문화신에는 문화, 뉴스, 뉴스 등의 기사가 나며, 뉴스신의 뉴스들의 레지 토어 기사에 대한 비평이나 평론 같은 것을 볼 수 있습니다.

스포츠 전문 문화신은 신문의 과 메이저의 뉴스를 찾아보는 데 오줌은 새로운 스포츠 전문과 입직 뉴스들을 많이 낮아 많은 뉴스 들의 주목을 받습니다.

여러 신문사들이 상품 전문과 광고의 수많은 신문사들 유지하기 때문에 상품 전문과 광고가 높 중요하다고 볼 수 있습니다.

471
(Mr. Bruce visited General Choe's office at the Ministry of National Defence.)

BASIC DIALOGUES

대화 A

(Capt. Shin, Aide to the General is in the General's room.)

소장

가야!

통신사

뵈어 왔습니다.

1. 소장님 가야! AP 통신사의 부르스
   기자가 빠져 왔습니다.

Sir! Mr. Bruce, reporter of Associate Press, has come to see you.

취재군

의속 시간

시간이 끝나? Appt. time;

二. 그림스? 범서 의속 시간이 끝나?

그림, 토어 오라고 하시요.

Oh? Is it already time for that appointment? Well, tell him to come in.

신 데취

예, 알겠습니다.

(A little later, Bruce comes in the General's Office.)

부르스

바쁘신데(예)도 불구하고

시간을 빼나다

시간을 내 주셔서 감사합니다.

in spite of your busy schedule
[I] spend time; [I] provide time
thank you for giving me time
4. 귀하의 니 안녕하십니까? 바쁘신데 어

재하고, 이렇게 시간을 내 주셔서

정말 감사합니다.

5. 아니요, 괜찮소. 자, 여기 의사에

앞으시오.

영광

영광으로 생각합니다.

6. 감사합니다. 또 다시 봅게 될 것은

영광으로 생각합니다.

대화 B

부르소

편마디

여주어 보십시오.

7. 김군님에게 편마디 여주어 보아도

편 المواطن가?

부으신지

부르소

8. 부으신지 내가 매달릴 수 있는 것입니다가?

청년

젊은 청년

부부

부르소

youth

young men; youths

service (in the military)
Does every Korean young man have to serve in the military?

Yes. Every man has a duty to enter and serve in the armed forces when he becomes 20 years of age.

What is the usual length of service?

If drafted, one can get discharged after two years of service.
volunteer (soldier)

But if one goes into the Navy, Marine Corps or Air Force as a volunteer, he usually serves for 3 years.

enlisted men

officer (in the military)

military academy

Isn't there any way one can go in as an officer from the beginning without going in as an enlisted man? I mean, without graduating from the military academy.

while in college

(officer) candidate

[he] passed exams

training

[he] gets training

Of course, you can become an officer without going through the military academy, but if you want to be an officer, you have to take and pass an officer candidacy exam during or after college. Later, you must receive training.
**Additional Vocabulary**

**A. Branches of Armed Forces**

1. 육군  
   1. 보병  
      infantryman
   2. 포병  
      artillaryman
   3. 천병  
      military policeman
   4. 의병  
      medic
   5. 공병  
      (military) engineer
   6. 통신병  
      signal corps man
   7. 기갑병  
      armored corps man
   8. 낙상병  
      parachutist

2. 해군

3. 공군

4. 해병대

**B. Military Units**

1. 부대  
   (military) unit
2. 본대  
   squad
3. 소대  
   platoon
4. 중대  
   company
5. 대대  
   battalion
6. 연대  
   brigade
7. 사단  
   division
8. 군단  
   corps
9. 군  
   army
1. Authoritative Speech and Familiar Speech

So far, we have had the two most frequently used speech levels: Polite Speech (Formal; Informal) and Plain Speech (Formal; Informal). We have learned that two styles, formal and informal, in both levels, Polite (Units 2 and 4) and Plain' (Units 16 and 17) are mixed in one's speech in each level.

In Korean, there are two other speech levels which you will hear less frequently than Polite and Plain Speech, and which you as a foreigner may not be expected to use at all. You will need to be able to recognize them, however, and knowing them will help you to distinguish the relationship of two native speakers who use these speech levels and/or styles. One of the two is called Authoritative Speech and the other Familiar Speech.

(A). Authoritative Speech

Any sentence which ends in a verb form of -A म. ( - is added to a vowel verb stem; -A to a consonant verb stem) is an authoritative speech sentence. The so-called Authoritative Speech is usually one-sided between two speakers. In modern democratic Korean society no one seems to stick to this style all the way through in his speech to the same addressee but mixes it with Polite Speech if and when one ever uses it. The tendency, however, is that Authoritative Speech is gradually disappearing and it is less heard than it used to be in the old class-oriented society. Nevertheless, this speech level is still used in certain cases by:

(1) husband to his wife, or occasionally vice versa;

(2) officers of older age (in military, police or certain law enforcement agencies) to their junior officers or to their men;

(3) government officials of older age to their younger junior officials;

(4) the master or employer and older members of his family to younger adult servants or subordinates.
(B). Familiar Speech

The last speech level or style which we will call Familiar Speech will also be useful only for recognition of the social relationship of the two native speakers. The speech level has four distinctive sentence final verb ending forms:

- 에 is a statement.
- 라 or - 라/ 느 가! is a question.
- 라 is a suggestion ('let's...').
- 라 or - 라 가! is a command.

The so-called Familiar Speech level is sometimes one-sided but is often used by both parties. However, the speaker who uses this speech level does not always stick to it but often mixes it with Plain Speech (Unit 16), usually Plain Speech Informal style. Familiar Speech (often mixed with the Plain Speech) is generally used:

(1) to or among male familiar friends in the same age group in their youth, or to old classmates;

(2) to sons-in-law by parents-in-law;

(3) to grown-up nephews or nieces by elderly uncles and aunts;

(4) to a youth by familiar elderly neighbors or by his father's friends.

Note that the retrospective statement and question sentence verb final forms in Familiar Speech are - 에 and - 느 가! respectively.
Supplementary Dialogues for Comprehension

(a)

A: 김아사, 근에 임대차지 얼마나 되었어요?

김아사: 벌써 이년이 거의 다 되어 가는군요. 두달 후에 맨 만 이년이 됩니다.

A: 그럼, 머지 않아 계대할 수 있겠군요?

김아사: 글쎄요, 제가 집에서 소금하여서 입대했으면 두달 후에 계대할 수 있으나 저는 지원비로 들어 왔으니까, 임력 동안 머 복부 책임 됩니다.

A: 김아사의 병과는 무엇이죠?

김아사: 처음에는 병이었으나 지금은 낙하산병이죠.

A: 낙하산병이면, 공군에 있다는 말이네요?

김아사: 아니죠. 육군에도 낙하산 병태가 있습니다.

A: 소속 부대의 이름은 무엇인가요?

김아사: 저의 소속은 제6군 제9사단 제3연대 낙하산 제1중대 제5소대입니다. 그리고 제가 제5소대의 제3부대 분대장이죠.

(b)

님: 이번 오후 김 사장님이서 무슨 전화요지 없어요?

아내: 또 무슨 전화 볼이에요. 아침에 전화한 것은 당신에게 말하지 않았어요?

님: 아니지. 당신이 난에 전화했던 것을 오너 버렸어. 미안해요.

내가 김 사장에게 전화한 볼가?

아내: 당신 마음대로 야구해!
(조금 후에)

남편: 역보세요. 거기 김 사장 사무실인가요? 여기는 한일 회사의 송 사장인데 김 사장에게 좀 부탁하요.

역보시오. 김 사장? 송이요. 그게 어제 외출한 것 어떻게 됨소?

김 사장: 좀 늦어져서 미안하게 됩니다. 모든 일이 외출한 대로 됐으니 잠시하십시오.

그래서, 역보. 송 사장, 언제 좀 시간이 있겠소? 밖에서 곰자키 우리

서울에서 좀 만나자고 하는데 내일 점심 같이 할 수 있겠소?

남편: 그것 참 좋은 소식이요. 그렇게 합니다. 그럼 내일 12시에 겸처럼

한일관에서 역봉요?

김 사장: 잘 됩소. 그렇게요.

Narrative for Reading and Comprehension

한국의 첫 번째 젊은 들은 누구나 만 쓰레가 되면 마운에 입대하여 군대 복무를
할 의무가 있습니다. 대학 졸업은 출입할 때까지 징병을 연기하는 일이 있습니다. 군대 복무 기간은 군에 따라 다르고 각 개인의 건강에 따라서 됩니다. 육군은 징병으로 소집되어 사병으로 입대하면 2년 후에
제대할 수 있습니다. 해군, 해병대 그리고 공군의 사병은 지원병 제도가기

때문에 지원병은 적어도 삼년 동안 복무해야 됩니다. 사병이 되지 않고

장교로 군에 복무할 수 있는 것이 두 가지 있는데, 하나는 물론 처음부터

사관 학교에 입학해서 장교 훈련을 받고 졸업하는 길입니다. 사관 학교을

나 오지 않고 장교가 되는 둘째 길은 일반 대학 졸업생으로 장교 후보생

시험을 거쳐 합격하면 장교 후보생 학교에서 훈련을 받은 후에 될 수 있습니다. 장교가 되면 사병보다 좋은 점이 많고 대원도 빨 종으로 군 복무 기간이 최소

3년에서 7년까지 되기 때문에 직업군인이 되고 삶이 없는 대학 교육을 받은

청년 들은 사병으로 입대하기를 원한다라고 합니다.
If every young man has to go into the armed forces sooner or later, I believe that they all can get worthwhile experience.

Yes, you learn a lot in the army. But on the other hand, so far as time and economy are concerned you also lose a lot.

I mean both military; armed forces (personnel) [we] maintain the situation that [we] have to maintain burden; charge
I mean both from the individual and the national point of view. Because of our country's situation of having to maintain especially large armed forces, the country's economic burdens are too big.

development
people (of a nation)
living standards
improvement
influence
[it]'s influenced; [it]'s affected

So, the nation's economic development and the improvement of the people's living standards are greatly affected.

on the economic recovery
sacrifice
[they] sacrifice
even to the point of sacrificing
military power; military forces
'arms; weapon

That's because we have to maintain large armed forces and new weapons even to the point of sacrificing in the area of economic reconstruction.

such a point; such an aspect

That's certainly the truth. ('That's certainly one aspect of it.')

national defense power
Otherwise, our defense power will become weak, and if our defenses are weak there's a danger that we will again be invaded by communists at one time or another. That's the reason [we must maintain military strength].

incident

the Korean Incident

I remember

I certainly understand what you mean, General. I still remember the June 25th Incident vividly.

tragedy

comedy

Such a tragedy should certainly not happen again in Korea.

peace

war

people; nation

so that it does not come up

in advance

[we] prevent

it's natural; [I] take it for granted

I believe it's a natural thing
11. 평화롭게 사생하는 한국 민족에게 그런 전쟁이 다시 일어나지 않도록 방지하는 것이 당연할 줄 알닙니다.

I believe it's natural for the Korean people, who love peace, to try to prevent such a war from occurring again.

12. 곰자면 국권 전체가 다 동쳐서 정신적으로 부정하고 있어야 되겠습니까.

To do so, our entire nation must be united and also must be armed spiritually.
### Additional Vocabulary

**Military Ranks**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>신병</td>
<td>Recruit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>이등병</td>
<td>Private</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>일등병</td>
<td>Private first class</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>상병</td>
<td>Corporal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td>하사</td>
<td>Sergeant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.</td>
<td>중사</td>
<td>Staff Sergeant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.</td>
<td>상사 (이동)</td>
<td>Sergeant 1st class</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.</td>
<td>상사 (임동)</td>
<td>T Sergeant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.</td>
<td>상사 (운동)</td>
<td>Master Sergeant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.</td>
<td>준위</td>
<td>Warrant Officer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.</td>
<td>소위</td>
<td>2nd Lt. (Army, Air Force, Marine), Ensign (Navy)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.</td>
<td>중위</td>
<td>1st Lt. (Army, Air Force, Marine), 2nd Lt. (Navy)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.</td>
<td>대위</td>
<td>Captain (Army, Air Force, Marine), 1st Lt. (Navy)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.</td>
<td>소장</td>
<td>Major (Army, Air Force, Marine), Lt. Commdr. (Navy)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.</td>
<td>중장</td>
<td>Lt. Col. (Army, Air Force, Marine), Commdr. (Navy)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.</td>
<td>대장</td>
<td>Colonel (Army, Air Force, Marine), Captain (Navy)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.</td>
<td>준참모</td>
<td>Brig. General (Army, Air Force, Marine), Rear Admiral (Navy)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18.</td>
<td>소참모</td>
<td>Major General</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19.</td>
<td>중참모</td>
<td>Lt. General</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.</td>
<td>대참모</td>
<td>General</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21.</td>
<td>원수</td>
<td>General of the Army</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
한국의 작은 쌍년 동은 누구나가 자 한반은 군대 복무를 해야 되는 것이
원칙입니다. 그 택서, 모두가 작은 것들을 일으키며, 군대 생활에서
배우고 많은 경험을 괴여 국민으로 사회 생활하는 데 역할 가지고 도움이
됩니다. 그러나 한국은 작은 나무로서 많은 길을 유지해야 되는 힘들기기
때문에 국민의 부분이 너무 큽니다. 국방을 위해 서 쓰는 군사비가
대단하며 그로 인한 국가는 정책 입각과 국민의 생각 수준 향상의 큰
영향을 받고 있습니다. 그러나가, 개인적으로 또 국가적으로 많은 시간직,
경제적 손해를 보고 있습니다. 그러나, 한국의 사정으로서는 많은 범위와
새로운 보기를 유지하지 않을 수 없습니다. 왜냐하면, 한국은 전체도지
새로운 공산 집단을 밖에 이용성이 있기 때문입니다. 한국 국민은 다시는
6:25 시각과 같은 비극은 과거 않기를 바라고 있고, 그 택서 의한 국방력이
강해져 한다고 믿고 있습니다. 나아의 힌을 바어야 다시 집단을 밖을
가능성이 있습니다. 그 택서, 다시는 전쟁이 일어 나지 않도록 미리
방지하는 것이 다행하다고 볼 만합니다.
UNIT 47. Government and Politics

NARRATIVE

Our country is a democratic country.

structure
three branches (of Government)
executive branch
legislative branch
judicial branch

Therefore, (the structure of) the Government is divided into three main branches. The three branches are the executive branch, the legislative branch, and the judicial branch.

ideology; -ism
democracy
nationhood

Our country is a democratic country.

structure
three branches (of Government)
executive branch
legislative branch
judicial branch

Therefore, (the structure of) the Government is divided into three main branches. The three branches are the executive branch, the legislative branch, and the judicial branch.
UNIT 47
KOREAN BASIC COURSE

세선
세선을 다 합니다

국민을 다스립니다

4. 대통령은 헌법과 입법부가 만든 법의 해두리 안에서 국민의 복지와 안건을 위해로써 세선을 다해 국민을 다스립니다.

헌법에

사법

법에 따따서

권리

시리과 개인의 권리

을고 그든 것

판결합니다

5. 사법부는 나이의 헌법에서 사법관은 과고 법에 따따서 시리과 개인의 권리와 옳고 그든 것을 판결하는 기관입니다.

상부 에

아부 에

대법원

지방 법원

고등법원

법원과

사법부 전체

대표 합니다

대법상

one's best
one does his best
[he] governs the people

Within the framework of the Constitution and the laws made by the legislative branch, the President governs the people for their welfare and security to the best of his ability.

under the constitution
judicial power
in accordance with the laws
one's right
each individual citizen's right
things which are right and/or wrong
[they] judge

Under the country's constitution, the judicial branch has judicial power and is the organ which decides about individual rights and what is right and wrong in accordance with the law.

on the high level
on the lower level
supreme court
district court
[they]'re organized
High Justices
the entire Judicial Branch
[he] represents
Chief Justice
The judicial branch is organized with the Supreme Court at the top and the District Court on the lower level. The Supreme Court has six High Court Justices and the Chief Justice who represents the entire judicial system.

[he] nominates (someone)
ratification
[it] is ratified ('it receives ratification')
(personnel) appointment; designation
[he]'s appointed

The President nominates the Chief Justice, and he is (finally) appointed when the National Assembly concours.

that is to say
vote
[they] vote; [they] cast votes
[they] pick up; [they] choose
[he]'s chosen; [he]'s picked
those who are chosen by vote
considerable power (influence) privilege

As for the National Assembly which is the legislative branch, because the Assembly members who are chosen by the people meet and make laws, these Assembly members have considerable political power and privileges.

election
[we] have election
directly
[we] elect (someone)
UNIT 47  KOREAN BASIC COURSE

9. 대표적인 여론조사 설문지의 코리안은

A Presidential election is held every
four years and people choose the
President directly. Legislative
Assembly members are also elected every
four years.

election day
voters (‘eligible person for voting’)
polling place
candidate

On election day, those who are eligible
(for voting) go to their respective
polling place and cast their ballots
for the candidates whom they prefer.

10. 선거일에 되면 유권자가 각자 투표장에
나가서 자기가 원하는 후보자에게
투표합니다.

[he] runs (as a candidate)
political party
party nomination (meeting)

In order to run for the President, one
must be chosen at his party’s nomination
session.

11. 대표적으로 총 파티 회원 자기 정당에
공천에서 당선되어야 합니다.

[he] belongs to
the party to which one belongs

[he]'s nominated (by a politi-
cal party)
campaign (for election)
election eve

Beginning then, the candidate who has
been chosen by his party opens his
campaign and fights fiercely with the
other parties’ candidates until the
night before the election.

490
The party the President leads is called the majority or Government Party, and the party which stands against the majority party is called the Opposition Party.

policy
inclination; direction
[he] supports
recommendation
[I] recommend him
[he] gets a recommendation

A person who wants to become a politician usually belongs to a political party, supports its policy, receives its endorsement and then runs for office.

one who received most votes
decision
[he] decides
[it]'s decided

In a Presidential election the one who receives the most votes becomes the President.

ceremony
inauguration ceremony
At the same time that the President-elect is inaugurated, he organizes the cabinet and announces the names of the cabinet members. Each member of the National Affairs Committee (i.e., cabinet member) must receive the ratification of the National Assembly immediately.

Below the President, there are all kinds of ministries and independent agencies. The number fluctuates depending on the situation, but the present administration has the Ministry of Foreign Affairs, National Defense Ministry, Home Affairs Ministry, Education Ministry, Ministry of Commerce and Industry, Justice Ministry, Ministry of Information, Ministry of Transportation, the Ministry of Communication, etc.
KOREAN BASIC COURSE

UNIT 4.7

Narratives for Reading and Comprehension

(a)

대한 민국은 공산주의 나라가 아니고 민주주의 국가입니다. 민주주의 국가의 조건은 크게 십부로 나뉘며, 그 십부의 일부는 행정부, 입법부 그리고 사법부입니다. 행정부의 수반은 대통령이며 대통령은 국민렬의

대표자로 국가의 역할을 지속적으로 겪습니다. 대통령은 국민의 복지를

안전을 위해 최선을 다합니다. 대통령은 전법과 입법부가 만든 법의

액투비 안에서 국민을 다스립니다. 동시에 대통령에게는 상당한 세택과

독립이 주어집니다. 입법부는 법을 만드는 기관으로 국회의원으로

구성되며 국회의 태도는 국회의 의장입니다. 국회의 의장은 대통령처럼 4년에

한번씩 선거되는 매 국회의 의장은 매겨 인구 10만명 중에서 임 사무에

할 수 있습니다. 물론, 국회의원 모두 국민이 선거에서 선택된 사람 들이기 때문에

상당한 정치적 세력을 가지고 있습니다.

(b)

국가 조직의 십부의 하나인 법률부는 대법원장이 이를 대표하며, 대법원장

법원에 상부에 대법관과 하부에 지방 법원이 있습니다. 법원은 전쟁에서

국민과 개인의 권리와 그 법률을 보호하며 시민들의 옳고 올바른 것을 관리합니다.

대법원은 7명의 대법관으로 구성되어 있으며, 대법관장과 대법관의 한 사람입니다.

대법관은 대통령이 지명해서 국회의 임용을 받아야 임명됩니다. 임명 대법관으로

임명되면 대통령이 마음대로 임기를 중단할 수 있습니다. 그러므로 대통령의

명령에 의한 국가의 행정이나 지지를 받지 않습니다. 법률은 누구나 전인 어느 점법의 실체이나 일례를 받아 안 되고, 선제나

법체와 관계없이 됩니다.
KOREAN BASIC COURSE

Korean-English Glossary

The following Korean-English Glossary contains all the vocabulary introduced in this course, Volume 1 and Volume 2.

Not like in the glossary of Volume 1, words are not indicated as to their parts-of-speech. A verb is listed in the dictionary form which ends in - and its English equivalent is given in the 3rd person singular present tense form '-s'.

An Arabic number immediately following English meaning for each entry refers to the Unit in which it first occurs. If the entry differs in meaning in a later unit from its first occurrence, the later unit is also indicated by an Arabic number after each meaning. The number alone refers to the Basic Dialogue of that Unit; A, N, G or D preceded by a number refers to the Additional Vocabulary, Notes on the Basic Dialogue, Grammar Notes and Drills of the unit indicated by the number respectively.

Examples:
19 means Unit 19, Basic Dialogue
19A means Unit 19, Additional Vocabulary and Phrases
19N means Unit 19, Notes on the Basic Dialogues
19G means Unit 19, Grammar Notes
19D means Unit 19, Drills

Entries are listed according to the alphabetical order of Korean-English dictionaries published in South Korea: the order of initial consonants follows (1) ㄱ, (2) ㄲ, (3) ㄴ, (4) ㄷ, (5) ㄸ, (6) ㄹ, (7) ㅁ, (8) ㅂ, (9) ㅅ, (10) ㅆ, (11) ㅇ, (12) ㅈ, (13) ㅉ, (14) ㅊ, (15) ㅋ, (16) ㅌ, (17) ㅍ, (18) ㅎ. Each initial consonant combined with a vowel which makes a syllable-character follows the following order: (a) ㅏ, (b) ㅐ, (c) ㅔ, (d) ㅖ, (e) ㅒ, (f) ㅗ, (g) ㅓ, (h) ㅕ, (i) ㅑ, (j) ㅒ, (k) ㅖ, (l) ㅘ, (m) ㅝ, (n) ㅝ, (o) ㅝ, (p) ㅝ, (q) ㅝ, (r) ㅝ, (s) ㅝ, (t) ㅝ, (u) ㅝ.

In the following page you will find the Basic Syllabary Chart which shows the dictionary order based on alphabets: the horizontal columns from left to right indicate the initial consonants and the vertical columns from top to bottom shows the vowel order. A basic syllable-character (consonant + vowel) to which a final consonant or consonant cluster is added follows the order of the initial consonants as in the horizontal columns after each such basic syllable but before a new basic syllable-character occurs. The syllable final -ㄴ/--ng/ occurs between - and -n. The theoretically possible syllable-characters which do not exist in Korean words are not filled in boxes.

Note: The words Vowels and Consonants used here for the glossary are traditional classificatory terms of the alphabets and they have no relevance for a linguistic discussion as vowels and consonants in modern linguistic sense.
# KOREAN BASIC COURSE

## Korean-English Dictionary Basic Syllabary Chart

|   | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 10 | 11 | 12 | 13 | 14 | 15 | 16 | 17 | 18 | 19 |
| (a) | 가 | 까 | 나는 | 빼 | 바 | 빼 | 바 | 사 | 사시 | 아 | 자 | 자라 | 자라 | 자라 | 자라 | 자라 | 자라 | 자라 | 자라 |
| (b) | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 |
| (c) | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 |
| (d) | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 |
| (e) | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 |
| (f) | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 |
| (g) | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 |
| (h) | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 |
| (i) | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 |
| (j) | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 |
| (k) | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 |
| (l) | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 |
| (m) | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 |
| (n) | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 |
| (o) | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 |
| (p) | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 |
| (q) | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 |
| (r) | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 |
| (s) | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 |
| (t) | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 |
| (u) | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 | 까 |

495
가 2 (see 1)
학교 가 school (as subject) 2G
가게 shop 2D
가구 furniture 29A
가까이 nearby 3D, a nearby place 11
가깝 is near 3
가깝 sometimes 9
가난하다 is poor 27D
가능하다 is possible 40
가능하다 if it's possible 19N
가다 goes 1
가득 all the way up, fully 30
가루 powder 13
가르치다 teaches 1D
가뭄 (가뭄) drought 32D, 42A
가방 briefcase 13D
가방 가방 briefcase 23
가사과 home economics department (in a college) 38A
가수 housing 44
가위 scissors 26G
가위로 cutting with scissors 26G
가을 autumn 15
가치 best, most 10
가장 비대한 is fastest 10
가정 home, family background 44
가정 부usiness tutor 44
가정과 home economics department (in a college) 38A
가정학 home economics 38A
가족 family, a family member 44
가죽 leather 31A
가지 sorts, kinds 4
여러 가지 several kinds 4
가치다 possesses
가치가 다 takes (something) 12N
가지 오다 brings (something) 12
가지 않다 has, is possessing 14G
가치 value, worth 39D
가치다 adds 37G
가다 each 44
가족 cabinet member 47
가자 each one, everyone 43
가층 each floor 24N
가자 your excellency, sir 45
가자 simplicity
가장하다 is simple 3D
가사 scissors 26A
가사 (soy) sauce 13
가사 향 sign, sign board (commercial) 27
가사 nurse 33
가사게 nurse 33
가사의 nursing (as a curriculum) 39A
가사다 plows 41
KOREAN BASIC COURSE

감사 미담 changes (ring, tire, bolt, etc) 30N
감사 넣다 changes (in), replaces 30
감사 간다 changes (shoes) 24D
감사 쓰다 changes (hat, cap, etc.) 30N
감사 입다 changes (clothes) 30N
감사 타다 changes (train, car), transfers 20D
감사 n. persimmon 41A
감사 나무 n. persimmon tree 41A
감사 cold 30D
감사가 들다 catches a cold 30D
감사 washes hair 26A
감사하고 methodist 43
감사 gratitute 2
감사하다 is grateful, thanks 2
감사하다 appreciates 42
감사적 emotional 42D
감옥 jail, prison 43
감자 potato 41A
감주다 conceals, hides 43
감주다 deducts, subtracts 37G
감주기 suddenly 36D
감 price 4
집 rent, price of a house 4D
감주 오다 makes a trip (to some place) 25G
감주 raping 43
감주하다 is raped 43
감주 명 n. place name 19D
감주 theif 43
감주 질 thievery 43
 감사 instructor 8D
감산도 province name 20
감의 lecture 39G
감의도 place name 19D
감다 has, possesses 37
감다 누가 다 brings and leaves 30
감다 누가 다 brings (or fetches) for someone 24N
감다 도리 다 brings for you 25N
감추다 has, is endowed with 23
감추고 있다 is furnished with 23
감다 is the same 5D
감이 together, with
나와 같이 with me 4
감이 as, like
누- 용 감이 like New York 18G
개
견필 힘게 a pencil 5G
개 dog 5G
개나리 forsythia 41A
개 다 folds 26
이불을 개 다 folds up the quilt 26
개다하다 improves (quality) 41
개시하다 commences 47
개업 opening a business 40
개업하다 opens a business 40
개이 다 clears up 18
개인 individual 40D
개인 교수 private teaching 44
개인 회사 private company 40D
KOREAN BASIC COURSE

*individually* 46

*platform entrance where tickets are punched* 20

*passenger ship* 19D

*passenger train* 19D

*there, that place* 3

*at that place, from there* 3G

*street* 17D

*tortoise* '42A'

*change ('remaining money')* 21

*mirror* 29A

*almost, nearly* 11

*almost (all)* 11

*lie* 43

*lies* 43

*worry* 25

*is worrisome* 25G

*worries* 25

*health* 33A

*is healthy* 33A

*crosses* 38A

*cross-road* 11D

*across the street* 11D, 29

*the room opposite the main room* 29A

*building* 2

*architect* 40A

*architecture department (in a college)* 38A

*building business* 40A

*wakes* 10

*wakes, goes on foot* 11

*hangs* 35

*makes a phone-call* 16

*hangs clothes* 35

*floor cloth, house cloth* 26

*wiping* 26N

*takes* 7, 19

*takes an hour* 7D

*on foot* 10

*is dark* 4D

*inspection, examination* 30

*inspects* 30

*(thing)* 2

*(thing) (over there)* 2

*crab* 41A

*on top of that, moreover* 39, 39N

*egg* 13

*winter* 15

*result* 33A

*after all, in the end* 39

*decision* 47

*decides* 47

*marriage* 44

*gets married, has a wedding* 14

*province name* 20

*mirror stand* 29A

*province name* 20

*province name* 20

*business administration, management* 38A

*case, circumstance* 44
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean Word</th>
<th>English Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>경쟁</td>
<td>competition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>경제</td>
<td>economy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>경제가</td>
<td>economist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>경제 문제</td>
<td>economic problem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>경제적</td>
<td>economical</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>경찰</td>
<td>police</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>경찰관</td>
<td>policeman</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>경찰서</td>
<td>police-station</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>경치</td>
<td>scenery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>경향</td>
<td>tendency</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>경험</td>
<td>experience</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>경영장</td>
<td>insignia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>경속</td>
<td>continuation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>경속하다</td>
<td>continues, lasts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>경시하다</td>
<td>is, exists, stays</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>경약</td>
<td>contract, lease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>경작</td>
<td>season</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>경집</td>
<td>gal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>경집장</td>
<td>philanderring</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>경통</td>
<td>field, line</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>경획</td>
<td>plan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>고</td>
<td>is</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>간다</td>
<td>says [he] is going</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>고고학</td>
<td>archaeology</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>고구마</td>
<td>sweet potato</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>고기</td>
<td>meat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>고단하다</td>
<td>is tired, is fatigued</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>고등</td>
<td>higher</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>고등 교육</td>
<td>higher education</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>고등학교</td>
<td>high school</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>고래</td>
<td>whale</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>고맙다</td>
<td>is grateful</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>고무 신발</td>
<td>rubber shoes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>고문관</td>
<td>advisor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>고배</td>
<td>cup</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>고생</td>
<td>hardship, suffering</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>고속 경로</td>
<td>highway, super highway</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>고양이</td>
<td>cat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>고용인</td>
<td>employee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>고용주</td>
<td>employer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>고장</td>
<td>mechanical trouble, break down</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>고장 (이) 나다</td>
<td>is out of order</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>고장 (응) 낼다</td>
<td>causes a mechanical trouble</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>고추</td>
<td>red pepper</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>고추 가루</td>
<td>(red-pepper powder)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>고시마다</td>
<td>repairs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>고르다</td>
<td>(is empty)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>배가 고프다</td>
<td>is hungry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>고양이</td>
<td>home town, native town</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>곡식</td>
<td>crops</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>곤내야</td>
<td>is difficult</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>곤충</td>
<td>insects</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>과일</td>
<td>soon, immediately</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>곳부</td>
<td>corner (of the street)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Korean Word</td>
<td>English Translation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>---------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>골짜기 (valley)</td>
<td>41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>골/****************************************************************************************************/ (soup with rice and meat)</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>골/****************************************************************************************************/ (multiplying)</td>
<td>37G</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>골 / place</td>
<td>41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>가까운 골 / nearby place</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이 골 / this place</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>골 zero (ball)</td>
<td>16D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>공공 건물 / public building</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>공공 기관 / public organization</td>
<td>44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>공과 대학 / college of engineering</td>
<td>38, 38A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>공군 / Air Force</td>
<td>24D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>공군 부관 / air attaché</td>
<td>24D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>공군 사관 학교 / Air Force Academy</td>
<td>38A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>공기 / air</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>공기가 맑아져서 / air is stuffy</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>공립 / public</td>
<td>31A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>공립 학교 / public school</td>
<td>31A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>공무원 / civil servant</td>
<td>7D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>공법 / public law</td>
<td>38A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>공병 / (military) engineer</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>공보 / public information</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>공보관 / information officer</td>
<td>7G</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>공보부 / Ministry of Information</td>
<td>47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>공보처 / information office</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>공부 / study</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>공부시켜서 / makes (someone) study</td>
<td>41G</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>공부 하다 / studies</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>공사 / charged d'affaires</td>
<td>33D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>공사 / works, construction</td>
<td>28A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>공사중 / under construction</td>
<td>28A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>공산 / (common property)</td>
<td>38G</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>공산주의 / communism</td>
<td>37D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>공산화 / communization</td>
<td>38G</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>공산화 학자 / communizes</td>
<td>38G</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>공손하다 / is polite</td>
<td>36D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>공업 / industry</td>
<td>38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>공업가 / industrialist</td>
<td>40A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>공업부 / industrialist</td>
<td>38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>공업화 / industrialization</td>
<td>38G</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>공업화 학자 / industrializes</td>
<td>38G</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>공원 / park</td>
<td>2D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>공장 / factory</td>
<td>18D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>공중 / public</td>
<td>31, 31A,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>공책 / notebook</td>
<td>4D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>공천 / party nomination (meeting)</td>
<td>47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>공학 / engineering</td>
<td>38A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>과 / with, and</td>
<td>4 (see 4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>책과 책상 / book and desk</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>과 / lesson</td>
<td>38G</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>과 / department, section</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>외곽과 / the foreign currency department</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>과거 / the past</td>
<td>22N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>과거에 / in the past</td>
<td>22N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>과목 / school subject</td>
<td>39D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>과식 / fruit</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>과일 / fruit</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>과자 / cookie</td>
<td>40D</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
KOREAN BASIC COURSE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>과장 (department chief) 16D</td>
<td>principal (of school) 16D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>과장 exaggeration 43</td>
<td>traffic, transportation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>과장沙发 exaggerates 43</td>
<td>Education department (in a college) 38A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>과학 sciences 38</td>
<td>educational expense 37D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>과학자 scientist 40N</td>
<td>educational expense (seeking job) 44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>관계 relation(ship) 29D</td>
<td>principal (of school) 16D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>관광 bus sightseeing bus 19D</td>
<td>traffic, transportation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>관심 a feeling of concern 41</td>
<td>Traffic accident 20D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>관경 sight, view, scene 42</td>
<td>traffic signal 29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>괴고 ads 44</td>
<td>telephone operator 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>괴고비 expense for ads 44</td>
<td>church 10D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>괴등 place name 42D</td>
<td>nine 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>괴주 place name 19D</td>
<td>sightseeing, show 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>괴스티 woven basket 30D</td>
<td>shoe(s) 4D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>괴발타 is O.K., is alright 1</td>
<td>shoe strings 26A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>교보 (school) cap 26A</td>
<td>Europe 6D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>교사 teacher 29D, 39N</td>
<td>hole 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>교사 자격 teaching certificate 29D</td>
<td>punctures, has a hole 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>교사 지치 (school) cap 26A</td>
<td>corner of a room 31N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>교사 지치 teaching certificate 29D</td>
<td>is organized 47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>교사 지치 professor 8D</td>
<td>organizes 47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>교시 class-room 2D</td>
<td>help-wanted 44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>교실 school teacher 39, 39N</td>
<td>(seeking job) 44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>교외 outskirts, countryside 42</td>
<td>seeks 38D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>교육 education 29D</td>
<td>(marriage sought) 44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>교육과 education department (in a college) 38A</td>
<td>soup 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>교육비 educational expense 37D</td>
<td>nationhood 47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>교육석 educates 41G</td>
<td>diplomatic relations 31A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>교육자 educator 29D</td>
<td>State Department (U.S.) 13D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>교육석 educational 38G</td>
<td>cabinet member 32D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>교육석 pedagogy, education 38A</td>
<td>prime minister 44</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

501
KOREAN BASIC COURSE

국문학: Korean literature 38A
국민: people of a nation 37
국민학교: grade school 37
국방력: national defense power 46
국방부: Ministry of National Defence 13D
국방성: the Defense Department (U.S.) 13D
국산품: home products 23D
국악국문학: Korean language and literature 38A
국장: (bureau chief) 16D
국제: international 9
국제극장: International Theatre 9
국제법: international law 38A
국화 및: chrysanthemum 41A
국의: National Assembly, Congress, Parliament 13D
국회의원: national assembly member 38D
군: army 45
군단: corps 45
군대: military 7
군토: (military) cap 26A
군사: military, armed forces 46
군인: soldier, military man 7D
굴: oyster 41A
ɐːl: chimney 29A
권: volume of
책 두 권: two books 5G
권리: one's right 47
권총: pistol 26A
권투: boxing 33A
귀: ear 13
귀걸이: earrings 26A
귀엽다: is cute 23D
귀석: regulation 22G
그대로: as it is 29
그래서: therefore, so 9
그러나: but, however 5
그렇게: if so, then 5 (see 그럼)
그럼: is so, does so 4 (see 그럼)
그럼: then, if so 4 (see 그럼)
그렇게: so, in such a way 9
그럼이: is so 1, 2
그럼: such 8
그럼께: such a thing 8
그럼께: by the way 8
그럼지나: however, nevertheless 9
그릇: container, dish 13
그런: (not) so, like that 4
그런 비싸지 않다: is not so expensive 4
그리고: and 5
그럼이: draws 29D, longs for 42
그림으로 그림이: draws a picture 29D
자연에 그림이: longs for nature 42
그림으로: that way 31N
그림이: longs for 42
그림: picture, paintings 4D
그림이: misses, longs for 42
그림이: is wrong 47
그림으로: stops (doing), quits 11D
그림: net 35G
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>KOREAN BASIC COURSE</strong></th>
<th><strong>raises 26N</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>고쳐 just 1</td>
<td>기름 oil 29D, hair tonic 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>고쳐 고칠까 just so so 1</td>
<td>기본 feeling 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>고쳐가까 the day before yesterday 4D</td>
<td>기본 그렇다 is glad 35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>늘장 theatre 3D</td>
<td>기사 article, column 17D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>늘장표 theatre ticket 22</td>
<td>기사 engineer 40A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>균발행 in recent days 43</td>
<td>기상대 weather bureau, weatherman 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>균부 service (paid)</td>
<td>기숙사 dormitory 13D, 28D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>균부하단 works, is employed 8</td>
<td>기술 skill 34D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>균씨 well, maybe 4</td>
<td>기술자 technician 40A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>균씨요 Well 4</td>
<td>기억 memorandum, remembrance 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>균거 the day two days after tomorrow 6</td>
<td>기억하다 remembers 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>균감산 Diamond Mountain 41A</td>
<td>기자 reporter 8D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>균년 this year 6D</td>
<td>신문 기자 journalist 8D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>균선 No Smoking 27D</td>
<td>기장 captain of an airplane 40A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>균요일 Friday 6D</td>
<td>기차 train 7G, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>균주 No Drinking 27D</td>
<td>기차 표 train ticket 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>균속도 rapid speed 43D</td>
<td>기침 cough 33A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>균행(차) express (train) 19</td>
<td>기회 chance, opportunity 16D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>균히 urgently, in a hurry 26,</td>
<td>기후 climate, weather 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>기간 period 45</td>
<td>길 street, road 2D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>기갑병 armored corps man 45</td>
<td>기타 is long, is lengthy 10D, is grown 31, 31N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>기계 machine 27D</td>
<td>길 a family name 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>기계과 mechanical engineering</td>
<td>길 a full name 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>department (in a college) 38A</td>
<td>길 (dry) laver 41A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>기관 organization, agency 39</td>
<td>길 (pickled vegetable) 13D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>기념품 souvenirs 42D</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>기념하다 waits (for) 9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>기독교 christianity 35</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

503
KOREAN BASIC COURSE

가마귀 crow 42A
가까다 is black 4N
가반 셰 black color 4D
가지 as far as, to, until 7
미국 가지 as far as America 7
내일 가지 by tomorrow 7G
가지 magpie 42A
가다 cuts 31
가능 can 30
가볍게 하다 is clean 18G
가스 gas 25D
가우 다 wakes (someone) up 25,
가allon gallon 29D
g exactly, without fail, by all means 15
골프 golf 18G

나 I 1 (see 저)
나의 my 1 (see 저)
나가다 goes out 9
나나 다 divides 22G
나다 comes out 18
나라 country, nation 10D
나룻 배 ferry (boat) 19D
나무 tree 41A

나무 꼭배 wears, pins 26A
나다 flower 41A
나무 나무 flowering tree 41A
나무 꽃 flower bed 29A
나무 꿈 dream 37G
나무 나무 has a dream 37G
나무 pheasant 42A
나다 turns off, puts out the fire 25, 25
나다 strings 26A
나다 cuts, quits 28D, 31A
나다 attracts, pulls 44
나다 attracts attention 44
나다 ends, is over 6D
나라다 finishes, completes 8D
나라다 finishes, completes 14D
나다 wears 26A

나무 뒷배 nuts 41A
나비 butterfly 42
나쁘다 is bad 4N
나쁘다 is bad 4N
나пис 다 comes out, graduates 7G
나무 나무 comes out periodically 12
나이 age 14
나이나 or 10G
나이아가마 Niagara 41D

504
KOREAN BASIC COURSE

나음(예) later 24D, 34
나나나다 appears 44

나음 four days, the 4th day of the month 6D
나라사병 parachutist 45

나시 fishing 31D
나방 창치 heating system 23D

날행 assault 43
날행설타다 is assaulted 43G

날비 day 6D
날비 flies 42

날씨 weather 15 (see 영기)
날 others 38D

날기다 leaves 30D

남녀 공학 coeducation 37
남태평 South Gate 37G
남동성 younger brother 14D
남미 South America 6D

남방 서식 half-sleeve summer shirt 26A
남복 actor 37N

남부 the Southen part, the South (U.S.) 15D
남자 male 14N
남편 husband 14D
남학교 boys' school 37
남학생 male student 37N
남한 South-Korea 6D

남다 is better, feels better 33

날 daytime, noontime 6D

날 앉 in the daytime, at noon 6D

남차 nap 38D

나다 is low 10D

낮다 lowers 25

낮다 is born, gives a birth 15

내 brook, stream 42

내가 I (as subject) 1

내가 cabinet 47

내과 의사 doctor of internal medicine 33A

내내 all the way 39

내년 next year 6D

내 놈다 puts out, produces 26

내다 pays 24

비관비를 내다 pays for the lodging 24

내먹 가다 goes down 7G

내먹 보다 looks down 42D

내먹 오다 comes down 7G

내야다 gets off, descends 7N

내먹 주 다 drops (someone) off 11

내부부 Home Affairs Ministry 47

내용 content 30D

내의 underwear 26A

내일 tomorrow 4D

내립 napkins 13D

남가 riverside, bank of a stream 42

남면 (cold noodle) 12

남방 창치 cooling system 23D

남방 교수 refrigerator 29A

너 you (plain speech) 17G

너pu too

남부 늦다 is too late 11
는다 presses (down) 42

세다름 눌니다 presses the shutter 42

눌다 lies down 33A

느끼다 feels 37

느낌 feeling 37

느리다 is slow 10D

풍관염 pleurisy 33A

눈 (as for) 1

나는 학생이다 I am a student. 1

늘 all the time, always 9

늘다 increases 38

나 all 9

타니오다 returns, makes a trip (to some place) 28D

타니다 attends (school) 8

학교에 타니다 attends school 8

다가 attic 29A

다람쥐 squirrel 42A

다가 bridge 10D, leg 13

타이라 irons, presses 25D

다리미 iron 26

다리미질 tabi is ironing 26

다르다 is different 5

다른 말로 말이면 in other words 27

다만 only, merely 29

다섯 five

다스미다 governs 47

타다 is aged, gets old 14N

타다 ability 42D

타다 is late 11

타게 late 20

타게 도착하다 arrives later 20

타어지다 gets late 22D

타잡 late rising 37D

타잡을 자다 gets up late 37D

니 sweet-heart, lover 14-N

부모님 parents (honored) 14D

다 다시 again 3

다 다시 하다 does again 3

다음 next, next time 5, 19D

다이아몬드 diamond 31D

다치다 injures, hurts 29

다두 다 quarrels 31D

다행 a fortunate thing

다행하다 is fortunate 16

다다 shines 25D

그도 다는 아이 shoe-shine boy 26

타가리 short distance 23N

단과 대학 college 38

타시임 short period of time 23N

단어 word, vocabulary 35G

단점 shortcoming 23N
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean Word</th>
<th>English Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>단추</td>
<td>button 24D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>단풍 낙엽</td>
<td>maple tree 41A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>단화</td>
<td>(short) shoes 23N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>달</td>
<td>closes 11D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>달</td>
<td>month, moon 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>달걀</td>
<td>egg 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>달달</td>
<td>is sweet, is sugary 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>달달 지더</td>
<td>becomes different 38D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>달리다</td>
<td>runs 29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>달걀</td>
<td>chicken 42A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>달고기</td>
<td>chicken 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>달달</td>
<td>looks like, is alike, resembles 35D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>달</td>
<td>wall (which surrounds the house) 22A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>달달자</td>
<td>the person in charge 43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>달달하다</td>
<td>is in charge 43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>담배</td>
<td>cigarettes, tobacco 4D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>담색</td>
<td>five days, the 5th day of the month 6D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>담근</td>
<td>proper authorities 43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>담근자</td>
<td>the authorities 43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>담근</td>
<td>carrot 41A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>담선하다</td>
<td>gets elected, is chosen 47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>담선하다</td>
<td>is natural, takes it for granted 46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>담다</td>
<td>arrives 6N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>대</td>
<td>bamboo 41A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>대반</td>
<td>is serious, is really something 32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>대반</td>
<td>very 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>대대</td>
<td>battalion 45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>대장</td>
<td>colonel 46A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>대표</td>
<td>as one pleases, as you like 16-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>대만</td>
<td>Formosa, Taiwan 6D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>대문</td>
<td>gate 24D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>대법관</td>
<td>High Justices 47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>대법원</td>
<td>Supreme Court 47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>대법관장</td>
<td>Chief Justice 47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>대사</td>
<td>ambassador 7G</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>대사관</td>
<td>embassy 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>대신</td>
<td>(a substitute) 44G</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>대신</td>
<td>instead of me 25D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>대신에</td>
<td>instead, on behalf of, in place of 44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>대우</td>
<td>treatment 21N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>사무대리</td>
<td>4th class treatment 21N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>대위</td>
<td>captain 46A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>대사</td>
<td>general 46A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>대사</td>
<td>place name 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>대장</td>
<td>the masses, general public 26D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>대장</td>
<td>popular class inn 26D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>대장</td>
<td>place name 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>대장</td>
<td>the President 8D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>대장</td>
<td>presidency 33D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>대기</td>
<td>wood-plane 26N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>자동차 두 대</td>
<td>two automobiles 6G</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>대개</td>
<td>usually, generally 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>대기</td>
<td>place name 19D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>영어 단어</td>
<td>한국어 번역</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>47</td>
<td>also, too</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>your wife also</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>me too</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>even though</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>even though there is</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38D</td>
<td>degree</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>43</td>
<td>robbery, burgly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>43</td>
<td>is robbed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31A</td>
<td>morality, virtue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31A</td>
<td>public spirit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26N</td>
<td>thief</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26N</td>
<td>stealing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26N</td>
<td>steals</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27D</td>
<td>road, way, street</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41A</td>
<td>tomato</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>43</td>
<td>escapes, runs away</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42D</td>
<td>name of mountain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10D</td>
<td>library</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10D</td>
<td>city, urban community</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>pig</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38D</td>
<td>help</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>arrival</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>arrives</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15D</td>
<td>metropolitan area, city</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23D</td>
<td>jar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23D</td>
<td>empty jar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33A</td>
<td>influenza</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35G</td>
<td>independence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35G</td>
<td>becomes independent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

만약하다 represents 47
faces, confronts with 15
concerning, about 15
college 8D
university 10D
graduate school 38A
the Republic of Korea 17D
waiting room 20
your home, home (honored) 14
ambassador's residence 19D
more 5
is cheaper 5
more than that 38N
dirty 25D
becomes dirty 28D
heat 32D
adds 37G
virtue 23D
favor, mercy 1
(at your favor) 1
casts, throws 35G
less 5G
less difficult 5G
is hot 13
overshoes 26A
place 10D
nearby place 12
takes (somebody) (to some place) 25D
takes along 34D
KOREAN BASIC COURSE

독수비  eagle, vulture  42A
독신  single, celibacy  42D
독일  Germany  1D
독일어  German (language)  8D
독자  reader  44
독자가라  reader’s column  44
돈  money  7G
돌  stone  31D
돌다  turns around  11D
돌비다  rotates, switches, turns around  16
돌보다  looks after  43
돌아가다  goes back  7, passes away  11G
돌아보다  looks back  12G
돌아오다  comes back  7G
돌아  helps
돌아보다  gives help, gives a helping hand  7G
동남아  Southeast Asia  32D
동물  animal
동물원  zoo (‘animal house’)  10D
동부  the East (U.S.), the eastern part  15D
동생  a younger sibling  14
동안  for, during, while
동안, 동안  for ten hours  6
동양 미술  Oriental painting  38A
동료  colleague, co-worker  13D
동전  a (copper) coin  21D
돼지  pig
돼지고기  pork  13

ret’d  becomes, has been
심년  ret’d has been  3 years  8
신생  ret’d has become a teacher  8N
또 스럽으면  if possible  19
두고 보다  waits and see  40
두나  places, puts
적어 두나  writes it down  16
둘  two  5
뒤  back, rear  2D
집 뒤에  behind the house  2D
뒤 멀어지다  falls behind  27G
도착이야  at last  27D
도착이브  driving  29
도착하다  gives (polite)  5 (see
가 도착하다  goes for you  11
돈/이돈
무엇이돈이  anything  12G
돌다  listens to, hears  9
돈지 않다  does not work (machines)  27D
돈  36N
그것들  they, those(things)  10
돌로 돌다  all, everybody  14
동  field  42G
두고 가다  takes, carry (something in the hands)  23N
두고 오다  brings (something in the hand)  23N
돌다  eats or drinks (food), lifts  13
돌다  goes in, takes  23
동물방에 돌다  takes the Ondol room  23
KOREAN BASIC COURSE

등비타 is heard, is audible 16
등르타 stops by, drops in 4
등여 가다 goes in 7G
등여 가보다 enters and sees, goes in see 12G
등여 오다 comes in 7G
등 and so on, etc. 12
등 back
등이 아쁘다 has a backache 13
등산 hiking
등산하다 hikes 18

여신 your daughter (honored) 14N
여듯하타 is warm 15
여타서 according to 22, 22N
여차에 여타서 depending on the trains 22
여타 하타 memorizes 35G
여르, separately 24
여르다 follows 23
여꼭 hiccup 26N
여꼭 지 hiccuping 26N
앞 daughter 14
앞가 strawberry 41A
앞, earth, ground, land 29N
앞 바다 ground 29N
때, time, occasion, when
그 때에 (at) that time 7
학교에 가 때 when [I] go to school 14G
때때로 occasionally 9D

때문에 because of 20, 20G
서가 때문에 because [it] stops 20
nullable leaves 6
nullable makes a noise 35G
nullable 지타 becomes out of stock, drops 29
take off 26A
또 again 1
또 볼타 see again 1
또한 too, also 36D
또한 흐름 is intelligent, is bright 17G
또한 바로 straight, straight ahead 3
또한 bank, dike 36D
또한 runs 14G
또한 is hot (solid, liquid) 13
또 yard 29A
또 meaning 27
EVERYDAY 8

1. I have a headache.

2. Whatever it is.

3. Even I

4. Radio

5. Radiator

6. Garlic

7. Every, each

8. Everyday

9. (Wooden) floor

10. Dries

11. Is thirsty

12. (A) head of

13. Four heads of horses, four horses

14. Drinks

15. Mind, heart

16. As one pleases

17. Is fond of

18. Changes mind

19. Is warm hearted

20. Miles

21. Football

22. To, as, by

23. Goes to school

24. As a diplomat

25. By boat

26. (See)

27. Goes out to meet (someone)

28. Last

29. Lastly, finally

30. Just

31. Muffler

32. Forty

33. Deadend

34. The last train

35. Ten-thousands

36. Only, just

37. I'm sorry but...

38. Just two bottles of bear

39. (Full)

40. 20 years old

41. Meets

42. Fountain-pen

43. Satisfaction
is satisfied 23D
as ~ as 19G
as (much) as Special Express 19
is plenty, are many 9
a lot, much 8D
first
the first son 14G
language, utterance, speech, word 1
Korean (language) 1
speaks 1D
[I] mean a dictionary 4
horse 5G
not do 11G
let's not ride. 11
is clear (water, air, etc.) 18
taste 13
massage 31D
last-child 14N
is correct, fits 18N
fits 25D
clothes fit well 25D
entrusts, places in one's charge 20, 20N
entrusts baggage 20
takes care of 20
every, each 20G
every year 20G
ties 26A
every month 20G
buy and sell 44
every minutes 20G
every hour 20G
every month 20G
every day 9D
every week 9D
every semester 20G
every school grade 20G
beer 12
is (spicy) hot 13
appendicitis 33A
head, hair 13
hair tonic 31
hair pin 26A
stays 6D
before long 40
eats 2G
tries (food) 7G
first of all, above all 10
is far 3
is far from here 3
far away 11N
stops (car, taxi, etc.) 11D
menu 12
grasshopper, locust 42A
meter, gauge 29
what date, some days
What's today's date? 6
## KOREAN BASIC COURSE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>한국어</th>
<th>English Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>모자라다</td>
<td>is not enough 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>모집</td>
<td>recruiting 39N, 44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>모터</td>
<td>motor 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>모터오일</td>
<td>motor oil 30D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>목</td>
<td>neck, throat 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>목이 бол.initialize</td>
<td>is thirsty 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>목걸이</td>
<td>necklace 26A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>목사</td>
<td>minister (of church) 16D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>목수</td>
<td>carpenter 26G</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>목수조직</td>
<td>carpentry 26G</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>목요일</td>
<td>Thursday 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>목욕</td>
<td>bath, bathing 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>목욕시간</td>
<td>bathes (someone) 41G</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>목욕탕</td>
<td>bathtub, bathroom 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>목욕탕이</td>
<td>takes a bath 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>목적</td>
<td>purpose, aim, goal 40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>목적지</td>
<td>place name 19D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>곡드라미</td>
<td>cotton (plant) 41A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>드라이브</td>
<td>drives 29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>몸</td>
<td>body 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>몸이 아파야</td>
<td>is sick 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>몸이 아파야</td>
<td>is sick 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>몸이 아파야</td>
<td>is not tall 19G</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>모듬</td>
<td>cannot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>모래</td>
<td>cannot go 8G</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>모자</td>
<td>cannot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>모자</td>
<td>cannot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>목이 아프야</td>
<td>cannot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>목이 아프야</td>
<td>cannot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>목이 아프야</td>
<td>cannot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>목이 아프야</td>
<td>cannot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>목이 아프야</td>
<td>cannot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>목이 아프야</td>
<td>cannot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>목이 아프야</td>
<td>cannot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>목이 아프야</td>
<td>cannot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>목이 아프야</td>
<td>cannot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>목이 아프야</td>
<td>cannot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>목이 아프야</td>
<td>cannot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>목이 아프야</td>
<td>cannot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>목이 아프야</td>
<td>cannot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>목이 아프야</td>
<td>cannot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>목이 아프야</td>
<td>cannot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>목이 아프야</td>
<td>cannot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>목이 아프야</td>
<td>cannot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>목이 아프야</td>
<td>cannot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>목이 아프야</td>
<td>cannot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>목이 아프야</td>
<td>cannot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>목이 아프야</td>
<td>cannot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>목이 아프야</td>
<td>cannot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>목이 아프야</td>
<td>cannot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>목이 아프야</td>
<td>cannot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>목이 아프야</td>
<td>cannot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>목이 아프야</td>
<td>cannot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>목이 아프야</td>
<td>cannot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>목이 아프야</td>
<td>cannot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>목이 아프야</td>
<td>cannot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>목이 아프야</td>
<td>cannot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>목이 아프야</td>
<td>cannot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>목이 아프야</td>
<td>cannot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>목이 아프야</td>
<td>cannot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>목이 아프야</td>
<td>cannot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>목이 아프야</td>
<td>cannot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>목이 아프야</td>
<td>cannot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>목이 아프야</td>
<td>cannot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>목이 아프야</td>
<td>cannot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>목이 아프야</td>
<td>cannot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>목이 아프야</td>
<td>cannot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>목이 아프야</td>
<td>cannot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>목이 아프야</td>
<td>cannot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>목이 아프야</td>
<td>cannot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>목이 아프야</td>
<td>cannot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>목이 아프야</td>
<td>cannot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>목이 아프야</td>
<td>cannot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>목이 아프야</td>
<td>cannot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>목이 아프야</td>
<td>cannot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>목이 아프야</td>
<td>cannot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>목이 아프야</td>
<td>cannot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>목이 아프야</td>
<td>cannot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>목이 아프야</td>
<td>cannot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>목이 아프야</td>
<td>cannot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>목이 아프야</td>
<td>cannot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>목이 아프야</td>
<td>cannot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>목이 아프야</td>
<td>cannot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>목이 아프야</td>
<td>cannot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>목이 아프야</td>
<td>cannot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>목이 아프야</td>
<td>cannot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>목이 아프야</td>
<td>cannot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>목이 아프야</td>
<td>cannot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>목이 아프야</td>
<td>cannot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>목이 아프야</td>
<td>cannot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>목이 아프야</td>
<td>cannot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>목이 아프야</td>
<td>cannot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>목이 아프야</td>
<td>cannot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>목이 아프야</td>
<td>cannot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>목이 아프야</td>
<td>cannot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>목이 아프야</td>
<td>cannot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>목이 아프ya</td>
<td>cannot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>목이 아프야</td>
<td>cannot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>목이 아프야</td>
<td>cannot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>목이 아프야</td>
<td>cannot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>목이 아프야</td>
<td>cannot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>목이 아프야</td>
<td>cannot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>목이 아프야</td>
<td>cannot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>목이 아프야</td>
<td>cannot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>목이 아프야</td>
<td>cannot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>목이 아프야</td>
<td>cannot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>목이 아프야</td>
<td>cannot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>목이 아프야</td>
<td>cannot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>목이 아프야</td>
<td>cannot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>목이 아프야</td>
<td>cannot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>목이 아프야</td>
<td>cannot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>목이 아프야</td>
<td>cannot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>목이 아프야</td>
<td>cannot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>목이 아프야</td>
<td>cannot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>목이 아프야</td>
<td>cannot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>목이 아프야</td>
<td>cannot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>목이 아프야</td>
<td>cannot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>목이 아프야</td>
<td>cannot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>목이 아프야</td>
<td>cannot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>목이 아프야</td>
<td>cannot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>목이 아프야</td>
<td>cannot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>목이 아프야</td>
<td>cannot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>목이 아프야</td>
<td>cannot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>목이 아프야</td>
<td>cannot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>목이 아프야</td>
<td>cannot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>목이 아프야</td>
<td>cannot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>목이 아프야</td>
<td>cannot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Korean word</td>
<td>English translation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>--------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>부문학</td>
<td>the rose of Sharon (Korean National flower)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>부기</td>
<td>arms, weapon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>부담</td>
<td>shamanism</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>부럽다</td>
<td>is muggy, is humid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>부르다</td>
<td>free of charge</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>부르고</td>
<td>free admission</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>부통</td>
<td>knee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>부서이</td>
<td>safely</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>부섭다</td>
<td>is fearful</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>부순</td>
<td>what kind of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>부순 색</td>
<td>what color, what kind of color</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>부식자</td>
<td>illiterate person</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>부식</td>
<td>what (thing)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>부식을</td>
<td>what (as direct object)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>부역</td>
<td>export-import, trade</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>부역 회사</td>
<td>trading company</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>부잡</td>
<td>armament</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>부잡아다</td>
<td>arms</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>부다</td>
<td>ties</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>문</td>
<td>door, window</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>문 앞 문</td>
<td>the front door</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>문교부</td>
<td>Ministry of Education</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>문리과 백화</td>
<td>Liberal Arts and Sciences College</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>문방구점</td>
<td>stationary shop</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>문법</td>
<td>grammar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>문란</td>
<td>regards</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>문란해 주다</td>
<td>gives regards</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>문학</td>
<td>octopus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>문장</td>
<td>sentence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>문정관</td>
<td>Cultural Attaché</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>문제</td>
<td>problem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>문학</td>
<td>literature</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>문학부</td>
<td>cultural section (page)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>문학부</td>
<td>inquires</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>물</td>
<td>water</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>물개</td>
<td>otter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>물건</td>
<td>goods</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>물가</td>
<td>price of goods</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>물고기</td>
<td>fish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>물론</td>
<td>of course</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>물리학</td>
<td>physics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>물품</td>
<td>water-pail</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>즐겁다</td>
<td>unites</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>원요!</td>
<td>(Oh, no!)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>미</td>
<td>beauty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>미국</td>
<td>America, the United States</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>미국 사범</td>
<td>an American</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>미국화</td>
<td>Americanization</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>미국화 학자</td>
<td>Americanizes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>미남</td>
<td>handsome boy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>미녀</td>
<td>a beauty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>미니스커트</td>
<td>mini-skirt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>미성년</td>
<td>juvenile, minor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>미술</td>
<td>fine arts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>미시간</td>
<td>Michigan</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
미안하죠  as sorry 1
미안하지만 I'm sorry but... 9
미식 a kind of seaweed called Undaria Pinnatifida 41A
미용사 beautician 29D
미래 the future 22N
미래에 in the future 22N
미리 in advance 23D
미술 대학 fine arts college 38A
미취지다 becomes ugly 27D
미인 a beautiful woman 27D
미치다 is crazy, is insane 41D
미친 사람 insane man 41D

비 사람이 civilian (opposed to military) 46D
비법 civil law 38A
비록 people, nation 46
비로 democracy 38G
비로主要从事 democratization 38G
비로主要从事 democratizes 38G
비로主要从事의 democracy 47

미다 trusts, believes 18D
밀 wheat 41A
밀다 pushes 28
밀 bottom 29
밀에 under, below 41

바게쓰 bucket 30D
바돈다 exchanges, changes 16
바늘 needle 26G
바느질 sewing 26G
바느질하다 does sewing 26G
바다 bottom, way down 29
바다가 beach 31D
바다하다 hopes, wishes 8G
바다 보다 looks over (from the distance) 12G
바다 wind
바람이 몹시 is windy 15
바로 just, right 2
바로 앞에 right ahead 2

바로다 applies (grease) 31
바로에 기름을 바로다 uses hair tonic (on the hair) 31
바른 right 20
바른 쪽 the right (side) 20
바쁘다 is busy 9
바지 trousers 26
박 Park (family name) 1D
박물관 museum 10D
박사 doctor (of philosophy) 16D
박 the outside 14N
박에 outside, to the outside 16D
한국 밖에 모르다 knows only Korean 16D
세번 밖에 없다 there's only three times 20D
반 half 6D
class 22G

is pleased 35

objection, opposition 37G

opposes, objects 37G, 47

peninsula

Bando Company 8

necessarily 39

firefly 42A

receives, gets 6

foot 13

sole (of a foot) 29N

departure, leaving 20N

express which leaves Seoul 20N

development 38D

develops 38D

pronounce 23D

development 40D

developes 40D

toe nail 31A

announces, makes it public 47

is issued, is published 44

night 4D

chestnut 41A

chestnut tree 41A

rice (cooked) 12

room 4D

room floor 29N

field, area, line 34D, 40

visits 29D

method 34D

cushion 26A

broadcasting

broadcasting station, radio-station 11D

immunization certificate 22A

prevents 46

textile engineering department 38A

inclination, direction 47

school vacation 6D

dry field 41

ship 7

stomach

is hungry 12
	
times

two times 7G

pear 41A

back ground 42

volleyball 33A

learns 1D

Chinese cabbage 41A
	hundred 4

whiteoak tree 41A

name of mountain 42D

lily 41A

department store 2

snake 42A

willow (tree) 41A
discards, abandons 30
mushroom 41A
time, number
this time 7
once 7
what number, how many times, several times 16
is crowded 10
telephone number 16

two suits 50
punishment 32N, 44
is punished 44
bee 42A
earns, makes (money)
makes lot of money 19G
insect (cover term) 42A
already 6, 19
scope, sphere, limit 44
crime 43
criminal 22D
law 22G
law department (in a college) 38A
college of law 38A
Ministry of Justice 47
college of law and political science 38A
law 38A
takes off 26A
gets away, escapes from 42
pillow 26A
cuts 31A
belt 26A
grain of (unhusked) rice 41
flea 42A
wall 28
toilet 24N
changes 24G
changes mind 24G
lawyer 8D
seperately 25
pays separately 25D
(not) particularly 13
special thing to do 34
bottle, bottle of 12
disease, sickness 33A
caused in sickness 33A
a branch of the service 45D
military power, military forces 46
illness 30N
hospital 10D
sends 11D
looks at, sees 4
than
German 8
sidewalk 27
barley 41A
infantryman 45
shows 5
is seen, is visible 16
assistant, aide 24D
replacement, supplementation 30
replaces, refills, supplements 30
ordinary, ordinarily 8
regular express 19D
ordinary office work 8
insurance company 39
guardian, protector 40A
protects, guards 47D
hallway, corridor 24
service (in the military) 45
serves (in the military) 45,
is in public service 35G
peach 41A
complexity
is complicated 8D
welfare 47
regular course (for medical school) 38
home country 22N
main office (company, business firm) 22N
this train 22
the said person, I (in public speech) 22N
one's (permanent) domicile 22N
main office (bank, store) 22N
mainland 15D, 22D
spring (season) 15
pay, salary 13D
service 28A
free service 28A
(meets')
I'm glad to meet you. 1
See you again. 1
vicinity 10
is ashamed 33
is shy, is bashful 33
burden (figuratively) 37
bears the burden 37
(military) unit 45
Deputy-Mission Chief ('Vice-Ambassador') 24D
real estate 44
is tender, is soft 13D
as of the date 22
as of May 1st 22
calls 18
sings a song 18N
is full
(belly) is full 33G
Bruce (family name) 34
parents 14
couple, husband and wife 29D
Pusan (place name) 1G, 19D
side job, subsidiary business 40
kitchen 16D
lady, your wife, Mrs. - 1
a rich man 176
**KOREAN BASIC COURSE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>부족하다</td>
<td>insufficiency, lack</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>부족하다</td>
<td>is not enough, is insufficient</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>부주의</td>
<td>carelessness 33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>부지런하다</td>
<td>is diligent 23D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>부지런히</td>
<td>diligently 39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>부(처)</td>
<td>ministries and independent agencies 47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>부채</td>
<td>fan 26A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>부시다</td>
<td>mails, ships 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>업무를 부시다</td>
<td>sends a letter 19D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>부탁</td>
<td>request of a favor, a favor 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>부터</td>
<td>from</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>지구부터</td>
<td>from now on 8D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>부인</td>
<td>vice-president 33G</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>부패</td>
<td>corruption 43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>부흥</td>
<td>recovery 46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>북부</td>
<td>the northern part, the North (U.S.) 15D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>북한</td>
<td>North-Korea 6D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>본</td>
<td>person (honored) 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>그분</td>
<td>he 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>선생 세명</td>
<td>three teachers 5G</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>본</td>
<td>minute 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>본대</td>
<td>squad 45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>본대대</td>
<td>squad-leader 45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>본회기</td>
<td>atmosphere, environment 43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>본조항나</td>
<td>is busy, is hectic 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>본</td>
<td>fire, light</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>본교기</td>
<td>Korean style barbecue ('fire meat') 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>본가능</td>
<td>being impossible 40N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>본가능하지 않다</td>
<td>is impossible 40</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes:**
- 부족하다: is not enough, is insufficient
- 부주의: carelessness
- 부지런하다: is diligent
- 부지런히: diligently
- 부(처): ministries and independent agencies
- 부채: fan
- 부시다: mails, ships
- 업무를 부시다: sends a letter
- 부탁: request of a favor, a favor
- 부터: from
- 지구부터: from now on
- 부인: vice-president
- 부패: corruption
- 부흥: recovery
- 북부: the northern part, the North (U.S.)
- 북한: North-Korea
- 본: person (honored)
- 그분: he
- 선생 세명: three teachers
- 본: minute
- 본대: squad
- 본대대: squad-leader
- 본회기: atmosphere, environment
- 본조항나: is busy, is hectic
- 본: fire, light
- 본교기: Korean style barbecue ('fire meat')
- 본가능: being impossible
- 본가능하지 않다: is impossible
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>English Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>비타</td>
<td>finished silk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>비용 가</td>
<td>pigeon, dove</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>비밀</td>
<td>secret</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>비싸다</td>
<td>is expensive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>비서</td>
<td>secretary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>비슷하다</td>
<td>is similar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>비신</td>
<td>rain shoes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>비옷</td>
<td>raincoat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>비우다</td>
<td>empties (something)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>비치 투실히</td>
<td>has vacated, has emptied</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>비자</td>
<td>visa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>비평</td>
<td>criticism, comment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>비행기</td>
<td>airplane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>비행석</td>
<td>airplane ticket</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>비행장</td>
<td>airport</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>비행사</td>
<td>flight</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>비행사소</td>
<td>the poor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>비행사구</td>
<td>slum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>비행사나다</td>
<td>borrows</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>비행주나다</td>
<td>loans, lends</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>비행주다</td>
<td>comb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>비행주다</td>
<td>combs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>비행주다</td>
<td>rain drops</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>비행주다</td>
<td>debt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>비행주다</td>
<td>is in debt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>비타나</td>
<td>butter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>비타나나</td>
<td>banana</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>비타도나</td>
<td>is fast</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>비타다</td>
<td>washes (clothes)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>비타다</td>
<td>laundry items</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>비타다</td>
<td>washes (clothes)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>비타다</td>
<td>quickly, fast</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>비타다</td>
<td>battery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>비타다</td>
<td>bread</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>비타다</td>
<td>hole</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>비타다 가</td>
<td>has a hole, punctures</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>비타다</td>
<td>deducts, subtracts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>비타나</td>
<td>robbs of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>비타스</td>
<td>bus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>비타스 로</td>
<td>bus ticket</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>비타스 로</td>
<td>boat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>비타싱</td>
<td>boxing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>비타다</td>
<td>picks up, choose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>비타다</td>
<td>is chosen, is picked</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>비타다</td>
<td>broach</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>비타다</td>
<td>scatters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>비단</td>
<td>only</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>비단가 날다</td>
<td>knows only just a little</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>비단</td>
<td>beer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Korean</td>
<td>English</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>사</td>
<td>four</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>사건</td>
<td>incident, trouble</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>사고</td>
<td>accident</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>사과</td>
<td>apple</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>사관학교</td>
<td>Military Academy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>사냥</td>
<td>hunting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>사년계</td>
<td>4 year (system)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>사망</td>
<td>dies 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>사단</td>
<td>division (military unit)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>사망</td>
<td>person, man 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>사랑</td>
<td>love 9G</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>사랑스럽다</td>
<td>is lovable 25G</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>사랑방</td>
<td>the room used as a guest room or a study 29A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>사랑하다</td>
<td>loves 9G</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>사립</td>
<td>private 31A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>사립학교</td>
<td>private school 31A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>사내님</td>
<td>Mrs., your wife (honored) 32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>사무</td>
<td>office work 6D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>사무실</td>
<td>office 3D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>사무관</td>
<td>clerk, office worker 7D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>사범대학</td>
<td>teachers' college 38A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>사법권</td>
<td>judicial power 47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>사법부</td>
<td>judicial branch 47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>사법청</td>
<td>incident 46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>사법</td>
<td>enlisted man 40A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>사설</td>
<td>editorial 44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>사실</td>
<td>fact 23G</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>사실</td>
<td>business 40A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>사실가</td>
<td>business man 40A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>사실하나</td>
<td>uses 29D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>사실</td>
<td>employee of a company 40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>사실</td>
<td>interval, distance, relations 41D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>사실</td>
<td>close relationship 41D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>사실</td>
<td>(a kind of soft drink) 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>사자</td>
<td>lion 42A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>사장</td>
<td>president of company 8D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>사전</td>
<td>dictionary 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>사정</td>
<td>situation 37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>사직</td>
<td>resignation 39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>사직하다</td>
<td>resigns 39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>사진</td>
<td>photograph, picture 42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>사진을 촬기다</td>
<td>takes a picture 42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>사철</td>
<td>four seasons 26D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>사철나무</td>
<td>evergreen (tree) 41A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>사촌</td>
<td>cousin 14D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>사학</td>
<td>history 38A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>사형 선고</td>
<td>death penalty 44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>사회</td>
<td>society 38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>사회과학</td>
<td>social sciences 38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>사회단체</td>
<td>society column, society page 44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>사회생활</td>
<td>social life 43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>사회적</td>
<td>social 38G</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
사회학 sociology 38A
사회 three days, the 3rd of the month 6
산 mountain 10D
산보 a walk, a stroll
산보하다 takes a walk, strolls 9D
산부인과 의사 gynaecologist 33A
살 year old 5G
한살 one year old 14
살다 lives 9G
살기 좋다 nice to live 19D
살 살다 lives well 19D
살인 murder 44
살인자 murderer 44
살인하다 murders 44
살 life 37G
살 three 4
삼급 3rd class 21N
삼급 교사 3rd class teacher 21N
삼등 3rd class 21
삼등 서기관 3rd Secretary (embassy title) 21N
삼부 three branches (of government) 47
삼키다 swallows 30D
삼각선 38 parallel 36D
삼각 commercial area 29
상 경제학 business administration college 38A
상부 Ministry of Commerce and Industry 47
상과 대학 college of commerce 38A
상관 supervisor, boss 13D
상관상 considerable 47
상대방 other side, partner, mate 44
상반부 upper half 44
상단 corporal 46A
상단 high level 47
상업 commerce 40A
상영 showing of movies
상영하다 shows movies 9
상오 a.m. 20N
상오 열시 10 a.m. 20N
상원 의병 Senator 31G
상인 merchant 40A
상자 box 23D
상점 store, shop 2D
상자 lettuce 41A
상품 goods, merchandise 29D, 44
새 new 14D
새 bird 42A
새다 leaks 30
새우 shrimp 41A
색 color 4
색 안경 sunglasses 26A
색사 brigde, maiden, lass 26A
샌드위치 sandwiches 25D
색 well 42A
색과 idea, thought 9
색과나타 is reminded of 28
색과나타 is thinking 32, 32G
색과나타 thinks 15
색과 ginger 41A
KOREAN BASIC COURSE

life 27G
biology 38A
production 41
production 40A
produces 41
fish 13
birthday 13G
biochemistry 38A
life, living 17D
way of life, living method 34D
shirts 4D
takes a shower 26D
shutter (of a camera) 42
so, and so
so, therefore 9
clerk 24
Secretary (embassy title) 21N
1st Secretary 24D
stands, stops (walking, vehicles) 11D
is standing 14G
each other, mutually 40
frost 42A
one's man 26N
act of adultery (by a woman) 26N
the West (U.S.), the Western part 15D
Western painting 38A
Seoul (capital of Korea) 1G, capital 17D
study (room) 24D
is not good at 34
going slowly, Slow Down 27D
8D (see 석)
three months 8D
evening paper 44
releases 43
Master's degree 38
mixes, mingle 25G
comes together 25G
election 32D, 47
campaigning 32D
election day 47
campaign (for election) 47
elects 47
missionary 23G
present, gift 13G
shelves, shelf 29A
teacher, you, Mr. 1
is cool (air) 15
sailor 40A
captain of a ship, skipper 40A
propaganda, publicity, ads 44
ads expense 44D
elects (someone) 47
(electric) fan 25D
explanation 27
explains 27
sugar 13
is regretful, is sorry

is angry

gets angry

personality

success

succeeds

Episcopal

grownup

sincerity

(academic) achievement, record

Christmas season

[your] name (honored)

rent

(physical) world

in the world

custom house

tax

is strong

power

(human) world

in the world

wash face (and hands)

parks, stops, erects
goes on a picnic 42
elementary school 10D
inside 30D
inside of the suitcase 30D
eyelashes 31D
speed 29
speed limit 29
quickly 16D
hand 13
finger 13
palm 29N
Son (family name) 20D
customer, guest 13D, 25N
wrist 26A
wrist watch 26A
finger nail 31A
damage, loss 32N
a damage was done 33
Song (family name) 19D
is weak 33A
number 38
cannot do, unable to do 8N
can speak 8
towel 4
trouble 25
is troublesome 25G
(a sorry to bother you but.. 25G
capital city 17D
runnint water 29A
watermelon 41A
head (of government) 47
missioner (of catholic church) 40A
Fishery College 38A
marin harvesting 40A
operation (by a doctor) 33
operation fee 24D
class(work) 6D
tuition 21D
beard, mustache 31
swimming 32D
swimming pool 23D
swims 32D
Wednesday 6D
(place name) 20
income 22G
import business 40A
standards 46
address book 16
export-import business 40A
check 44
mathematics 38A
lady
Ladies, Women (restroom) 24N
(hotel) registration book 23
lodges, stays (at) 23D
home work 16G
a kind of bean sprout. 41A
KOREAN BASIC COURSE

순경  patrolman, cop 40A
수기자  spoon 13A
술  liquor, wine 12D
술기차  conceals 43
술다  hides 43
석  easily 28D
식다  rests, takes a rest 6
식도  sheet 26A
석  fifty 5
식다  is easy 5D
스물  twenty 5
스카트  skirt (Western style) 26A
스케이팅  skating 33A
스키  ski 33A
스주머니  stocking 26A
습기  humidity 40A
승금  promotion 13D
승용차  passenger car 33D
승차  riding on (car, train, etc.)
승차권  ticket, token 28A
승차다  multiplies 37G
시  poem, poetry 38N
시작  poetic 38G
시간  time, hour 6
부시각  how many hours 6
시각을  내다  provides time 45
시간표  schedule, time table 20
기차 시간표  train schedule 20
시군  country, rural area 15D
시계  watch, clock 2D
시금치  spinach 41A
시그램바  is noisy 23D
시내  downtown 4
시다  is sour 13A
시립 병원  city hospital 43
시민  citizen 37
시간  hourly speed 29
시외  suburb, outskirt of city 10D
시외버스  suburban bus 19D
시작  beginning
시작하다  begins 3G
시장  market-place 3D
시장으로  보다  goes food shopping 9D
시청  city hall 2
시각교  Chicago 15
시험  test, exam 19D
시험으로  보다  takes an exam 19D
식  ceremony 47
식  style 23N
식당  restaurant, dining hall 3D
식당  dining car, diner 21
식량  (availability of) food 41
식초  maid 16D
식사  a meal 25D
식사대  (price of) meal 25D
신발  shoes 26A
신경통  neuralgia, rheumatism 33A
신고 protestant(ism) 43
신문 newspaper 4D
신문 기사 newspaper article 28D
신문 사 newspaper publisher 11D
신임 recruit 46A
신부 priest 40A
신분증 I.D. card 22
신사 gentleman 24N
신사 숙녀, 엽리부! Ladies and Gentlemen! 28A
신사용 Gentlemen, Men (restroom) 24N
신의주 (place name) 20
신장염 kidney disease 33A
신청서 application form 39
신청용지 application form 39
신청하다 applies (for) 39
신품 new item 30
신호 signal 29
신혼여행 honeymoon 38D
신사 thread 31A
신력 capacity, ability, capability 39
신혜 rudeness 1
설백하다 (commits rudeness) 1
설리다 is loaded on 44
설립가 enterpriser 40A
설립자 unemployed (worker) 39D
설은 in fact, as a matter of fact 31
설재 failure 36D
설폐하다 fails 36D
설익하다 dislikes 4N
설릭하다 plants 42
심리 psychology 38G
심리적 psychological 38G
심리학 psychology 38A
심부름 errand 24
심부름 시리다 has (someone) go around for errands 41G
심부름 하는 여자 maid 24
심장병 heart disease 33A
심하하다 is serious, is severe, is extreme 32
심하하다 severely 32
십 자 ten 4
십거다 is not salty, is bland 13
십사 9
보고 싶다 wants to see 9

소

사사다 is cheap 4
사사하다 fights, quarells 14G
사람 (husked) rice 41A

설명 sled 33A
소련 Soviet Union 6D
소련어 Russian 8D
KOREAN BASIC COURSE

sofa 29A
writes 8D
is bitter (in taste) 13, uses 30
uses up 30
wears (hat, glasses, etc.) 26A
pick-pocket 44
is robbed 44
is robbed 44
trash 26A
trash can 26A
sweeps 26
is lonely, is lonesome 40
seed 41
each 14
one at a time, one each 14
washes 26A

아
Oh! 1

아가씨
young lady, young girl 26N

아가
a little while ago, a few minutes ago 18N

아가씨야 나무
acacia 41A

아나운서
announcer 41D

아내
[my] wife 14

아니
no (plain speech) 17

아니요
no 1

아담하다
is cozy 23D, 24N

아트님
your son (honored) 14N

아들
son 14

아름답다
beautiful 5D

아래
below, under, the foot, the bottom 42

신기 아랫
foot of a hill

아래층
downstairs 24

아마
perhaps, probably 11

아무
any

아무 것이나
anything, whatever 12

father (honored) 14N
father 13D
aspirine 32D
child 2D
Gee!, Oh! 17
uncle 14D
very, extremely 10
aunt 14D
(not) yet 8D, 20D
morning, 4D
this morning 4D
breakfast 12D
is sick, hurts 6
nine 5
nine days, the 9th day of the month 6D
ninety 5
alligator 42A
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean Word</th>
<th>English Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>안</td>
<td>not 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>안 벌다</td>
<td>is not far 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>안</td>
<td>the inside 16D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>안</td>
<td>(is/does) not 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>안히</td>
<td>peacefully 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>안락 의자</td>
<td>armchair 29A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>안락한</td>
<td>living room 24D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>안심하다</td>
<td>feels safe 43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>안전</td>
<td>security 47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>안정</td>
<td>stability 40D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>안정되지</td>
<td>becomes stable 40D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>앉다</td>
<td>sits 11D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>앉혀</td>
<td>is seated 14G</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>알고</td>
<td>of course [I] know, certainly [I] know 29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>알고 싶다</td>
<td>wants to know 19D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>알기 쉬다</td>
<td>is easy to understand 23D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>알다</td>
<td>knows 2G</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>알바이트</td>
<td>part-time job 44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>앉어 놓다</td>
<td>understands (by ears) 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>앉어 놓다</td>
<td>finds out, recognizes 7G</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>앉어 놓다</td>
<td>recognizes, gives credit 7G</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>앉다</td>
<td>is ill, is sick 30D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>앉</td>
<td>cancer 33A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>앉덕</td>
<td>pressure 47D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>앉</td>
<td>only when (if) 11G</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>보석 애 다</td>
<td>has to mail 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>야구</td>
<td>baseball 33A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>야금과</td>
<td>metal engineering department (in a college) 38A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>야단</td>
<td>the opposition party 47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>야외</td>
<td>countryside 42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>야채</td>
<td>vegetable 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>야</td>
<td>about, approximately 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>야</td>
<td>in about 40 minutes 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>야토</td>
<td>(shortened) map 34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>야밤</td>
<td>drugstore 10D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>야속</td>
<td>appointment, date, promise 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>야속 애 다</td>
<td>promises, makes an appointment 17N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>야자</td>
<td>is weak 33A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>야학</td>
<td>pharmacy 38A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>야학 대학</td>
<td>college of pharmacy 38A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>야혼</td>
<td>engagement 22D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>야혼 애 다</td>
<td>is engaged 22D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>야</td>
<td>sheep 31D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>야들</td>
<td>wool 31D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>야기</td>
<td>chicken-rising 41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>야금</td>
<td>seasoning 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>야바</td>
<td>sock(s), stocking(s) 4D</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
both banks (of a river) 31N
suit(s) 4D
Western food 12D
Western style 23
Western style room 23
Western restaurant 13
both persons 31N
both sides 27
both sides (organization, parties) 31N
brushing teeth 26A
brushes teeth 26A
onion 41A
shoulder 13
which, a certain, some 2
which one 2
at some company 15
what kind of, certain 41D
how, in what way 1
how is 4
where 2
where, what place 2
is difficult 5D
mother 13G
mother (honored) 14N
ice 12D
is young, is childish 14
fisherman 40A
quickly, please 4
Please come in.
여가  spare time 26D
여객  passenger 20
여객  heroine 37N
여관  inn, hotel 2
여관비  lodging charge 2¼
여관업  hotel business 40A
여권  passport 22
여기  here, this place 2D
여기에 있다  [it] is here 2D
여기 가지  here and there 27
여당  government party 47
여덟  eight 5
여동생  younger sister 1¼D
여덟 élevé  eight days, the 8th day of the month 5D
여든  eighty 5
여러  several, many 4
여러 가지  several kinds 4
여름  summer 15
여배우  actress 37N
여보서요  hellow there, say 3
여보십시오  hellow there 3N
여분  spare, extra 30
여비  travel expense 24N
여섯  six 5
여수  place name 19D
여우  fox 42A
여의사  woman doctor 33A
여인  woman, female 43
여자  woman 1D
여성  salesgirl 40A
여성  hostess 36D
여자여보 다  inquires 45
여학교  girls' school 37
여학생  girl student 37N
여행  travelling, trip 15
여행사  travellers 20
여행하다  makes a trip, travels 15
여  railroad station 3
여사  history 9D
여시  also, still, after all, certainly 19
그것도 역시  it is also, it is as well 19
연꽃  lotus flower 41A
연기하다  postpones 37N
연대  brigade 45
연락선  packet boat 19D
연상  reminding 41G
연합자나 다  is reminded of 41G
연합자나 다  reminds of 41
연설  speech 25D
연습  practice 9
연습자나 다  practises 9N
연애  love affair 44
연애자나 다  has a love affair 44, falls in
연장자나 다  extention 37, tool 29A
연장자나 다  extends 37
연장실  tool room 29A
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean Word</th>
<th>English Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>연차</td>
<td>delay 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>연차력다</td>
<td>is delayed 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>흑초</td>
<td>tobacco 41A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>연필</td>
<td>pencil 2D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>연합타</td>
<td>is tender 13D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>테</td>
<td>ten 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>테이</td>
<td>temperature, fever 30D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>연합다</td>
<td>opens 11D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>연합타</td>
<td>is opened, opens 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>연합시차</td>
<td>becomes open 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>연합</td>
<td>key 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>연합돈</td>
<td>enthusiasm, zeal 27G</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>연합험이타</td>
<td>is enthusiastic 39D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>연합혀</td>
<td>zealously, hard, diligently 27G</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>연합차</td>
<td>trains 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>연합한</td>
<td>ten days, the 10th day of the month 6D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>연합덕</td>
<td>worry 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>연합버스럽타</td>
<td>is worrisome 25G</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>연합혀타</td>
<td>worries 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>연합홍</td>
<td>infection 33A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>연합새</td>
<td>six days, the 6th day of the month 6D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>연합괴</td>
<td>glory 25G</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>연합으르스럽타</td>
<td>is glorious 25G</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>연합으르스럽타 생각하다</td>
<td>considers [it] to be an honor 36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>연합언국</td>
<td>England 1G</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>연합언국사람 (an) Englishman 1G</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>연합여 (place name) 19D</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>연합영문학</td>
<td>English literature 38A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>연합.consul</td>
<td>consul 7D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>연합문화중심부</td>
<td>consulate 7D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>연합언어</td>
<td>English 1G</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>연합영토</td>
<td>territory 37D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>연합하</td>
<td>below zero, sub-zero 29D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>연합영국</td>
<td>English-Korean, British-Korea 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>연합영향</td>
<td>influence, effect 46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>연합영화</td>
<td>movies 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>연합렬</td>
<td>the side 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>연합시차</td>
<td>next to the City Hall 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>연합예방</td>
<td>prevention 33A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>연합예방주사</td>
<td>injection 33D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>연합예보</td>
<td>forecast 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>연합예반</td>
<td>is pretty 5D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>연합예산</td>
<td>budget 29D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>연합예상교생</td>
<td>Christianity 43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>연합예수</td>
<td>sixty 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>연합예술</td>
<td>arts 42D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>연합예약</td>
<td>reservation 22D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>연합예약방예약</td>
<td>room reservation 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>연합예약타</td>
<td>makes a reservation 22D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>연합예정</td>
<td>previous arrangement, schedule 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>연합오</td>
<td>five 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>연합오늘</td>
<td>today 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>연합오타</td>
<td>comes 2G</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>연합오드나무</td>
<td>Pau-lownia tree 41A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>연합오락실</td>
<td>recreation room 29A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Korean</td>
<td>English</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>오래</td>
<td>a long time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>오래 동안</td>
<td>for a long time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>오래 된</td>
<td>old city</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>오렌지</td>
<td>orange</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>오르간</td>
<td>organ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>오른</td>
<td>right</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>오른쪽</td>
<td>the right (side)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>오리</td>
<td>duck</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>오버코트</td>
<td>overcoat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>오빠</td>
<td>older brother (of female)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>오이</td>
<td>cucumber</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>오일</td>
<td>oil</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>오전</td>
<td>a.m., in the morning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>오전 여덟시</td>
<td>8 a.m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>오징어</td>
<td>cuttle-fish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>오전</td>
<td>afternoon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>오수수</td>
<td>corn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>온도</td>
<td>temperature</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>온돌방</td>
<td>(Korean style room)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>온양</td>
<td>(place name)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>옴바가다</td>
<td>goes up</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>옴바오다</td>
<td>comes up</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>옴니가다</td>
<td>moves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>사무실을 옮기다</td>
<td>moves office</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>옮기</td>
<td>moving</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>옮다</td>
<td>is right</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>옷</td>
<td>clothes, dresses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>옷걸이</td>
<td>(clothes) hangers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>옷장</td>
<td>clothes chest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>와/과</td>
<td>with, and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>나와 같이</td>
<td>with me</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>책과 연필</td>
<td>book and pencil</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>외이사쓰</td>
<td>dress shirt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>외이.엽.시.예이</td>
<td>Y.M.C.A.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>완전히</td>
<td>completely, perfectly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>완행(차)</td>
<td>local (train)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>왕따 감자 하다</td>
<td>comes and goes, hangs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>왜</td>
<td>why</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>왜냐하면</td>
<td>because, the reason is</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>외식</td>
<td>Japanese food</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>외(예)</td>
<td>besides, not only (see 외(예))</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>외과 의사</td>
<td>surgeon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>외교관</td>
<td>diplomat, foreign service personnel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>외교 연구원</td>
<td>Foreign Service Institute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>외국</td>
<td>foreign country</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>외국어</td>
<td>foreign language</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>외 Produk</td>
<td>foreign products</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>외 Produk 플품</td>
<td>foreign product goods</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>외다</td>
<td>memorizes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>외부</td>
<td>Ministry of Foreign Affairs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>외부나</td>
<td>is lonely, is lonesome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>외우</td>
<td>overcoat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>외상</td>
<td>foreign currency</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>외환과</td>
<td>foreign currency department</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
left 2

to the left 2

2

Not at all. 2

Korean mattress 26

fare 21

bus fare 21

these days 3

week-day

what day of the week 6

lately, these days 1

for the use of 24

dining room for guests 24N

Courage 23D

(place name) 19D

(name of district) 34

items 4

daily necessities 4

honor student 27G

we, our 14

our family 14

well 42A

umbrella 30D

milk 12D

friendship 31A

right side 27

Keep Right 27

post office 3D

stamp 19D

luck 39

physical exercise, sport 9D

(sport) cap 26A

(sport) uniform 26A

play-ground 16D

takes exercises, plays (balls) 9D

(sport) shoes 26A

management, operation 22D

takes exercises, plays (balls) 9D

(sport) shoes 26A

driving 25D

steering wheel 33

driver's license 26D

driving 25D

operation 22

is run 22

operates, runs (mode of transportation) 22

is echoed 25D

fence 29A

cloth coat 26A

Walker Hills (place name) 19D

(Korean monetary unit) 4

W50 4

originally, formerly 14

raw material 41

general of the army 46A

monkey 42A

principle 27

in principle 27
wants 4
month
March 6
pay 25D
Viet-Nam 6D
(house rented for monthly payment) 44
Monday 6D
what matter 33
violates 29D
sanitation 31A
public sanitation 31A
medic 45
stomach diseases 33A
for, for the sake of 27
for me 27
danger 28
danger 46
is dangerous 28
upstairs 24N
regret 36
is a regret 36
confucianism 43
voters 47
uniform 26A
charge 28A
pay parking lot 28A
glass 26A
glass bottle 26A
window 24D
maintains 44
Judaism, Zionism 43
studying abroad 39
fashion 41
is in fashion, is fashionable 41
six 4
army 45
Military Academy 38A
Korean War, June 25th Incident 46
the land (in contrast to sea) 15D
body (in contrast to spirit) 38G
bodily, physical 38G
flexibility 42G
to, as, by 2
to the left 2
by ship 7
as a diplomat 7
as for 1
my name (as topic) 1
retires 44
bank 2D, Ginko-nut 41A
Ginko-tree 41A
banker 40A
what (as direct object) 1
food 7D
restaurant 10D
music 23D
department of music (in a college) 38A
KOREAN BASIC COURSE

음악대학 college of music 38A
음악회 concert 22D
응 yes (plain speech) 17
응접실 parlor 24D
응답하다 replies, responds, applies for 39
의견 opinion 37D
의과대학 college of medicine 38A
의약이 as usual, without fail 42D
의뢰하다 relies on, leaves [it] up to 43
의무 duty 29D
의무 교육 compulsory education 37
의미 meaning 27
의사 medical doctor 8D
의심 doubt 25G
의심스럽다 is doubtful 25G
의예과 premed 38
의원 congressmen, member of the National Assembly 16D
의자 chair 2D
의의면 according to 32
의의면 according to N 32G
의학 medicine 38A
이 this
이 건물 this building 2
이 two 4
이 Lee (family name) 1D
이 tooth 13
이가 2
대사관, the embassy (as subject) 2
이공 sciences and engineering 38

이금 2nd class 21N
이금 공무원 2nd class civil servant 21N
이기다 wins 40D
이끌다 leads, pulls 47
이나 10 (see 나)
이나

한국 사람이 is a Korean

이동 2nd class 21
이동표 ticket of 2nd class 21
이동병 private 46A
이동참사 sergeant 1st class 46A
이따 later (on the same day) 11N
이따토 18G (see 뒤토)
이렇게 this way, like this 18
이렇게 is like this

이런 날씨 this kind of weather 18

이배 seven days, the 7th day of the month 6D
이투다 achieves 43
이투 2nd rate 21N
이투 대학 2nd rate college 21N
이투사 is early 15D
이투사 reaches 39
이른 seventy 5
이름 name 1
이머리 this way 31N
이머리 forehead 32D
이머리 haircut 31
이머리, the barber 29D
이머리수 barber shop 31
이머리수 barber fee 31D

537
KOREAN BASIC COURSE

이가하나 has a haircut 31
이하 has tooth 13
이에 Korean quilt 26
이에 창 bedding chest 29A
이에 성 eye, ear and nose specialist 33A
이사 moving (house)
이사하나 moves (house, office, etc.) 14
이사 이상 beyond, above, more than 38
이사하나 is strange 30
이야기 story 17
이야기하나 speaks, talks, tells 17
이웃 neighborhood 34
이웃 사람 neighbor 34
이 이슬(은) beyond this [line], more than this 38N
이종 2 kinds 44
이종 these days 8 (see 8.4.3.)
이사 매는 World War II 33D
이층 2nd floor 23
이테이 Italy 6D
이테이어 Italian 8D
이통 two days, the 2nd day of the month 6D
이하 under, below 38D
이하하 나 understanding 42D
이하하나 understands 29D
이통하나 divorces 29D
이후 ever since 39
이하 ripes 42
이숙하나 is good at, is familiar with 34

신사 human being 38G
신사 death human 38G
신부 population 37
신기 popularity 40D
신부 India 6D
신부 (pedestrian only), sidewalk 27
신육학 anthropology 38A
신문 the fields of liberal arts and humanities 38
신사교 personnel section 19N
신사하나 greets, salutes 40D
신사 Ginseng 41
신생 (human) life 42
신증 ratification 47
신전 (place name) 19D
신 분 nose and throat infection 33A
신 one 4
신 work, job 6
이시아 has (someone) work 41G
이 자리 job 16D
이하하나 works 3G
이 경험, fact
이면 this 이 싫다 has eaten, has the experience to eat 13
이면 day
이면 the 1st (day of the month) 6
이면 seven 5
이면 1st class 21N
이면 식당 1st class restaurant 21N
이면 weather 15 (see 날씨)

538
일년차, annual crops
일년차, once
일반 경위 (Stop)
일본 상사, T Sergeant
일부, 1st rate
일부 학교, 1st rate school
일련, page 1
일반, general
일반 대학, general college
일반화, generalization, popularization
일반화 하다, popularizes
일반 운행, (One Way)
일본, Japan
일본 맛, Japanese (language)
일본 서사, Japanese
일본어, Japanese (language)
일부, (some part)
일상, daily
일상 응용, daily necessities
일상 나타, gets up, occurs
일요일, Sunday
일요일이 코스, starts
일자리, job
일주하다, goes (travel) round
일찍 기, early
일찍가, reads
일어 버티다, loses
일기, one's term (tenure, or incumbency) of office
일기 중에, during one's incumbency
일급 (personnel) appointment
일급되다, is appointed
일어, mouth
일구, the entrance
일급, entrance visa
일급 등가, entrance visa
일다, puts on (clothes), dresses
일어 보다, tries on (clothes)
일대 (joining the army)
일법부, legislative branch
일환, hospitalization
일환비, hospital fee
일환실, ward
일환희, hospitalizes
일학국, a school
일학 시작, entrance exam
일학, enters, gets into (room, hall, etc.)
일학 시기, entrance into a school
일학 시험, entrance exam
일학하다, enters a school
일학 취가, admission (to school)
일다, exists, is
일시 완, is fine
일요, ink
일자리, forgets
일치 않고, without forgetting and...
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean Word</th>
<th>English Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>자 (here, well)</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>자기 (his own)</td>
<td>35D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>자기 자신 (oneself)</td>
<td>35D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>자다 (sleeps)</td>
<td>11G</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>자동차 (automobile)</td>
<td>7G</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>자라나 (grows up)</td>
<td>14D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>자랑 (boasting)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>자랑스럽다 (is a source of pride)</td>
<td>25G</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>자랑하나 (is proud of (something))</td>
<td>18G</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>자락 (seat)</td>
<td>11D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>업 자격 (job)</td>
<td>16D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>자물쇠 (locker)</td>
<td>24D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>자본가 (capitalist)</td>
<td>40A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>자살 (suicide)</td>
<td>44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>자살하나 (comits suicide)</td>
<td>44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>자세히 (in detail, precisely)</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>자식 (offspring, children)</td>
<td>43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>자신히 (oneself)</td>
<td>35D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>자연 (nature)</td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>자연히 (naturally)</td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>자유 (freedom, liberty)</td>
<td>38G</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>자유화 (liberalization)</td>
<td>38G</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>자유화 하다 (liberalizes)</td>
<td>38G</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>자유협 (free business)</td>
<td>40A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>자전거 (bicycle)</td>
<td>16D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>자주 (frequently, often)</td>
<td>9D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>일마나 자주 (how often)</td>
<td>9D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>작가 (writer)</td>
<td>40A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>작게 (softly, in low voice)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>작게 말하다 (speaks softly)</td>
<td>16D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>작년 (last year)</td>
<td>6D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>작다 (is small)</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>작은 것 (a small one)</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>작업 (work, operations)</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>작업중 (Men Working)</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>잔 (cup of)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>커피 한잔 (a cup of coffee)</td>
<td>5G</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>잔돈 (small change)</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>잔디 (lawn)</td>
<td>29A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>잘 (well)</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>잡 (sleep)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>잡이 요다 (is sleepy)</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(잡은) 자하 (is sleeping)</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>잡바 (for a moment)</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>잡고 다 (locks)</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>잡서 (for a little while)</td>
<td>143</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>잡사비 (dragon-fly)</td>
<td>42A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>잡다 (holds, catches)</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>잡아 잡기에 (pulls)</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>잡어 먹기 (eats (honored))</td>
<td>12 (see 이다)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
KOREAN BASIC COURSE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>слова</th>
<th>перевод</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>magazine</td>
<td>газета</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chang</td>
<td>Чанг (фамилия)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sheet of,</td>
<td>лист, кусок</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>piece of</td>
<td>лист, кусок</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50 sheets</td>
<td>50 листов</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(soy) sauce</td>
<td>соевый соус</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gloves</td>
<td>перчатки</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>long distance</td>
<td>длинная дистанция</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minister</td>
<td>Министр (правительство)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>military officer</td>
<td>военный офицер</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>general</td>
<td>генерал (вооруженных сил)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>play, sport,</td>
<td>игра, спорт, забава</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fun</td>
<td>забава</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>toy</td>
<td>игрушка</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Presbeterian</td>
<td>Пресвитер</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the place</td>
<td>место, где стоят огуречные банки</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>where</td>
<td>стоят огуречные банки</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pickle jars</td>
<td>стоят огуречные банки</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>are placed</td>
<td>стоят огуречные банки</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the future</td>
<td>будущее</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in the</td>
<td>в будущем</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>future</td>
<td>будущее</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rainy season</td>
<td>сезон дождей</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rose</td>
<td>роза</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sales business</td>
<td>продажная деятельность</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>engages in business</td>
<td>занимается бизнесом</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>long period of time</td>
<td>длительный период времени</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>merit</td>
<td>достоинство</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in the</td>
<td>в будущем</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>future</td>
<td>будущее</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scholarship</td>
<td>стипендия</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>boots</td>
<td>ботинки</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>measures</td>
<td>измерения</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ashtray</td>
<td>утюг</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fun, interest</td>
<td>забава, интерес</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>is interesting</td>
<td>интересна</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
writes down, jots down 16
writes it down (for later use) 16
at least 26
application, adoption 29
is applied 29
applies 29
before
five minutes to eight 6
before coming to Seoul 15
major, specialty 38
major field 38
majors in 38A
electricity 25
electrical engineering department 38A
남도 (province name) 20
북도 (province name) 20
expert, professional, specialist 33D
telegram, cable 13D
(house rented by a large deposit and no monthly payment) 44
absolutely, never 39
epidemics 33A
war 28D
utterly, entirely 43
street-car 7G
the whole 43
hi-fi 25D
delivers 16
message (to leave) 16
telephone 13D
telephone book 16
calls up 16
(transformations) 42
(transformations of feeling) 42
temple 35D
absolutely 39G
saving 44
saves 44D
is young, is youthful 14N
youth 37G
point 36D
lunch 12
store-clerk 40A
gradually 18
chopsticks 13
Chung (family name) 1D
station, railroad station 3
stops 22
tennis 33A
accredited (regular) college 38
(place name) 42D
political party 47
degree 33
to some extent 33D
straightening (room) 26
straightens 26
bus stop 22D
KOREAN BASIC COURSE

정리 arrangement 23D
방정리 straighten the room 23D
정리하다 arranges 24D
정말 certainly, truth 18
정복 full-dress hat 26A
정법 맥락 college of political science and law 38A
정부 government 3D
정부당 Government party 47
정부도 government (as curriculum) 38A
정식 formal, regular 45
정신 spirit 38G
정신적 spiritual, mental 38G
정원 the yard, garden 16D
정원사 gardener 40A
정직하다 is honest 23G
정책 policy 47
정치 politics 34D
정치과 political section 34D
정치학 political 38N
정치학 political science 35A
정림 화과 의사 plastic surgery specialist 33A
제가 I (polite subject) 17G
제대 discharge from army 25D
제도 system 37D
교육 제도 education system 37D
세비 swallow 42A
제자 No. 3 21
제시간 on time 21D, 25D
제일 most, best 10
제일 편리하다 is most convenient 10
제일 가다 is in first place 41
제임스 James 1
제조 업 manufacturing business 40A
제주 (place name) 19D
제주도 (province name) 20
제주타 divides 37G
조간 (신문) morning paper 44
조개 shellfish 41A
조금 a little 8 (see 주)
조선과 ship-building engineering department 38A
조성되다 becomes created 43
조심 carelessness 25G
조심스럽다 is careful 25G
조심하다 is careful, watches out 29
조용하다 is quiet 19D
조용히 quietly 16D
조종사 pilot 29D
조직 structure 47
조카 nephew 14D
조카다 niece 14D
족하다 is sufficient 25
존경 respect 29
존경하다 respects 39N
존경하다 respects 39N
조염 학 교 graduation 14
조심타 graduates (from) 14

543
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>술</td>
<td>a little</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>술다</td>
<td>is narrow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>술조</td>
<td>religion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>술포</td>
<td>(street name in Seoul)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>술루</td>
<td>kind, sort</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>술사랑따</td>
<td>is engaged in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>술이</td>
<td>paper</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>술자</td>
<td>seed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>술다</td>
<td>is good, is nice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>술아</td>
<td>prefers, likes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>좌석</td>
<td>seat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>좌석</td>
<td>left side</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>좌석</td>
<td>Keep Left</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>좌수</td>
<td>crime, sin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>좌수</td>
<td>criminal, prisoner</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>좌왕</td>
<td>sin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>지용정따</td>
<td>commits a crime</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>지송따</td>
<td>is sorry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>주</td>
<td>State (U.S.A.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>주가</td>
<td>gives</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>가주가</td>
<td>goes for [me]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>주로</td>
<td>mainly, mostly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>주말</td>
<td>weekend</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>주비니</td>
<td>pocket</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>주목</td>
<td>attention</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>주부시타</td>
<td>sleeps (honored)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>주문</td>
<td>order (of goods, food, etc)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>주사</td>
<td>injection, shot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>주사들 따따</td>
<td>gets a shot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>주소</td>
<td>(one's) address</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>주소소</td>
<td>gas station</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>주의</td>
<td>carefulness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>주의</td>
<td>ideology, -ism</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>진주</td>
<td>democracy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>주인</td>
<td>master, owner, my husband</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>주임</td>
<td>my husband</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>주임</td>
<td>week</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>주차장</td>
<td>parking lot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>주차야따</td>
<td>parks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>주차 길지</td>
<td>No Parking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>주택</td>
<td>residence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>주택지</td>
<td>residential area</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>죽다</td>
<td>dies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>죽음</td>
<td>death</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>죄금행</td>
<td>Semi-Express</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>죄비</td>
<td>preparation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>죄비야따</td>
<td>prepares for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>죄감</td>
<td>Brig. General</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>죄회</td>
<td>Warrant Officer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>줄</td>
<td>rope</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>줄이따</td>
<td>reduces</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>줄</td>
<td>among, during</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>그룹들 중에서</td>
<td>among them</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>중국</td>
<td>China</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>중국 맛</td>
<td>Chinese (language)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>중국 사람</td>
<td>Chinese (man)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>중국어</td>
<td>Chinese (language)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>중고품</td>
<td>used item</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
KOREAN BASIC COURSE

Red-China 40D

company (military unit) 45

is important 18

Middle East 41D

Lt. Colonel 46A

Staff Sergeant 46A

the Midwest 41D

center, central 11

is important 18

1st Lt. 46A

Lt. General 46A

junior high school, (middle school) 10D

rat 42A

that is, namely 44, that is to say 47

immediately 47

enjoys 42

evidence, proof 43

knows where [it] is 13

since [I] joined the State Department 15

wallet 16D

now, present 5

passes by, gets along 1

last, past 6

last three days 6

gets colder 18

gets -er 18

defeats 40D

guidance 35D

guides 35D

is boring, is tedious 33D

graphy 34

graphy (as curriculum) 35D

nominates 47

district court 47

manager 23

roof 29A

(political) instructions, directions 47D

knowledge 40D

district, area 29

volunteer (soldier) 45

is messy 25D

officially approved textbook 21N

designated seat 21

supports 47

is tired, is fatigued 42D

keeps, obeys, protects 29

is punctual 29N

basement 29A

subway 27D

wisdom 23D

factory worker, technician 18D

textile 41

occupation, profession 18D

staff 24N

545
직장  place of work 18D
직접  direct(ly), at first hand 44
진주  sleet 25G
진달래  azalea 41A
진저  a meal (honored) 26N
진기야  diagnosis 33A
진기야  is tough 13
질문  question(iare) 13D
질서  order 31A
공중 질서  public order 31A

짐  baggage, luggage, load 20
집  house, home 2D
집사부  my wife 19D
집중하다  concentrates 43
집터  farms, builds 41
농사꾼 집터  farms 40
밥솥 집터  cooks rice 40N
집터  barks 41D
개가 짖다  dog barks 41D
징병  the draft, conscription 45

자켓  jacket 26A
자작  is salty 13
자르다  cuts 31A
자치  worth, value 5
오십원 자원  W worth, W50 bill 5
접시  is short (in length) 10D
제재  the second time 7
잼  jam 13D

쪽  side, direction 2
왼쪽  the left (side) 2
이쪽  this way 2D
시청자들 in the direction of the City Hall 2D
쪽  around, about
다섯시점 around 5 o'clock 6, 19
집단  takes (photograph) 20
짐차  jeep 39G

차  car 4N
차  tea 12D
차라리  black-tea 10G
차고  garage 16D
차관  Vice-Minister 32D
차다  is cold
차음  cold water 12D

546
wears (watch, sword, pistol, etc.)

(Vehicles Only)

vehicles

one's turn

difference

occupies, possesses

gradually

really, very

endures

cowardly, feeble

melon

window

storage room

looks for, seeks

detects out, seeks out

bond

fills up

book

book-store

table, desk

responsibility

bears responsibility

bookcase, book shelves

my wife

wife's family, wife's parents

virgin, single bachelor woman

like (or just as) New York
looks up to, beholds 12G
vinegar 13, candle
exceeds 29
junior college 38N
invitation 13D
village, rural area 15D
country man 42D
bachelor, unmarried man 14G
general affairs section 19N
Consulate General 39G
president (of university) 16D
Choe (family name) 1D
the maximum, at most 29
one who received most votes 47
recent 38
recently, lately 38
one's best 47
does one's best 47
minimum 29N
truck 39D
harvesting 42
harvests 42
coldness 32D
recommendation 47
recommends 47
soccer 33A
phonographer 29A
(place name) 20
(exit) visa 22
go to work (office) 32
time to go to the daily work, morning rush hour 32
goes to work 32
runs (as a candidate) 47
departure 19
departs 19
exit-entrance 16D
Off Limit, Do Not Enter 27D
business trip 25D
commutation 32D
dancing
dances 9D
is cold 18
worm (cover term) 42A
advises 38D
collision 32D
sufficiency
is sufficient, is enough 13
(place name) 19D
(province name) 20
(province name) 20
deals with 22G
hobby, taste, interest 44
inauguration ceremony 47
inaugurates 47
gets a job 39
KOREAN BASIC COURSE

층 floor, storey 24
일층 1st floor 24N
층층대 stairway, steps 28
상층 대학 college of dentistry 38
상층 의사 dentist 33A
상층 hits, plays 29D
미야노 키다 plays piano 29D
상층 raises 31
누 엘 키다 raises silkworm 41
치토 (medical) treatment 33A
치토다 gets medical treatment 33A
치마 skirt (Korean style) 26A
치소 toothbrush 25G
치안 security (of the society) 43
치약 toothpaste 25G
치열하게 fiercely 47

치우다 puts in order, takes away 26A
치워 주다 takes away (for me) 26A
친구 friend 3
친척 relatives 14D
친타 is close, is intimate 34
칠 seven 4
침대 bed 23
침대차 pullman 19D
침략 invasion 43G
침략당하다 is invaded 43G
침벽교 Baptist 43
침실 bedroom 24D
침입 intrusion 43
침입하다 intrudes 43
침찬 praise, compliment 35
침찬하다 praises, speaks highly of 35

받 knife 5D
배드민턴 Catholic 43
캐디illac Cadillac 37D
채다 turns on 25
코 nose 13
코끼리 elephant 42A
코스모스 cosmos 41A
코코넛 콜라 coca cola 12D
코코아 cocoa 12D

코트 coat 26A
콧수염 mustache 31
콩 bean 41A
콩나물 (soy) bean sprouts 41A
크게 loudly 16
크다 is big 5
크다 grows up, is brought up 15D
키 height (of person) 18
킬로 미터 Kilo-meter 29D
KOREAN BASIC COURSE

타다 rides, gets on 7
타고 가다 takes (bus, taxi, etc.) 10
타이어 tire 29D
타이핑 typing 5
타이핑 종이 typing paper 5
타이퍼 typewriter 30D
타블 테니스 table tennis 33A
타이어 is muddy, is thick 28
타이어 태이어 Remove [your] Hat 27D
타이 공 태이어 Tailand 6D
태도 attitude 24D
타이어 태이어 gives a ride, loads 7N
타이어 태이어 gives [someone] a ride 11N
타이풀 typhoon 42A
타이시 taxi 7D
타이크 [gas] tank 29D
탈세 hair 31D
프레임 frame, scope 47
프리비 텔비 television 29A
프리비 텔비 프로 T.V. program 38D
라비 rabbit 42A
카이 병 civil engineering department 39A
토스트 toast 25D
토요 이 Saturday 6D
토지 land, estate 44

통상 saw 26N
통상 saving 26N
통상 top 44D
통상 top news 44D
통상 can 23D
통상 passage, passing 27D
통상 passes 27D
통상_signal corps man 45
통상_press agency, news agency 45
통상 interpreter 8D
통상 translates 29D
통상 unification 40D
통상 unification of North and South 40D
통상 through, by 43
통상 passing, going through 27
통상 금지 No Trespassing 27D
통상 금지 시간 curfew (time) 28A
통상 passes 27
통상 a message, telephone call 32D
통상 talks over the telephone 16, 32D
통상 coming home from office 32
통상 quitting time 32
통상 leaves office for home 32
통상 discharging from the hospital 32D
통상 discharges from the hospital 32D
KOREAN BASIC COURSE

vote 38D, 47
polling place 47
votes, casts votes 47
suitcase 23
Special Express 19
privilege 47
Master Sergeant 46A
is special 26
specially 26

green onion 41A
digs 41
is blue 4N
blue color 4D
fly 26A
fly swatter 26A
party 34D
judges 47
salesman 42D
Judge 16D
wooden board 31A
eight 4
arm 13
sells 4
quite, very 9
page 44

special products 41
specially, particularly 23D, 39
is sturdy, is strong, is durable 19N, 30
turns on (radio, hi-fi, etc.) 25D
is wrong 18
mistake 37G
without fail 24
free time, spare time 9
tip 24D

def. pen 5
def. side, way
which way 10
one way 21N
letter, mail 9D
is not well, is sick 32
is comfortable 10D
review, criticism 44
(province name) 20
(province name) 20
(place name) 20
peace 25G
is peaceful 25G
a lung-disease, T.B. 33A
pneumonia 33A
grape 41A
KOREAN BASIC COURSE

artilleryman 45
customs 26D
good harvest 42A
platform 21
fatigue

poplar (tree) 41A
platform 21
fatigue

inclusion 24
is included 24
is included 24

falls 41D
ticket 21

round-trip ticket 21

indication, sign 29

sign, insignia 27

expression 42

is bluish 4D

fatigue

platform 21
fatigue

is fatigued 13

skin 31A

skin specialist 33A

skin disease 33A

smokes

smokes (cigarettes) 9D

sets a fire 28D

need, necessity

is necessary, is needed 5

with, and 9

with me 9

book and pencil 9G

one 4

one by one 27

heaven, sky 18

does 1

one day, the 1st day of the month 6

dayfly 42A

lower half 44

lower level 47

sergeant 46A

is white 4N

white color 4D

anyway, at any rate 36

p. m., afternoon 20

12:10 p. m. 20

crane 42A
school 2
grade (school-year), grader 14
school expense 24N, 37D
Bachelor of Arts or Sciences 38
student 1
degree 38
scholar 8D
dean (of college) 16D
approximately 8
about 4 years 8
Han River 35D
Korea 1
Korean (language) 1
Korean 1G
Korean style 23
Korean (language) 8D
(name of township) 34
Korean food 12
Chinese character 19D
(name of Korean dish) 23D
treat 37D
treats (someone) 37D
on the other hand 40
grand-mother 14D
if it's possible 19N
grand-father 13G
(province name) 20
(province name) 20
Humphrey (family name) 33G
(place name) 20
passing (an exam) 27D
passes (an exam) 27D
jitney 7G
United States 18D
aviation engineering department 38A
harbor 18D
all the time 2N
always 9N
year 6D
what year 6D
sun 40D
solution 41
solves 41
fires (someone from employment) 47D
fires (one from the job) 39N, 47D
Navy 24D
Naval Attache 24D
Naval Academy 38A
marine corps 45
sea products 41A
maritime accident 32D
Merchant Marine College 38A
overseas 15D
(place name) 20
seaweeds, marine plants 41A
hamburger 40D
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page 554</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean Word</th>
<th>English Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>행</td>
<td>bound for 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>부산행</td>
<td>Pusan bound train 20N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>행동</td>
<td>behavior 24D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>행인</td>
<td>pedestrian 28D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>행정</td>
<td>administration 43D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>행정관</td>
<td>administrative officer 24D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>행정부</td>
<td>executive branch 47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>행정학</td>
<td>public administration 38A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>행정</td>
<td>improvement 41D, 46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>행정이나</td>
<td>is improved 41D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>행위</td>
<td>permits 44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>허</td>
<td>used, second hand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>허나차</td>
<td>wornout car 24D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>행법</td>
<td>constitution 47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>행법이나에서</td>
<td>under the constitution 47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>행병</td>
<td>military policeman 45A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>헬멧</td>
<td>helmet 26A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>벨트</td>
<td>belt 26A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>복관</td>
<td>vestibule 29A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>현금</td>
<td>cash 7G</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>현대</td>
<td>modern (times) 38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>현대적</td>
<td>modern 38G</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>현대화</td>
<td>modernization 38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>현대화나다</td>
<td>modernizes 38G</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>현상</td>
<td>phenomenon, aspect 38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>현재</td>
<td>at present 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>현장부</td>
<td>present administration 47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>형</td>
<td>older brother (of male) 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>형님</td>
<td>older brother (of male, honored) 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>형제</td>
<td>siblings, brothers and sisters 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>형편</td>
<td>situation 46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>형식</td>
<td>number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이십 오호십식</td>
<td>Room No. 25 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>화두 (화두)</td>
<td>walnut 41A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>화양이</td>
<td>tiger 42A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>화박</td>
<td>pumpkin 41A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>화박부</td>
<td>cabbage 41A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>화주</td>
<td>Australia 6D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>화주머니</td>
<td>pocket 24D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>화풍</td>
<td>peanut 41A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>화장</td>
<td>hotel 2D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>옆</td>
<td>by any chance 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>옆시</td>
<td>by any chance 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>혼자</td>
<td>single, alone 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>혼란부</td>
<td>radish 41A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>홍수</td>
<td>flood 32D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>홍사</td>
<td>(brown) tea 10G</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>화</td>
<td>anger, rage 37D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>화가 나다</td>
<td>gets angry 37D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>화학과</td>
<td>chemical engineering department 38A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>화학</td>
<td>Holland 6D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>화물계</td>
<td>freight office, baggage checking counter 20N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>화물자동차</td>
<td>truck 29D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>화물표</td>
<td>arrow sign 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>화요일</td>
<td>Tuesday 6D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>화장</td>
<td>make-up 26A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Korean Word</td>
<td>English Meaning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>화장실</td>
<td>toilet, restroom</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>화장하다</td>
<td>makes up her face</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>화재</td>
<td>fire</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>화학</td>
<td>chemistry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>화성을</td>
<td>exactly, for sure, certainly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>환자</td>
<td>patient</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>환락</td>
<td>Korean money</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>함락</td>
<td>(province name)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>최장</td>
<td>conference, talks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>최복</td>
<td>recovery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>회복하다</td>
<td>recovers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>회사</td>
<td>company, firm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>회의</td>
<td>meeting, conference</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>회교</td>
<td>Mohammedanism</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>후</td>
<td>the later time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>후입학 후예</td>
<td>after graduating (from)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>후보</td>
<td>candidate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>후보 (생)</td>
<td>candidate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>후보</td>
<td>black pepper</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>후보</td>
<td>training</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>후보</td>
<td>trainee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>홍삼</td>
<td>medal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>홍삼하다</td>
<td>is excellent, is outstanding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>홍순서</td>
<td>much more</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>홍반유</td>
<td>gasoline</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>홍락</td>
<td>filter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>홍가</td>
<td>vacation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>후계 시간</td>
<td>break time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>후계실</td>
<td>lounge</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>홍지층</td>
<td>waste basket</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>홍년</td>
<td>lean year</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>홍작</td>
<td>poor harvest, short crop</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>홍리다</td>
<td>is cloudy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>홍인</td>
<td>negro</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>홍가 끌다</td>
<td>steers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>홍미</td>
<td>interest (in a serious subject)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>홍미가 없다</td>
<td>is interested in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>홍미가 없다</td>
<td>is not interested in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>홍미</td>
<td>comedy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>홍타</td>
<td>is whitish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>홍망</td>
<td>hope</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>홍망하다</td>
<td>hopes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>홍생달하다</td>
<td>is sacrificed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>홍생달하다</td>
<td>sacrifices</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>홍</td>
<td>power, energy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>홍이든다</td>
<td>is difficult</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Index to the Grammar Notes

The following Index includes all the grammar points and their related terms introduced in Volume 1 and Volume 2. The alphabetical order of the Index follows that of Korean-English Glossary in Volume 2. The initial letters of the entries which are not used in the Glossary are inserted as in the Volume 1 as follows: D after T; R after F and Q after P; R after L; V after H.

References are to Unit and Grammar Note; for example, 19.1 refers to Unit 19, Grammar Note 1.

가 (Particle) 2.2 (see 이/가)
가장 'the most...' 10.3
-거리 (see 원지) 42.2
-격론 'if...' 42.2
-격론 오! 42.2
-격 16.3
-격 (of a description verb) + 되다 28.1
-격 (of an action verb) + 되다 28.1(b)
-격 (of an action verb) + 되었다 28.1
-격 보이다 vs-게 들터다 41.2
-고 9.1
-고 (Particle) 17.3 (see 하고)
-고는 다다 'sometimes does' 35.5
-고는 싶다 'used to do', 'sometimes did' 35.5
-고 만개다 'will do... at all cost' 29.2(a)
-고 만개요! 'certainly is/does', 'is/does indeed' 29.2
-고 만했어요 'finally did...', 'ended up doing...' 29.2(b)
-고서 'after having done...' 38.2
-고서 31.3
-고서 + other than 다다 31.3(b)
-고서 아니라 'to intend to' 31.3(a)

과 (Particle) 4.4 (see 와/과)
-군 (see 군)
-기 8.1
-기로 되다 27.2
-기로 다다 'to decide to do something' 24.2
-기에 바/Observable 40.3
-기 위해서(서) 'in order to do', 'to do...' 27.1
나/이나 (Particle) 10.4
나/이나 '...but' 13.1
나/이나 41.4
N 는지/있지 37.3
N 와/이야(서) 42.1
N 와/이야 'not only N1 but also N2' 35.4
N 야/이야 'as far as N is concerned', 'at least N' 34.4(a)
N + 언이 'without N' 34.5(a)
N + 언다(가) 35.1
N 에 타야(서) 'in accordance with N', 'depending upon N' 22.2
N 에 비(와)해서 'compared with N' 37.7
N의 (와/과) N2 'N2 like N1' 31.2
N 은/은 해(서) 'for N', 'for the sake of N' 27.3
-원/은/은 가지? 7.3
KOREAN BASIC COURSE

-원/눈 것 간 18.3
-원/눈 + 것 11.4
-원/눈 + Noun 5.1
-원/눈 보+마다 'seems that something is/does' 32.2
-원/눈 이(지)의 + -(으)로 'has (or has not) done so-and-so' 13.2
-원/눈 지 16.4
-원/눈 지 + period of time + + (or 지나) It has been..(period of time) since 15.3
-(으)가 'since...', 'because...' 12.1
눈 (Particle) 1.2 (see 은/눈)
눈+/-근 18.2
눈 더 / 'as soon as...', 'no sooner... than...' 43.1
눈 동안 'while doing so-and-so' 15.4
Nominal 예 (Nominal) 'concerning Nominal', 'about Nominal' 15.5
Nominal Expression 1.3.
Nominal + 와 (or 하) 예 11.3
'...not...but', 'do...without doing' 25.4
Nouns 1.3
Noun Derivative Verb 25.5
Noun phrases 1.3
Noun Substantive Form 37.1
Numerals 4.6
Numeral phrases 7.1
The more ~ the more 41.1
The (으)나 Form 37.1
Time counters: 년 'year', 해 'year', 
월 'month' 단 'month', 주 'week', 
주 'day', 년 'day', 시 'o'clock', 
시 간 'hour', 분 'minute' 6.1

- (Particle) 'also', 'too' 4.3
눈지/이눈지 (Particle) 12.4
Transitive Verbs 3.1
-더(가) 25.3
-더니 27.1
-하 + N 23.1
-도 24.1
-눈지 ~눈지 'whether ~ or' 37.4
Denominals and Denominal Verbs, 20.2
Denominative 20.2
Dependent Nouns 13.4
Derivational Affixes 20.3
Derivation 20.3
Derivational Causative Verb 32.1
Derivational Intransitive Verb 32.1
Derivative Verbalizer 25.5
Descriptive Verbs 3.1
Determinatives 2.3
Direct Quotative Particle 17.3
대 'time', 'occasion', 'when' 14.1

-기/에 'because [it] is does' 20.1(b)
N + 대/에 'because of N' 20.1(a)
-년/과 (Particle) 17.3
-년/이(가) (Particle) 18.5
- (Particle) 1.2 (see 은/눈)
-예/서 'is planning to...' 18.6
-예/서 'there's no need of doing' 35.3
"Shall I...?", Shall we...?" Will (it) ... (do you think)?

5.2 Nominal

9.3 'every time [one] does (something)'

37.2 Ii 'almost did...'

11.4 'not only... but also'

35.4 'almost did...'

33.1 'cannot-', 'be unable to-

10.1 'if...'

10.1 'should not...', 'must not...'

28.2 'only Ad', 'at least Ad'

34.4 Ad + 와/이야

34.4 Adverbial phrases

6.4
**KOREAN BASIC COURSE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term (Particle)</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(Negative) 'not'</td>
<td>3.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Authoritative Speech and Familiar Speech</td>
<td>45.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Auxiliary Verb</td>
<td>7.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>야 (Particle)</td>
<td>11.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infinitive + 야 + * - 'has to', 'must'</td>
<td>11.3(a)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infinitive + 야 'only when (or if)'</td>
<td>11.3(b)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/e/ (Particle) 'of', 's'</td>
<td>1.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>야 (Particle) 'at', 'on', 'in'</td>
<td>2.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>야 (Particle) 'to'</td>
<td>3.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>야 and 야(=야)</td>
<td>39.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>야서 (Particle) 'from', 'at', 'in', 'on'</td>
<td>3.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Endings 2.1 (see Verb-Endings)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(An) Organization 'the organization does...'</td>
<td>22.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/&amp;/ (Particle)</td>
<td>4.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>야' (Sentence Particle) 'for', 'for the sake of'</td>
<td>27.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>야' 'without N', 'without (or instead of) doing something'</td>
<td>3.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(.) (.) the Sequential Form 21.1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>야 'in order to...'</td>
<td>6.3 (see 야)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>야 (Particle) 2.2 (see 야/있다)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>야 (으)로 29.3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>야 (으)로 'as soon as...', 'no sooner... than' 43.1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>야 (으)로 되기 '[you] may...', '[it] will do', 'you can...'</td>
<td>24.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>야 (으)로서 40.1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>야 (으)로 ~ 야(으)로 'the more... the more'</td>
<td>41.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>야 (으)로 하다 34.3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>은/는 (Particle) 1.2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>은/는 (Particle) 1.2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-(으)나 'even though...', 'although'</td>
<td>10.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-(으)나 (Particle)</td>
<td>16.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-(으)나 (Particle) 30.1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-(으)나 (Particle) 30.1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-(으)나 (Particle) 12.3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-(으)나 (Sentence Particle) 14.2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-(으)나 되다 23.2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-(으)나 'even though...', 'although'</td>
<td>10.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-(으)나 (Particle) 16.2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-(으)나 (Particle) 30.1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-(으)나 (Particle) 30.1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-(으)나 (Particle) 12.3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-(으)나 (Sentence Particle) 14.2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-(으)나 되 다 23.2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-(으)나 'even though...', 'although'</td>
<td>10.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-(으)나 (Particle) 16.2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-(으)나 (Particle) 30.1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-(으)나 (Particle) 30.1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-(으)나 (Particle) 12.3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-(으)나 (Sentence Particle) 14.2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-(으)나 되다 23.2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-(으)나 'even though...', 'although'</td>
<td>10.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-(으)나 (Particle) 16.2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-(으)나 (Particle) 30.1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-(으)나 (Particle) 30.1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-(으)나 (Sentence Particle) 14.2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-(으)나 되다 23.2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-(으)나 'even though...', 'although'</td>
<td>10.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-(으)나 (Particle) 16.2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-(으)나 (Particle) 30.1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-(으)나 (Particle) 30.1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-(으)나 (Sentence Particle) 14.2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-(으)나 되다 23.2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-(으)나 'even though...', 'although'</td>
<td>10.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-(으)나 (Particle) 16.2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-(으)나 (Particle) 30.1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-(으)나 (Particle) 30.1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-(으)나 (Sentence Particle) 14.2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-(으)나 되다 23.2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-(으)나 'even though...', 'although'</td>
<td>10.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-(으)나 (Particle) 16.2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-(으)나 (Particle) 30.1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-(으)나 (Particle) 30.1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-(으)나 (Sentence Particle) 14.2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-(으)나 되다 23.2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-(으)나 'even though...', 'although'</td>
<td>10.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-(으)나 (Particle) 16.2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-(으)나 (Particle) 30.1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-(으)나 (Particle) 30.1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-(으)나 (Sentence Particle) 14.2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-(으)나 되다 23.2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-(으)나 'even though..., 'although'</td>
<td>10.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-(으)나 (Particle) 16.2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-(으)나 (Particle) 30.1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-(으)나 (Particle) 30.1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-(으)나 (Sentence Particle) 14.2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-(으)나 되다 23.2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-(으)나 'even though...', 'although'</td>
<td>10.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-(으)나 (Particle) 16.2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-(으)나 (Particle) 30.1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-(으)나 (Particle) 30.1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-(으)나 (Sentence Particle) 14.2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-(으)나 되다 23.2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-(으)나 'even though...', 'although'</td>
<td>10.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-(으)나 (Particle) 16.2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-(으)나 (Particle) 30.1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-(으)나 (Particle) 30.1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-(으)나 (Sentence Particle) 14.2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-(으)나 되다 23.2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-(으)나 'even though...', 'although'</td>
<td>10.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-(으)나 (Particle) 16.2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-(으)나 (Particle) 30.1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-(으)나 (Particle) 30.1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-(으)나 (Sentence Particle) 14.2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
KOREAN BASIC COURSE

- 족 (Particle) 38.1
- 족 'before', 'the previous time' 15.2
- 족 'before doing...' 15.2
- 족 + Negation 'never', 'not at all' 39.2
- 족 'the most' 10.3
- 족 and 족 'the most' 10.3
- 족 'before doing...' 15.2
- 족 + an inflected expression 25.4
- 족 'cannot', 'is not' 8.3
- 족 + an inflected expression 25.4
- 족 and 족 'without (or instead of) doing something' 38.3
- 족 'after', 'the later time', 'next' 15.1
- 족 'after doing...' 15.1
- 족 'after', 'the later time', 'next' 15.1
- 족 'after doing...' 15.1

Verbals 1.1
Verb-Endings 2.1
Verb Phrases 7.6
Verbs: Action vs. Description and Intransitive vs. Transitive 3.1
Verb-Stems 2.1
Verb Suffixes 3.2
KOREAN BASIC COURSE

FSI Language Publications available from
Superintendent of Documents
Washington, D.C. 20402

BASIC COURSES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Language</th>
<th>Units/Range</th>
<th>Price</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Amharic</td>
<td>(Units 1-50)</td>
<td>$2.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amharic</td>
<td>(Units 51-60)</td>
<td>$2.50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cambodian</td>
<td>(Units 1-45)</td>
<td>$2.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chinyanja</td>
<td>(Units 1-63)</td>
<td>$1.75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>French</td>
<td>(Units 1-12 and 13-14, a set)</td>
<td>$4.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>French Supplementary Exercises</td>
<td>(Units 1-15)</td>
<td>$3.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fula</td>
<td>(Units 1-40)</td>
<td>$2.75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>German</td>
<td>(Units 1-12)</td>
<td>$2.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>German</td>
<td>(Units 13-24)</td>
<td>$1.75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Greek</td>
<td>(Vol. 1)</td>
<td>$1.75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Greek</td>
<td>(Vol. 2)</td>
<td>$1.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Greek</td>
<td>(Vol. 3)</td>
<td>forthcoming</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hebrew</td>
<td>(Units 1-40)</td>
<td>$2.50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hungarian</td>
<td>(Units 1-12)</td>
<td>$1.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hungarian</td>
<td>(Units 13-24)</td>
<td>$1.75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kirundi</td>
<td>(Units 1-30)</td>
<td>$2.75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kirundi</td>
<td>(Units 1-30)</td>
<td>$2.75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kinyarwanda</td>
<td>(Units 1-35)</td>
<td>$2.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Korean</td>
<td>(Vol. 1)</td>
<td>$3.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Korean</td>
<td>(Vol. 2)</td>
<td>$4.75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lingala</td>
<td>(Units 1-24)</td>
<td>$1.50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Luganda</td>
<td>(Lessons 1-94)</td>
<td>$2.75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moré</td>
<td>(Units 1-48)</td>
<td>$1.75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Serbo-Croatian</td>
<td>(Units 1-25)</td>
<td>$3.50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Serbo-Croatian</td>
<td>(Units 26-50)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shona</td>
<td>(Units 1-49)</td>
<td>$2.50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spanish</td>
<td>(Units 1-15 and 16-30, a set)</td>
<td>$7.50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spanish</td>
<td>(Units 31-45)</td>
<td>$3.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spanish</td>
<td>(Units 46-55)</td>
<td>$2.50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Swahili</td>
<td>(Units 1-150)</td>
<td>$3.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Turkish</td>
<td>(Units 1-30)</td>
<td>$2.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Turkish</td>
<td>(Units 31-50)</td>
<td>$2.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Twi</td>
<td>(Units 1-20)</td>
<td>$1.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vietnamese</td>
<td>(Vol. 1)</td>
<td>$1.75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vietnamese</td>
<td>(Vol. 2)</td>
<td>$1.50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yoruba</td>
<td>(Units 1-49)</td>
<td>$1.75</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Finnish Graded Reader, $4.00
Hungarian Graded Reader, $3.75
Indonesian Newspaper Reader, $1.75
Modern Written Arabic, forthcoming
Spanish Programmatic Course Instructors Manual, $0.75
Spanish Programmatic Course Student Workbook, $2.25
Swahili - General Conversation, $0.75
Swahili - Geography, 0.65
Thai - Reference Grammar, $1.25
Yoruba Intermediate Texts, $1.25

Supplies of all publications listed are limited, and prices are subject to change without advance notice. Rules require remittance in advance of shipment. Check or money order should be made payable to the Superintendent of Documents. Postage stamps and foreign money are not acceptable.